

A declaration of the Frontispice.

BEFORE you travel to the Holy Land,
Behold a page that in the front doth stand
To give you arm and guidance i' the way.

First Europe bids your observation stay
Upon a Puse of gold (warres surfeit nerve)

Whose every Croffe is interc'd to (rue
I' th' Holie Warre. The gain (as it) no more

The Croffes Gules in stead of (Crofes Or.
But see the traps, see how they march along;

Where (overall ranks and orders make a throng
Promiscuous blended, sex and age,

Nation and language jointly do engage
Their devout forces to redresse thy woe,

Jerusalem, ravish'd by barbarous foes.

Pater the Monk, leaving his fallen cell,
His Beads, and Offices, and every spell

Of his mysterious seal, breaky forth at last
To kindle all the world with scall blast.

First Kings proceed; and Captains follow them;
The helme waies upon the diadem,

The nexte are Prelates, who stray fare from home
To winne the glorious name of Martyrdome.

Since all their mild perfissons could not work
Upon the obdurate Antichristian Turk,

They will at length (if nought prevent their plot)
Confute his Alcoran with sword and shot.

After those rewarden men, whose cloven mitres
Speak than not marrions so much as writers,

A bold-pate regement of Friars comes,
Whose crownyngh serve the armie for their deems,

And greeves full a sound, if you'll confess
The greatest noise arise from empynes.

Then moves the main Battalia, straitly knyt
Into a stedy Phalanx, square, but fit

To spread, or lengthen, or with art to pare
The corners till the band grow circular

I' enviroun thi enemy, briefly, to reduce

Their various pastures unto every use.

These are the onely Forces; all the rest
Impediments but specious at the best.

But oh amazement! what is that we see?

A troupe of Ladies in the nexte degree.

Each one appears a Pallas the field

Drop newly from Joves brain with spear and shidle;

Or Mars so long his Venus hath poffess'd,

Courage is stolen into her tender breſt.

Marchon brave Amazons: conquer and praise

Weave you a chapter of immortal bays;

With which you, when Autumn-age shall pluck your hair,

In stead of costly periwig may wear.

J. C.

March on: For the strill trumpet and the fife
Tour tongues may serue, then to ſecure your life
You need no weapons, every face and eye
Carrieth ſufficient artillerie.

A slender company doth next ſucceed:

Call it the Infante, 't is so indeed.

As of the driving of the Turke away
From Christian cities were but children play.

The left in this Religious armie trawls
A band collected out of Hospitals

And Spittlers. One would think this pirious fight

Did rather come from ware then go to fight.

Their commendation's this, How're the day
Shall chance to prove, they'll hardly run away.

This is the totall myſterie. Let the Book

Tell their aſſeſſments: Mean time as you look

Upon this Frontispice, you'll plainly fee

Their difmal end and fatal Cataſtrophiſe.

The incenſed Angel with his flaming blade

Great slaughter of perfidious ſoule hath made.

To teach truth and justice, ſee how God

Scourges their falſhood with a ſter rod.

Then the Grand Signor his proud fauſhion stretches

With domineering hand over the wretched

Low prostrate at his foot. Can Christian eyes

Endure this figure? Let the captives ſife,

Sure black Saracens, their bended knee

Has higher obiectes then to reverence thee:

They ſerve a Lord greater then Mahomet.

Though now their ſunne be darkend and defet

With clouds of diſadvantage, time will be

When ſuch poor things ſhall triumph over thee;

And their old propheſies ſhall be made good,

The Moon shall then be turned into blood.

The laſt of their deſtroyers that you ſee

Is that ſame ghoul thing th' Autome.

Zoob repreſents a naked cage of bone,

From whence the winged (oul long fine) is flown;

They call it Death. He with his double hand,

Sicknesſe and caſualtie on either hand,

Met many ſtragglers, forcing them to yield:

And where the Turk before him got the field,

He took the gleanings. Thus our ſoldiers fell

By th' Angel, Turk, and Death, heaven, earth, and hell.

Therewithal ſcaped came home as full of grief

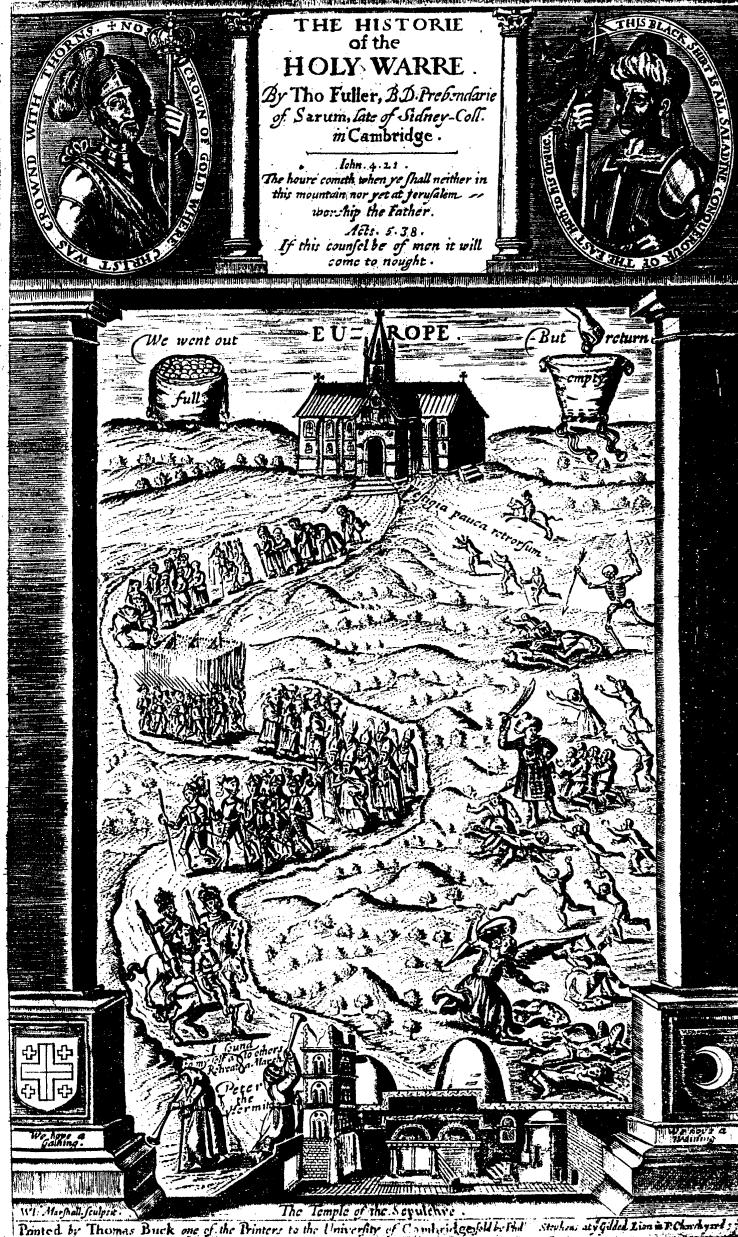
As the poore Purſe is empty of relief.

They're turn'd, and fo' it; but nothing in't

Till new devotion ſhall repair the Mint.

Meantime reade o're the Historie: your brain

There you may fill, though not the Purſe again.



The Temple of the Sepulchre

Pointed by Thomas Buck one of the Printers to the University of Cambridge, corrected by Tho. Stokes, and Golded Linn in P.C. Chayard.

A. num: 15.

part 3, 1818

THE HISTORIE OF THE HOLY WARRE;

By
THOMAS FULLER,
B. D. Prebendarie of Sarum, late of
Sidney Colledge in
CAMBRIDGE.

The fourth edition.



¶ Printed by THOMAS BUCK, one
of the Printers to the Universitie:

And are to be sold by Philemon Stephens, at the signe of
the gilded-Lion in Pauls Churchyard.
Anno Dom. 1651.

To the Honourable

EDWARD MONTAGU { St. JOHN POWLET,
Sonnes and Heirs
to the Right Honourable

EDWARD Lord MONTAGU { JOHN Lord POWLET
of Boughton. { of Hinton-St-George.

¶ Hen I observe the severall alterations in Nobilitie, I find foure principall actours on the Theatres of great Families; the Beginner, Advancer, Continuer, and Ruiner. The Beginner is he who by his vertues refineth himself from the drosse of the vulgar, and layeth the foundation of his house: An excellent workman indeed, as who not onely bringeth his tools, but maketh his materialls. The Advancer, who improveth the patrimonie of Honour he receiveth, and what his Father found glasse and made crystall, he findeth crystall and maketh it pearl. The Continuer, who keepeth his Nobilitie alive, and passeth it along neither marring nor mending it; but sendeth it to his Sonne as he received it from his Father. The Ruiner, who basely degenerateth from his Ancestours; so that in him Nobilitie hath runne so farre from its first starting, that it is tired: and whilst he liveth he is no better then his Grandfathers tombe; without, carved over with honourable titles; within, full of emptiness, or what is worse, corruption.

Now to apply. You cannot be Beginners of your Families; that care was cared for before your nurses were

chosen,



The Epistle

chosen, or your cradles provided. Your Fathers, though of late yeares fixed in a higher Sphear, were bright Starres long before. None can go on in our English Chronicles, but they must meet with a *Montagu* and a *Powlet*, either in peace in their gownes, or in warre in their armour. Yea, when I go backward by the streams of your Paternall Nobilitie, (not to speak of the tributary brooks of their matches) I can never find the first fountain; and hope none shall ever find the last fall. For as for the ruiners of houses, I should rend that thought out with my heart, if it should conceive that of you. Nay, let me tell you; if you be but bare continuers of your Honour, you deceive both the defires and hopes of your friends. Good is not good when proceeding from them from whom farre better is expected. Your youthfull vertues are so promising, that you cannot come off in your riper age with credit without performing what may redound to the advancing of the honour of your familie, and without building your houses one storie higher in the English Historie.

Now know, next Religion, there is nothing accomplisheth a man more then Learning. Learning in a Lord is as a diamond in gold. And if you fear to hurt your tender hands with thornie School-questions, there is no danger in meddling with Historie, which is a velvet-study, and recreation-work. What a pitie is it to see a proper Gentleman to have such a crick in his neck that he cannot look backward! yet no better is he who cannot see behind him the actions which long since were performed. Historie maketh a young man to be old, without either wrinkles or gray hairs, priviledging him with the experience of age, without either the infir-

Dedicatore.

infirmities or inconveniences thereof. Yea, it not onely maketh things past, present; but inableth one to make a rationall conjecture of things to come. For this world affordeth no new accidents, but in the same sene wherein we call it a *new Moon*, which is the old one in another shape, and yet no other then that which hath been formerly. Old actions return again, furbished over with some new and different circumstances.

Now amongst all particular Histories (I may say) none is more generall then this of the Holy Warre, which now I present to your Honours. Some will condemn me for an ill husband, in lavishing two Noble Patrones on one book, whereas one of them might have served to have patronized many volumes. But first, I did it in the weak expression of my thankfulness unto you, being deeply indebted to you both; and I thought it dishonestie to pay all to one Creditour and none to another; and therefore conceived it best, to share my estate joynly betwixt you, as farre forth as it would extend. Secondly, considering the weaknesse of this Work, now being to walk abroad in the world, I thought it must be led by both arms, and needed a double supporter. And now I am sure this Holy Warre, which was unhappy heretofore, when acted; will be happy hereafter, now written and related, because dedicated to your Honours. So resteth

Your Honours

Broad-Windsor,
March 6. 1638.

in all service

THO. FULLER.

To the READER.

DN this work I can challenge nothing to my self, but the composing of it. The materialls were found to my hand : which if any Historian will make, let him not be commended for wit, but shamed for falsehood. If everywhere I have not charged the margin with the Authours names, it is either because the storie is authour for it self (I mean, generally received) or to avoid the often citing of the same place. Where I could not go abroad my self, there I have taken aire at the window, and have cited Authours on others citations; yet so that the stream may direct to the fountain.

If the Reader may reap in few houres what cost me more moneths, just cause have I to rejoice, and he (I hope) none to complain. Thus may the faults of this Book redound to my self, the profit to others, the glory to God.

To his worthily dear Friend,
THOMAS FULLER,
B. D. upon his excellent work, the
HOLY WARRE.

Peace is thy Calling, Friend; thy Title Warre :
What, doth thy Title with thy Calling jarre ?
The Holy Warre ! this makes the wonder cease :
An holy warre becomes a man of peace.

Tasso, be silent ; my friend speaks : his Storie
Hath robb'd thy poeme of its long-liv'd glorie.
So rich his vein, his lines of so high state,
Thou canst not feigne so well as he relate.

Godfrey first entred on this Warre, to free
His Saviours Tombe from Turks captivitie :
And too-too meantly of himselfe he deems,
If thus he his Redeemer not redeems.
A glorious end ! nor did he fear to erre,
In losing life to gain Christs Sepulchre.
But I dare say, were Godfrey now alive,
(Godfrey, who by thy pen must needs survive)
He would again act o're his noble foil,
Doing such deeds as would the former foil,
If for no other reason, yet to be
Deliver'd unto time and fame by thee :
Nor would he fear in such exploits to bleed ;
Then to regain a Tombe, now not to need.

Robert Gomersall, Vicar of
Thorcombe in Devon.

Of this our Authours Book I'll say but this,
(For that is praise ample enough) 'T is his :
Nor all the Muses nor Apollo's layes
Can sing his worth : be his own lines his bayes.

Robert Tyrling.
A On

¶ On M. FULLER s Historie of the H O L Y W A R R E.

Then, Christians, rest secure : ye need not band
Henceforth in Holy Leagues for th' Holy Land,
To conquer and recover it from the Turk :
'T is done already : F U L L E R S learned work
And pen more honour to the cause doth bring,
Then did Great Godfrey or our Lion-King.
Jerusalem with darknesse long beset,
Captiv'd to time more then to Mabonnet,
Inthrall'd to silence and oblivion
(A bondage worse then that of Babylon)
Is now redeem'd. Lo, by this second Story
How she revives into her ancient glory !
Look, how her bury'd pinnacles 'gin to peep
Out of their venerable dust and sleep !
See, how the Temple and the Sepulchre,
Walk'd with the Trumpet of this Holy Warre
From their own grave and ruines, do resent
A resurrection by this monument !
Stay, Pilgrimes, stay; wander not hence so farre,
Set up your rest here in this Holy Warre.
Here you may visit and adore the Shrine
For which so many Saints in arms combine.
Behold the zealous squadrons, how they stand
Arm'd with devotion for the Holy Land.
They 'll take you, if not it : while ye admire
Their zeal, your love will kindle at this fire.
Thus learned FULLER a full conquest makes,
Triumphs o're mens affections, takes
Captive both it and them ; his Historie
Me thinks is not a Warre but Victorie :
Where every line does crown (such strength it bears)
The Authour Laureate, and a trophy rears.

James Duport, B. D. T. C.

To

To his worthy and learned friend M. Th. Fuller,
upon his excellently composed Historie of the
H O L Y W A R R E.

Captain of Arts, in this thy Holy Warre
My Muse defres to be thy Trumpeter,
In thy just praise to spend a blast or two :
For this is all that she (poore thing) can do.

Peter the Hermite like an angry owl,
Would needs go fight all armed in his cowl.
What, had he Holy man nought else to do,
But thus to lose his bloud and credit too ?
Seeking to winne Christ's Sepulchre, God wot,
He found his own : This was the ground he got.
Except he got more ground, when he one day
Besieging Antioch fiercely ran away.
Much wiser was the Pope : At home he stay'd,
And made the world beleive he wept and pray'd.
Mean while (behold the fruit of feign'd tears)
He sets the world together by the ears.
His head serves him, whil'st others use their hands.
Whil'st Princes lose their lives, he gets their lands.
To winne the Holy Land what need Kings roan ?
The Pope can make an Holy Land at home
By making it his own : Then for a fashion,
'Tis said to come by Constantines donation.
For all this Fox-craft, I have leave (I hope)
To think my friend farre wiser then the Pope
And Hermite both : He deals in Holy Wares
Not as a stickler in thosse fruitlesse jarres,
But a compoter rather. Hence his book,
Whereon whil'st I with greedy eyes do look,
Me thinks I travel through the Holy Land,
Viewing the sacred objets on each hand.
Here mounts (me thinks) like Olivet, brave sense;
There flows a Jordan of pure eloquence :
A Temple rich in ornament I find
Presented here to my admiring mind.
Strange force of Art ! The ruin'd Holy Citie
Breedes admiration in me now, not pitie.
To testifie her liking, here my Muse
Makes solemn Vows, as holy Pilgrimes use.
I vow, deare friend, the Holy Warre is here
Farre better writ then ever fought elsewhere.

A 2

Thou-

*Thousands have fought and died : But all this while,
I vow, there nothing triumphs but thy style.
Thy wit hath vanquish'd Barbarisme more
Then ever Godfrey's valour did before.
Might I but choose, I rather would by farre
Be authour of thy Book then of that Warre.
Let others fight ; I vow to read thy works,
Prizing thy ink before the bloud of Turks.*

J. Booth, B. D. C. C. C.

On the Title of this Book.

*H*ow comes stern Warre to be accounted holy,
By nature fierce, complexion melancholy ?
Ile tell you how : Sh' as been at Rome of late,
And gain'd an indulgence to expiate
Her massacres, and by the Popes command
Sh' as been a Pilgrime to the Holy Land,
Where freeing Christians by a sacred plot,
She for her pains this Epithet hath got.

Hugo Atkins.

*N*or need Jerusalem that holy mother
Envie old Troy : since she has found another
To write her battels, and her warres rehearse
In prose as elegant as Homers verse.
Let Sueton's name auguft as Cefars be ;
Curtius more worlds then Alexander see ;
Let Joseph in his countreys siege survive,
And Phenix like in his own ashes thrive :
Thy work, great F U L L E R, will out-live their glory,
And make thy memoria sacred as thy Storie.
Thy style is clear and white : thy very name
Speaks purenesse, and addes lustre to the frame.
All men could wish, nay long, the world would jarre,
So thou dſt be pleas'd to write , compose the Warre.

H. Hutton, M. A. C. Fes.

To

To my friend M: Thomas Fuller, on his Book *The Holy Warre.*

*W*hile of thy Book I speak, Friend, Ile think on
Thy Jordan for my pureſt Helicon ;
And for bifork'd Parnassus, I will set
My phantie on the sacred Oliver.

*'Tis holy ground which now my measur'd feet
Must tread on, then (as in due right 'tis meet)
Let them be bare and plain : for quainter art
May sacrifice to thee without a heart ;
And while it praiseth this thy work, may preach
His glorie, rather then thy merits reach.*

*Here, Reader, thou mayſt judge and well compare
Who moſt in madneſſe, Jew or Romane, ſhare :
This not fo blind, yet in the cleareſt day
Does ſtumble ſtill on ſtocks, on ſtones, on clay ;
The other will in bright and highest noon
Chooſe ſtill to walk by glimmering light o'th Moon.
Here thou mayſt repreſent the fight
Between our earthly Fleſh and heavenly Sp'it.
Lo how the Turk doth drive with flaming ſword
Salvation from him and Gods holy word,
As once the Angel did rebellious vice
With Adam force from bleſſed Paradise.
And this in ſtyle diamond-like doth ſhine,
Which firmeſt parts and cleareſt do combine,
And o're the ſad ground of the Jewiſh ſtorie
As light embrodrie explyes its glorie.
The Temple raiſ'd and ruin'd ſeems more high
In his ſtrong phrase, then when it kiſſ'd the ſkies,
And as the Viper by thoſe pretious ſtears
Which Phaeton beſor'd, of Amber wears
A rich (though fatall) coat, ſo here inclas'd
With words ſo rare, ſo ſplendent, ſo compoſ'd
Evn Mahomet has found a tombe, which ſhall
Laſt when the fainting Loadſtone lets him fall.*

Henry Vintener.

A 3

To

To his old Friend M. FULLER.

I Love no warres,
I love no jarres
Nor strikes fire:
May discords cease;
Let's live in peace;
This I desire.

If it must be
Warres we must see
(So Fates conspire)
May we not feel
The force of steel;
This I desire.

But in thy Book
When I do look
And it admire;
Let Warre be there
But Peace elsewhere;
This I desire.

Tho. Jackson.

To his worthy Friend M. THOMAS FULLER, on his Book, *The Holy Warre*.

There's not a storie, Friend, in thy Book told
But is a jewel; each line a thred of gold:
Though Warre found harsh, and doth our minds affright,
Yet clostid in well-wrought language doth delight;
Such is thy gilded phrase, I joy to reade
In the mafacres, and to see men bleed.
Oft have I seen in hangings on a wall
The ruines of great Troy, and Priams fall:
A storie in it self so full of moe,
It would make the Grecian weep that was the foe;
But being wrought in arras, and made gay
With rich embroidery makes th' beholder say,
I like it well: This flame, that scarre is good;
And then commends this wound, that stream of blood.
Things in themselves distastfull are by art
Made pleasant, and do much delight the heart:

Such

Such is thy book: Though it of bloud relate
And horrid Warre, whose very name we hate,
Yet clad in arras-language and thy phrase,
Doth not affright, but with delight amaze,
And with such pover upon our senses seise,
That 't makes Warre, dreadfull in it self, to please.

William Johnson, *Q. Coll.*

To his dear friend M. Fuller.

WE need not now those zealous Vor'ries meet,
Or Pilgrimes turn; but on our verses feet.
Thy quill hath wing'd the earth, the Holy Land
Doth visit us, commanded by thy hand.
If errie make thy labours prove thy losse,
No marvel, if a Croilade wear the Croffe.

Clement Bretton, *Sidn. Coll.*

THE
HISTORIE
OF THE
HOLY VVAR.

BOOK I.

Chap. 1.

The destruction of the citie and temple of Jerusalem by the Romanes under the conduct of Titus.

Anno
Dom.
34.
72.



When the Jews had made the full measure of their sinnes runne over by putting to death the Lord of life, Gods judgements (as they deserved, and our Saviour foretold) quickly overtook them: for a mighty armie of the Romanes besiegled and facke the citie of Jerusalem, wherein by fire, famine, sword, civil discord, and foreign force * eleven hundred thousand were put to death. An incredible number it seemeth: yet it cometh within the compasse of our belief, if we consider that the siege began at the time of the Pasceover, when in a manner all Judea was inclosed in Jerusalem, all private synagogues doing then their duties to the mother-temple; so that the citie then had more guests then inhabitants. Thus the Pasceover first * instituted by God in mercie to save the Israelites from death, was now used by him in justice to haften their destruction, and to gather the nation into a bundle to be cast into the fire of his anger. Besides those who were slain, ninetie seven thousand were taken captives; and they who had bought our Saviour for thirty pence,* were themselves sold thirtie for a penie. The Generall of the Romanes in this action was Titus, sonne to Vespasian the Emperour. A Prince so good, that he was styled the * *Darling of Mankind* for his sweet and loving nature, (and pitie it was so good a stock had not been better grafted!) so virtuously disposed, that he may justly be counted the glory of all Pagans, and shame of most Christians. He laboured what lay in his power to have fa-

B

* Josephus,
lib. 7 belii.
Iud. Gr. c. 45.
Lat. c. 17.

* Exod. 11.13.

* Adriom. in
Actis Apoll.
fol. 282. credo,
ex Hegesippo.

* Suetonius,
in Tito.

A Table shewing the variety of Places names
in Palestine.

In y Old testament.	In Christ's time.	In S. Hierome's time.	At this day.
1 Selah.	1 Petra in Arabia.	1 Gebalena.	1 Crach.
2	2 Emmaus.	2 Nicopolis.	2 Nicopolis of Christians.
3 Gebal.	3 Byblus.	3	3 Goller, Salles, Zebelto.
4 Geris.	4 Felix Julia.	4 Doryte.	4 Baruti.
5 Golam.	5 Gauloma.	5	5
6 Jericho.	6	6	6
City of Palm-trees.			Subimbre, Suberbe.
7 Megiddo.	7	7	
Kirjath-Arba.	8	8 Eleutheropolis, Cedron, etc.	8 Callil.
Hebron.			
Lashah.	9 Callirhoe.	9	9
		See the rest, Book 1 chap. 23.	

Of thirty mappes and Descriptions of the Holy Land, which I have perusid, I never met with two in all considerables alike. Some sink valleys where others raise mountains; yea, and rivers where others begin them; and sometimes with a wanton dash of their pen, create a Stream in Land, a Creek in Sea, more then Nature ever owned. In these differences wee have followed the Scripture, as an impartiall umpire. The Longitudes and Latitudes (wherein there bee also unreconcileable discords) I have omitted, being advised that it will not quit cost in a mappe of so small extent.



A Table shewing the variety of Places names
in Palestina

In y Old testament.	In Chrsits time.	In S. Hieromes time.	At this day.
1 Selah.	1 Petra in Arabia.	1 Gibalena.	1 Caph.
2 Gebal.	2 Emmaus.	2 Nicopolis.	{ Nicopolis } Christians.
3 Byblus.	3 Byblus.	3.	{ Gate } of Turks.
4 Geris.	4 Felix Iulja.	4 Berythus.	{ Gibler }
5 Golon.	5 Galona.	5	{ Gibler }
6 Jericho.	6	6	Barutti.
7 Megiddo.	7	7	Oriolius.
8 Kirjath-Arba.	8 Eleutheropolis, Cedone, etc.	8 Callil.	Sukimbre.
9 Lachah.	9 Callirhoe.	9	Suberde.

See the rest, Book 1 chap. 23.

Of thirty mappes and Descriptions of the Holy Land, which I have perusid, I never met with two in all considerables alike. Some sink valleyes where others raiſe mountaines; yea, end rivers where others begin them; and sometimes with a wanton dſt of their pen, create a Stream in Land, a Creek in Sea, more then Nature ever owned. In these differences wee have followed the Scripture as an impartiall umpire. The Longitudes and Latitudes (wherein there bee alſo unſeconclable diſcordz) I have omitted, being aduised that it will not geat cost in a mapp of ſo ſmall extent.



W. Marshall, fide

OF THE
HOLY VVAR.

BOOK I.

Chap. I.

The destruction of the citie and temple of Jerusalem by the Romanes under the conduct of Titus.

Anno
Dom.
34.
72.



When the Jews had made the full measure of their sinnes runne over by putting to death the Lord of life, Gods judgements (as they deserved, and our Saviour foretold) quickly overtook them: for a mighty armie of the Romanes besieged and sackt the citie of Jerusalem, wherein by fire, famine, sword, civil discord, and forreign force * eleven hundred thousand were put to death. An incredible number it seemeth: yet it cometh within the compasse of our belief, if we consider that the siège began at the time of the Passeover, when in a manner all Judea was inclosed in Jerusalem, all private synagogues doing then their duties to the mother-temple; so that the citie then had more guests then inhabitants. Thus the Passeover first * instituted by God in mercie to save the Israelites from death, was now used by him in justice to hasten their destruction, and to gather the nation into a bundle to be cast into the fire of his anger. Besides those who were slain, ninetie seven thousand were taken captives; and they who had bought our Saviour for thirty pence,* were themselves sold thirtie for a penie. The Generall of the Romanes in this action was Titus, sonne to Vespasian the Emperour. A Prince so good, that he was styled the * Darling of Mankind for his sweet and loving nature; (and pitie it was so good a

* Josephus,
lib. 7 belli
Jud. Gr. c. 45.
Lat. c. 17.

* Exod. 12. 13.

* Adriocom. in
Actis Apost.
fol. 282. credo,
ex Hegeſippo.
* Suetonius,
in Tito.

ved the temple, and many therein; but the Jews by their obstinacie and desperatenesse made them selves incapable of any mercy. Then was the temple it self made a sacrifice, and burnt to ashes; and of that stately structure which drew the Apostles admiration, not a stone left upon a stone. The walls of the citie (more shaken with the sinnes of the Jews defending them, then with the battering rammes of the Romanes assaulking them) were levelled to the ground; only three towers left standing to witness the great strength of the place, and greater valour of the Romanes who conquered it. But whilst this storm fell on the unbelieving Jews, it was calm amongst the Christians, who warned by Christs predictions, and many other prodigies, fled betimes out of the citie to Pella (a private place beyond Jordan) which served them in stead of a little Zoar, to save them from the imminent destruction.

*Euseb. Eccl.
lib. 3.
cap. 5.*

Chap. 2.

*How Judea was dispeopled of Jews by Adrian
the Emperour.*

* Hieron. tom.
1. pag. 104.

* Num. 24.17.

* Sandy Trav
fol. 145.

Threescore years after, Adrian the Emperour rebuilt the citie of Jerusalem, changing the situation somewhat Westward, and the name thereof to Aelia. To despite the Christians, he built a * temple over our Saviours grave, with the images of Jupiter and Venus; another at Bethlehem, to Adonis her minion: and to enraged the Jews, did engrave swine over the gates of the citie: Who storming at the profanation of their land, brake into open rebellion, but were subdued by Julius Severus the Emperours Lieutenant, an experienced captain, and many thousands slain, with Bencochab their counterfeit Messias (for so he termed himself) that is, the sonne of a starre, usurping that prophesie, * Out of Jacob shall a starre arise; though he proved but a fading comet, whose blazing portended the ruine of that nation. The captives by order from Adrian, were transported into Spain; the country laid waste, which parted with her people and fruitfulness both together. Indeed pilgrims to this day here and there light on parcels of rich ground in Palestine: which God may seem to have left, that men may taft the former sweetnesse of the land, before it was sowned for the peoples sinnes; and that they may guesse the goodnesse of the cloth by the finenesse of the shreds. But it is barren for the generallity: the streams of milk and honys wherewith once it flowed, are now drained dry, and the * whole face of the land looketh sad, not so much

Anno
Dom.

132.

much for want of dressing, as because God hath frowned on it: Yet great was the oversight of Adrian, thus totally to unpeople a province, and to bequeath it to foxes and leopards. Though his memory was excellent, yet here he forgot the old Romanes rule, who to prevent desolations, where they rooted out the natives, planted in colonies of their own people. And surely the country recovered not a competency of inhabitants for some hundred years after. For though many pilgrimes came thither in after-ages, yet they came rather to visit then to dwell: and such as remained there, most embracing single lives, were no breeders for posterity. If any say that Adrian did wilfully neglect this land, and profitisse it to ruine for the rebellion of the people; yet all account it small policie in him, in punishing the Jews to hurt his own Empire, and by this vastation to leave fair and clear footing for forrein enemies to fasten on this countrey, and from thence to invade their neighbouring dominions: as after the Persians and Saracens easily over-ran and dispeopled Palestine; and no wonder if a thin medow were quickly mown. But to return to the Jews: Such stragglers of them, not considerable in number, as escaped this banishment into Spain (for few hands reap so clear as to leave no gleanings) were forbidden to enter into Jerusalem, or so much as to behold it from any rise or advantage of ground. * Yet they obtained of the after Emperours, once a year (namely, on the tenth of August, whereon their citie was taken) to go in and bewail the destruction of their temple and people, bargaining with the soldiery who waited on them, to give so much for so long abiding there; and if they exceeded the time they conditioned for, they must stretch their purses to a higher rate: So that (as S. Hierome noteth) they who bought Christs bloud, were then glad to buy their own tears.

3

* Hieron.
tom. 6. pag.
256.

Chap. 3.

*Of the present wofull condition of the Jews; and
of the small hope, and great hinderances of
their conversion.*

THus the main bodie of the Jews was brought into Spain, and yet they stretched their out-limbs into every countrey: so that it was hard to find a populous citie without a common sink, as without a companie of Jews. They grew fat on the baref pasture, by usurie and brokage; though often squeezed by those Christians amongst whom they lived, countring them dogs, and therefore easily finding a stick to beat them. And alwayes

B 2

4

ways in any tumult, when the sense of order was broken, the Jews lay next harms: as at the coronation of Richard the first, when the English made great feasts, but the pillaged Jews paid the shoe. At last for their many villanies (as falsifying of coin, poysoning of springs, crucifying of Christian children) they were slain in some places, and finally banished out of others. Out of England anno 1291 by Edward the first; France 1307, by Philip the Fair; Spain 1492, by Ferdinand; Portugal 1497, by Emmanuel. But had these two latter kings banished all Jewish blood out of their countreys, they must have emptied the veins of their best subjects, as descended from them. Still they are found in great numbers in Turkie; chiefly in Salonicke, where they enjoy the freest slavery: and they who in our Saviours time so scorned Publicane, are now most employed in that office, to be the Turks toll-gatherers: Likewise in the Popish parts of Germanie, in Poland, the Pantheon of all religions: and Amsterdam may be forfeited to the King of Spain, when she cannot shew a pattern of this, as of all other sects. Lastly, they are thick in the Popes dominions, where they are kept as a testimony of the truth of the Scriptures, and foyl to Christianity, but chiefly in pretence to convert them. But his Holiness his converting facultie worketh the strongest at the greatest distance: for the Indians he turneth to his religion, and these Jews he converteth to his profit. Some are of opinion of the generall calling of the Jews: and no doubt those who dissent from them in their judgements, concurre in their wishes and desires. Yet are there three grand hinderances of their conversion: First, the offence taken and given by the Papists amongst whom they live, by their worshipping of images, the Jews being zeots in the second commandment: Secondly, because on their conversion they must * renounce all their goods as ill gotten; and they will scarce enter in at the doore of our Church, when first they might climbe over so high a threshold: Lastly, they are debarred from the use of the New Testament, the means of their salvation. And thus we leave them in a state most pitifull, and little pitied.

Munster, Cos.
mogr. p. 457.

Polyd. Virg.
pag. 327.

Sandys Trav.
pag. 146.

* P. Heylin,
Microcosm. in
Palestine,
pag. 570.
Sir Ed. Sandys
Survey of the
West.

* Epist. ad
Paulinum,
tom. 1, p. 104.

Chap. 4.

Of the flourishing Church in Judea under Constantine: Julian his successe in building the temple.

A Drian his profanation of Jerusalem lasted * 180 years, as S. Hierome counterfet it: during which time, the Christians under the two persecutions, had scarce a leap-year of peace and quiet,

Anno
Dom.

2

326.

363.

quiet, and yet bare all with invincible patience; yea, some were too ambitious of martyrdome, and rather wood then waited for their own deaths. At last, Constantine (a Britan by birth, as * all authours agree, save one or two late wrangling Grecians, who deserve to be arraigned for felonie, for robbing our land of that due honour) stanched the issue of bloud wherewith the Church had long been troubled, and brought her into acquaintance with peace and prosperity. Then Helen his mother (no lesse famous amongst the Christians for her pietie, then the ancient Helen amongst Pagans for her beauty) travelled to Jerufalem; zeal made her scarce sensible of her age, being eighty years old: and there she purged mount Calvary and Bethlehem of idolatrie; then built in the places of Christs birth, and buriall, and elsewhere in Palestine, many most stately & sumptuous churches. And because she visited the stable and manger of our Saviours nativitie, Jews and Pagans slander her to have been * stabularia, an Ostleresse or a she-stable-groom: The same nickname which since impudent Papists (not for the same reaon, but with as little truth) put on reverend * Cranmer, Archbishop of Canterbury. But these dead flies were not able to corrupt the sweet ointment of her name, fragrant to posterite; and as a * Father writheth of her, *Rosa stabularia, que maluit estimari fieroracut Christum sacrificaret.* To her is ascribed the finding out of the Croffe, the memoria whereof is celebrated the third of May. And from that time the Church flourished in Palestine, being as well provided of able Bishops, as they of liberall maintenance.

Afterwards Julian going about to confute God, befooled himself, and many Jews. This Apostate studied to invent engins to beat down Christianity: yet all the vapours of his brain could not cloud so bright a sunne. He gave the Jews libertie (not so much out of love to them, as hatred to Christians) with money and materials to build again their temple, hoping by raising it, to ruine the truth of Christs prophesie. * Hither flocked the Jews with spades and mattocks of silver, to clear the foundation; the women carried away the rubbish in their laps, and contributed all their jewels and ornaments to advance the work. But a sudden * tempest made them desift, which carried away their tools and materials, with balls of fire which scorched the most adventurous of the builders. Thus they who sought to put out the truth of Christs words, by snuffing it made it burn the brighter. But the wonder of this wonder was, that the hearts of the Jews, and of him who set them on work, were hardened by obstinaey, to be so miracle-proof that all this made no impression in them. Yet * afterwards, the Christians in the place where Solomons temple was, built a stately Church:

but

5

* Camden,
Brit. pag. 51.

* Ambro.
cont. in Thos.
doctum.

* Fox, Star-
tyrol. p. 186.

* Ambros.
ibid.

* Ammianus.
Hist. lib.
23, sub initio.

* Socrat. hist.
Eccl. lib. 3,
cap. 20.
Theodoret,
lib. 3, cap. 20.
Socrat. lib. 5,
cap. 22.

* Atriccom.
Descript. terreni sancti,
pag. 158.

* Sand. Trav.
pag. 192.

6 but not in opposition to God, or with intent to reestablish Jewish rites; but in humilitie, and for the exercise of Christian religion: which church was long after the seaf of the Patriarch. But for fear to exceed the commission of an Historian (who with the outward senses may onely bring in the *pecies*, and barely relate facts, not with the common sense passe verdict or censure on them) I would say, they had better have built in some other place, (especially having room enough besides) and left this floore where the temple stood, alone to her defolations. Yea, God seemeth not so well contented with this their act, the Christians being often beaten our of that church; and at this day * whofoever (though casuall) entreth therein, must either forfeit his life, or renounce his religion.

Anno
Dom.

Chap. 5. *Syria conquered by Chosroes; Chosroes, by Heraclius the Grecian Emperour.*

* Belli sacri
lib. 23. t. 22.

*Thophanes
in Annal.*

* Paulus Dia-
conus Mijtel,
lib. 18.
• Cedrenus.

THe next remarkable alteration happened under Phocas the Emperour, who (saith * Tyrius) had a nature answering his name, which signifieth a Seal, or Sea-calf: for as that fish (little better then a monster) useth lazily to lie sleeping and sunning it self on the shore; so this careleffe usurper minded nothing but his own easse and pleasure, till at last he was slain by Heraclius his successeour: as seldome tyrants corpses have any other balm at their buriall, then their own bloud. Phocas his negligence betrayed the Empire to forrein foes, and invited Chosroes the Persian to invade it, who with a great army subdued Syria and Jerusalem. A conquest little honourable, as made against small resistance, and used with lesse moderation: for besides many other cruelties, he sold many thousandes of Christians to the Jews their old enemies, who in revenge of their former grudge, put them not onely to drudgery, but to torture. Chosroes to grace his triumph, carried the Crosse away with him, forced all the Christians in Persia to turn * Nestorians, and demanded of Heraclius the Grecian Emperour, that he should renounce his religion, and worship the * Sun. Thus we see how light-headed this Pagan did talk, being stark drunk with pride. But the Christian Emperour entring Persia with great forces, quelled at last this vaunting Sennacherib: for to him might he well be compared, for pride, crueltie, blasphemous demands, and the manner of his death, being also slain by Siroes one of his sonnes. Heraclius returning took Jerusalem in his way, and there restored

610.

615.

628.

Anno
Dom.

red *the Crosse (counted a precious jewel) to the temple of the Sepulchre, the cabinet whence it had been violently taken away, and in memorial thereof, instituted on the fourteenth of September the feast of the Exaltation of the Crosse. Yet * some make the celebration thereof of greater antiquite: and the Grecians write, that Chrysoftome (an hundred years before) died on the day called The Exaltation of the Crosse. This if it be true, and not antedated by a Prolepsis, then Heraclius gave the luctre (not first originall) to this festivall, and scoured bright an old holy-day with a new solemnite.

7
* Tyrius, bell.
saec. lib. 23.
cap. 20.
* Baronius, in
Martyrolog.
14 Sept.

Chap. 6. *Of the deluge of the Saracens in Syria, the causes of the farre spreading of Mahometanisme.*

But the finnes of the Eastern countreys, and chiefly their damnable heresies, haftened Gods judgements upon them. In these Western parts, heresies like an angle caught single persons, which in Asia, like a drag-net, took whole provinces. The stayed and settled wits of Europe were not easily removed out of the old rode and tract of religion, whiles the active and nimble heads of the East were more desirous of novelties, more cunning to invent distinctions to cozen themselves with, more fluent in language to expresse their conceits, as alwayes erreours grow the fatest in hot brains. Hence it came to passe, that Melchites, Maronites, Nestorians, Eutychians, Jacobites, overspread these parts, maintaining their pestilente tenents with all obstinacy, which is that dead flesh which maketh the green wound of an erreour fester by degrees into the old sore of an heresie. Then was it just with God to suffer them who would not be convinced with Christian Councells, to be subdued by the Pagans sword: For though Chosroes had not long a fettled government in Palestine, but as a land-floud came and went away quickly, yet the Saracens who shortly followed, as standing water drowned all for a long continuance. * These under Haumar Prince of Arabia, took Jerusalem, conquered Syria, and propagated the doctrine of Mahomet round about.

* Tyrius, bell.
saec. lib. 2. p. 2.

It may justly seem admirable how that senefelic religion should gain so much ground on Christianitie, especially having neither reall substance in her doctrine, nor winning behaviour in her ceremonies to allure professours. For what is it but the scumme of Judaism and Paganisme sod together, and here and there strewed over with a spicke of Christianitie? As Mahomets tombe,

8 tombe, so many sentences in his Alcoran seem to hang by some secret loadstone, which draweth together their gaping independences with a mystical coherence; or otherwise they are flat non-sense. Yet this wonder of the spreading of this leprosie is lessened, if we consider that besides the generall causes of the growing of all errors (namely, the gangrene-like nature of evil, and the justice of God to deliver them over to beleefe lies, who will not obey the truth) Mahometanisme hath raised it self to this height by some peculiar advantages: First, by permitting much carnall libertie to the professors (as having many wives) and no wonder if they get fish enough, that use that bait: Secondly, by promising a paradise of sensuous pleasure hereafter, wherewith flesh and bloud is more affected (as falling under her experience) then with hope of any spirituall delights: Thirdly, by prohibiting of disputes, and suppressing of all learning; and thus Mahomet made his shop dark on purpose, that he might vent any wares: Lastly, this Religion had never made her own passage so fast and so farre, if the sword had not cut the way before her, as commonly the conqueror follow for the most part the religion of the conquerours. By this means that cursed doctrine hath so improved it self, that it may outrive with professors the Church of Rome, which boasteth so much of her latitudo and extens, though from thence to inferre that her faith is the best, is falsely to conclude the finenesse of the cloth from the largenesse of the measure.

Now the condition of the Christians under these Saracens was as uncertain as April-weather. Sometimes they enjoyed the libertie and publick exercise of their religion: and to give the Mahometans their due, they are generally good-fellows in this point, and Christians amongst them may keep their consciences free, if their tongues be fettered not to oppose the doctrine of Mahomet. Sometimes they were under fierce and cruel affliction, their Bishops and Ministers forced to flee from their places were kept very poore, as always the Clergie under persecution count that God gives them living enough, when he gives them their lives. Tyrius * mentioneth one memorabile massacre, which they narrowly escaped. For a spitefull and malicious Saracen had secretly defiled one of the Mosques in Jerusallem; which deed being imputed to the poore Christians, they were all presently dragged to the place of execution to be put to death, when behold a young man, a zealous Christian, by an officious lie (the most lawfull of all unlawfull things) confessed himself alone to be guilty of the fact, and so being killed by exquisite torments, saved the lives of many innocents. In memorie of which act, the Christians in Jerusallem kept a constant solemnity, and once a yeare triumphantly marched with palms

Anno
Dom.

Anno
Dom.
800

palms in their hands into the citie, to perpetuate the remembrance of this deliverance. The longest vacation from persecution they enjoyed, was when * Charles was Emperour of the West, surnamed the Great: a surname which he did not steal, but justly win and deserve, nor like Pompey, who got the title of the Great, though as Cesar observed, he gained his chief fame for martall feats, by conquering the weak and cowardly Bithynians. But this Charles, loved of his friends, feared of his foes, subdued the strong and lusty Lombards: yet did he not Christianity more good by his warre, then by his peace concluded with Aaron Emperour of the Saracens, under whom the Christians in Palestine obtained many priviledges and much prosperity; though this weather was too fair to last long.

* Tyrius,
lib. 1. cap. 3.

Suetonius, in
Cæsare.

Chap. 7.

The original and increase of the Turks, their conquering the Saracens, and taking of Jerusallem.

But the Christians in Palestine afterward changed their masters, though not their condition, being subdued by the Turks. It will be worth our and the Readers pains to enquire into the original of this Nation, especially because (as the river Nilus) they are famous and well known for their overflowing stream, though hidden and obscure for their fountain. Whence they first came Authors only do agree in disagreeing: but most probable it is out of Scythia, * Pomponius Mela reckoning them among the inhabitants of that country nigh the river Tanais. This Scythia (since called Tartaria) was a virgin-country, never forced by forrein arms: for the Monarchs who counted themselves Conquerours of the world (by a large Synecdoche taking a sixth part for the whole) never subdued it. Alexander sent some troops to assault Naura and Gabaza, two out-counties thereof, as an earnest that the rest of his armie should follow: but hearing how these were welcomed, willingly lost his earnest, and disposed of his army otherwise. The Romane Eagles flew not thus farre, and though heard of, were never seen here. The reasons that made the Turks leave their native soyl, was the barrennesse thereof, and therefore the * Poet maketh famine (which sometime travelleth abroad into other countreys) here to have her constant habitation. And yet no doubt so vast a country would maintain her people, if the wildnesse thereof were tamed with husbandry: But the people (scorning that their ground should be better civilized

* Lib. 1.
cap. ult.

* Ovid. 8.
Metam.

.C then

10 then themselves) never manure it, and had rather provide their bread with the sword, than with the plough. Other parciall causes might share in these Turks removall, but the cause of causess was the justice of God, to suffer this unregarded people to grow into the terror of the world, for the punishment of Christians: and we may justly hope, that when the correction is done, the rod shall be burnt; especially finding already their force to abate, being at this day stopt with the half-kingdome of Hungarie, who formerly could not be staled by the whole Empire of Greecce.

Sabell. Enn. 9. lib. 2.
The first step these Turks took out of their own country was into Turcomania, a Northern part of Armenia, conquered and so called by them: where they lived like the Scythian Nomades, always wandring, yet always in their way, none claiming a propriete in the land as his, all defending the common interest therein as theirs.

The next step was into Persia, whither they were called to assist Mahomet the Saracen Sultan against his enemies; where taking notice of their own strength, the Saracens cowardize, and the pleasure of Persia, they under Tangrolipix their first king, overcame that large dominion. Then did the Turks take upon them the Mahometan religion, and having conquered the Saracens by their valour, were themselves subdued by the Saracen superstitution. An accident more memorable, because not easily to be paralleled (excepting king * Amaziah, who having taken Edom, was took with the idolatry thereof) because conquerours commonly bring their religion into the places they subdue, and not take it thence.

Their third large stride was into Babylon, the Caliph whereof they overcame. And shortly after under Cetlu-muses their second king, they wan Mesopotamia, the greatest part of Syria, and the citie of * Jerusalem. Mean time whilest these vultures (Turks and Saracens) pecked our each others eyes, the Christians (if they had husbanded this occasion) might much have advantaged themselves, and might have recovered their health by these contrary poysons expelling each other. But the Grecian Emperours given over to pleasure and covetousnesse, regarded not their own good, till at last the Turks devoured them; as (God willing) shall be shewed hereafter. As for those Christians who lived in Palestine under the Turks, they had no leafe of their safetie, but were tenants at will for their lives and goods to their tyrants: though it rained not down-right, yet the storm of persecution hung over their heads; their minds were ever in torture, being on the rack of continuall fear and suspense; and Simon himself was no better then an honourable slave, though Patriarch of Jerusalem, as appeareth by his * letters of complaint.

Chap.

*Knoles Tur. hist. pag. 13.**Anno
Dom.*

844.

1030.

1094.

1060.

*Anno
Dom.**The character of Peter the Hermite; his solici-
ting the Holy Warre; the Council at Clermont;
and the successe thereof.*

Chap. 8.

44

It happened there came a pilgrome to Jerusalem called Peter Ian-Hermite, born at Amiens in France, one of a contemptible person: His silly looks carried in them a despair of any worth, and yet (as commonly the richest mines lie under the basest and barrenest surface of ground) he had a quick apprehension, eloquent tongue, and what got him the greatest repute, was accounted very religious. With him Simon the Patriarch of Jerusalem often treated, concerning the present miseries of the Christians under the Turks; what hope of amendment; and how the matter might secretly be contrived, that the Princes in Europe might assist and relieve them. Peter moved with the Patriarchs persuasions, the equity and honourableness of the cause, and chiefly with a vision (as they say) from * heaven (wherein our Saviour himself appointed him his Legate, with a Commission to negotiate the Christian cause) took the whole businesse upon him, and travelled to Rome to consult with Pope Urbane the second, about the advancing of so pious a designe.

Now, though many cry up this Hermite to have been so pretious a piece of holynesse, yet * some suspect him to be little better then a counterfeit, and a cloke-father for a plot of the Popes begetting: because the Pope alone was the gainer by this great adventure, and all other Princes of Europe, if they cast up their audit, shall find themselves losers: This with some is a presumption, that this cunning merchant first secretly employed this Hermite to be his factour, and to go to Jerusalem to set on foot so beneficiale a trade for the Romish Church. As for the apparition of our Saviour, one may wonder that the world should see most visions when it was most blind; and that that age most barren in learning, should be most fruitfull in revelations. And surely had Peter been truly inspired by God, and moved by his Spirit to begin this warre, he woul'd not have apostated from his purpose: so mortified a man would not have feared death in a good cause, as he did afterwards, and basely ran away at * Antioch. For when the siege grew hot, his devotion grew cold, he found a difference betwixt a voluntary fast in his cell, and a necessary and undispenstable famine in a camp: so that being well hunger-pincht, this cunning companion who was the

** Tyrius,
lib. 1. cap. 12.*** Ursberg.
Chron. pag.
227. Quem
tamet postea
multi hypo-
ceriam fuisse:
dicuntur.*** Sabell. Enn.
9. lib. 3. col.
357.
Et Amilias,
Dige. Franc.
pag. 123. in
Philipp. 1°.*

C 2

trum-

12
* Ut defor-
signorum,
statrum, com-
militum, pro-
prietor.

* Sabell. Enn.
9. lib. 3.
Tyrinus, lib. 1.
cap. 15.
Baron. Anno
1095.
v. Malmesb.
lib. 4. cap. 2.
All have ev-
erall let Orna-
tions.

Baroniis, in
Anno 1095.
col. 688.

* Davenius, in
Anno 1096.
col. 691.

* Sabell. Enn.
9. lib. 3 pag.
354.

* Baroniis,
tom. 1, pag.
692.

* Livius, lib.
45.

trumpet to sound a march to others, secretly sounded a retreat to himself, ran away from the rest of the Christians, and was shamefully brought back again for a * fugitive.

But to return to Pope Urbane, who was zealous in the cause to further it, and called a Council at Clermont in France, where met many Princes and Prelates to whom he made a long oration; * Authorise differ in the mould, but they agree in the metall, that it was to this effect: First, he bemoned the miseries of the Christians in Asia, and the vastation of those holy places. Jerusalem, which was once the joy of the whole earth, was now become the grief of all good men: The Chapell of Christs conception, at Nazareth, birth, at Bethlehem, buriali, on mount Calvary, ascension, on mount Oliver, once the fountains of pietie, were now become the sinks of all profaneness. Next, he encouraged the Princes in the Council, to take arms against those infidels, and * to break their bonds in funder, and to cast their cords far from them, and (as it is written) to cast out the handmaid and her children. Otherwise, if they would not help to quench their neighbours houses, they must expect the speedy burning of their own, and that these barbarous nations would quickly over-run all Europe. Now to set an edge on their courage, he promised to all that went this voyage, a full remission of their sinnes and penance here, and the enjoying heaven hereafter. Lastly, thus concluded, * Gird your swords to your thighs, O ye men of might. It is our parts to pray, yours to fight; ours (with Moses) to hold up unweared hands to God, yours to stretch forth the sword against these children of Amalek. Amen.

It is above belief with what chearfulnessse this motion, meeting with an active and religious world, was generally entertained, so that the whole assembly cried out, * God willeth it: A speech which was afterwards used as a fortunate watch-word in their most dangerous desigines. Then took many of them a crose of red cloth on their right shoulder, as a badge of their devotion: And to gain the favourable assistance of the Virgin Marie, to make this warre the more happy, her * office was instituted, containing certain prayers, which at Canonickal hours were to be made unto her. If fame, which hath told many a lie of others, be not herein belied her self, the things concluded in this Council, were the same night reported at impossible distance in the utmost parts of Christendome. What spirituall intelligences there should be, or what echoes in the hollow arch of this world should so quickly refound news from the one side thereof to the other, belongeth not to us to dispute. Yet we find the * overthrow of Perseus brought out of Macedon to Rome in fourre daies; and fame(mounted no doubt on some Pegasus) in Domitians time, brought a report 2500 miles in one day.

Chap.

Anno
Dom.

1095.

Anno
Dom.

1095.

Arguments for the lawfulness of the Holy War:

IT is stiffly canvased betwixt learned men, whether this warre was lawfull, or not. The reasons for the affirmative are fetcht either from piety or policie: And of the former sort are these.

1. All the earth is Gods land let out to tenants; but Judea was properly his demesnes, which he kept long in his own hands for himself and his children. Now though the infidels had since violently usurped it, yet no prescription of time could prejudice the title of the King of Heaven, but that now the Christians might be Gods champions to recover his interest.

2. Religion bindeth men to relieve their brethren in distresse, especially when they implore their help, as now the * Christians in Syria did, whose entreaties in this case, founded commands in the eares of such as were piously disposed.

* Tyrinus, lib. 1.
cap. 11.

3. The Turks by their blasphemies and reproches against God and our Saviour, had disinherited and develte themselves of all their right to their lands; and the Christians, as the next undoubted heirs, might seize on the forfeiture.

4. This warre would advance and increase the patrimony of Religion, by propagating the Gospel, and converting of infidels. If any object that Religion is not to be beaten into men with the dint of swords, yet it may be lawfull to open the way by force, for instruction, catechising, and such other gentle means to follow after.

5. The beholding of those sacred places in Palestine, would much heighten the adventurers devotion, and make the most frozen heart to melt into pious meditation.

6. * This enterprise was furthered by the perswasions of sun-dry godly men, S. Bernard, and others. Now though a lying spirit may delude the prophets of Achab, yet none will be so uncharitable, as to think God would suffer his own Michaiah to be deceived.

* Bellarm lib.
2. de Rom.
Pmt. cap. 17.

7. * God set his hand to this warre, and approved it by many miracles which he wrought in this expedition, and which are so confidently and generally reported by credit-worthy writers, that he himself is a miracle that will not beleive them.

Neither want there arguments derived from policie.

1. Palestine was a parcell of the Romane Empire, though since won by the Saracens: and though the Emperour of Constantinople could not recover his right, yet did he alwayes continue his claim, and now (as * appeared by his letters read in the Placentine Council) Alexius requested these Princes of the West to assist him in the recovery thereof.

C 3

2. A

* Baroniis,
tom. 1, pag.
687.

14

2 A preventive warre grounded on a just fear of an invasion is lawfull: But such was this Holy Warre. And because most stresse is laid on this argument, as the maine supporter of the cause, we will examine and prove the parts thereof.

Though umbrages and light jealousies created by cowardly fanies be too narrow to build a fair quarrel on; yet the lawfulness of a preventive warre founded on just fear, is warranted by reason and the practise of all wise Nations. In such a case it is folly to do as contry-fellows in a Fenſe-School, never ward a blow till it be past: but it is best to be before-hand with the enemie, leſt the medicine come too late for the maladie. In ſuch dangers to play an after-game, is rather a ſhift then a policie: especially ſeeing warre is a Tragedie which alwayes destroyeth the Stage whereon it is acted; it is the moft aduiled way, not to wait for the enemie, but to feek him out in his own country.

Now that the Mahometans (under whom the Turks and Saracens are comprehended, differing in nation, agreeing in religion and ſpite againſt Christians) were now juſtly to be feared, cannot be denied. So vaſt was the appetitie of their ſword, that it had already devoured Asia, and now referved Grecia for the ſecond courſe. The Bofporus was too narrow a ditch, and the Empire of Grecia too low an hedge to ſenfe the Pagans out of West-Christendome: yea, the Saracens had lately wasted Italy, pillaged and burned many Churches neare Rome it ſelf, conquered Spain, inroded Aquitain, and poſſeffed ſome iſlands in the mid-land-fea. The caſe therefore ſtanding thus, this Holy Warre was both lawfull and neceſſary: which like unto a ſharp pike in the boſſe of a buckler, though it had a mixture of offend- ing, yet it was chiefly of a deſſenſive nature, to which all preventive warres are juſtly reduced.

Laſtly, this warre would be the ſewer of Christendome, and drain all diſcorſes out of it. For active men like mill-stones in motion, if they have no other grift to grind, will ſet fire one on another. Europe at this time ſurfeited with people, and many of them were of ſtirring naſtres, who counted themſelves undone, when they were out of doing; and therefore they employed themſelves in muſtall jarres and contentions: But now this Holy Warre would make up all breaches, and unite all their forces againſt the common foe of Christianitie.

Anno

Dom.

155

A.D.

Dom.

155

Chap. 10.

Reasons againſt the Holy Warre.

YEt all theſe reaſons prevail not ſo forcibly, but that* many are of the contrary opinion, and count this warre both needleſe and unlawfull, induced thereunto with theſe or the like arguments.

1. When the Jews were no longer Gods people, Judea was no longer Gods land by any peculiар appropriation; but on the other ſide, God ſtamped on that countrey an indelible character of defolation, and ſo ſcorched it with his anger, that it will never change colour, though Christians ſhould waſh it with their blood. It is labour in vain therefore for any to endeavour to re-establish a flouriſhing kingdome in a blaſted countrey: and let none ever look to reap any harveſt, who ſow that land which God will have to lie fallow.

2. Grant the Turks were no better then dogs, yet were they to be let alone in their own kennel. They and the Saracens their predeceſſors, had now enjoyed Palestine four hundred and ſixty yeareſ: Prescription long enough to ſodder the moft crackt title, and not onely to corroborate but to create a right. Yea, God himſelf may ſeem herein to allow their title, by ſuffering them to ſo long peaceably to enjoy it.

3. To viſit thoſe places in Jerufalem (the theatre of ſo many mysteries and miracles) was as uſelesſe as difficult, and might be ſuperiſtions if any went (as it is to be feared too many did) with placing tranſcendent holineſſe in the place, and with a wooden devotion to the materiall Croſſe. The* Angel ſent the women away from looking into the ſepulchre, with *He is riſen, he is not here*; and thereby did dehort them and us, from burying our affections in Chrifts grave, but rather to ſeek him where he was to be found. At this day a gracious heart maketh every place a Jerufalem, where God may as well and as acceptably be worshipped. S. Hilarion, (* though he lived in Palestine) ſaw Jerufalem but once, and then onely because he might not ſeem to neglect the holy places for their neareſt and vicinie. And S. Hierome (though himſelf lived in Bethlehem) diſſuaded Paulinus from coming thither; for the paine would be above the profit.

4. Laſtly, this warre was a quickſand to ſwallow treaſure, and of a hot diſtillation to devoure valiant men: no good, much evil came thereby; and the Christians that went out to ſeek an enemie in Asia, brought one thence, to the danger of all Europe, and the loſe of a fair part thereof. For though

* Job. Cam-mamus, De-jure Majest. Theſ. 22. Et Albert. Ann. Chro. Hierofal lib. 4. cap. 28. Et Reinherius in Pref. hist. Orient.

Matth. 28.6

* Hieron. tom. 1. pag. 193. in Epif. qd. 2. qd. 4. qd. 5.

16

Caret successibus opto,
Qui quis ab eveniu facta notan-
da putet :

and though an argument fetcht from the successe is but a cyphre in it self, yet it increaseth a number when joyned with others.

* Vide *Beſel-*
dam, De Re-
gibis Hierof.
pag. 99. &c.
sequentibus.
** Lib. 3. De*
Rom. Zonit.
cap. 17.

* Ezek. 38.3.

* Aventinus,
lib. 5. Annal.

These reasons have moved the most* moderate and refined Papists, and all Protestants generally in their judgements to fight against this Holy warre. But as for the opinion of Bibliander (who therein stands without company) if * Bellarmine hath truly reported it, it is as farre from reason, as charity; namely, that these Christians that went to fight against the Saracens, were the very army of Gog and Magog spoken of by the Prophet * Ezekiel. Yet must we not here forget, that such as at this time went to Jerusalem (whether ridiculoully, or blasphemously, or borth, let others judge) did carry a * goode before them, pretending it to be the holy Ghost.

Chap. II.

The private ends and profits of the Pope, which he is charged by Authors to have had in this Holy Warre.

* In his Chro-
 nologie.

* *Balneum, in*
Rom. Post.
in Urban. 2.

* Matt. Dreyf.
De bello Sacr.
 cited by Lempadius Mellis-
 sic. *Histor.*
 part. 3. pag.
 266.

IT is enough with some to make it suspicuous that there were some sinistre ends in this warre, because Gregorie the seventh, otherwise called Hildebrand (and by Luther, * Larva diaboli), the worst of all that sat in that Chair, first began it, but death preventing him, Urbane the second (whom Cardinal Benno called * Turbane for troubling the whole world) effected it. And though the pretenses were pious and plausible, yet no doubt the thoughts of his Holinesse began where other mens ended, and he had a privie project beyond the publick designe;

First, to reduce the * Grecians into subjection to himselfe with their three Patriarchs of Jerusalem, Antioch, and Constantynople, and to make the Eastern Church a Chapell of ease to the Mother-Church of Rome.

Secondly, this warre was the Popes house of Correction, whither he sent his sturdie and stubborn enemies to be tamed. Such high-spirited men whom he either feared or suspected, he condemned to this employment, as to an honourable banishment: and as Saul being afraid of David sent him to fight against the Philistines, that so he might fall by their sword; so the Pope had

Anno
 Dom.

Anno
 Dom.
 had this cleanly and unsuspected conveyance to * rid away those he hated, by sending them against infidels. This appeared most plainly in the matter of the Emperour himself, whom he sent from home, that so he might rob his houle in his absence. At the beginning of this warre, the Popes temporall power in Italy was very flender, because the Emperours dominions did gird him clothe and hard on all fides: but soon after he grew within short time without all measure, and did lurch a castle here, gain a citie there from the Emperour, whiles he was employed in Palestine: So that by the time that the Christians had lost all in Syria, the Emperour had lost all in Italy; his dominions there being either swallowed up by Peters Patrimony, or by private Princes, and upstart free-States, which as so many splinters flew out of the broken Empire.

Thirdly, hereby the Pope determined on his side the gainfullest controverſie that ever was in Christendome. This was about the investiture of Bishops, whether the right lay in the Pope, or in secular Princes. Now his Holinesse diverted this question out of Princes heads, by opening an iſſue an other way; and gave vent to the activity of their ſpirits in this martiell imployment, and in the mean time quietly went away without any corrival, concluding the controverſie for his own profit.

Laſtly, he got a maſſe of money by it. He had the office to bear the bag, and what was put into it, as contributed to this action from pious people, and expended but ſome few drops of the showres he received. Gueſſe the reſt of his griping tricks from this one which * Matth. Paris reporteth. First, he prompted many people in England unſir for arms, to take upon them a vow to go to the Holy warre, and this was done by the exhortation and preaching of the Friars. This done, he compelled and forced those Votaries (whose purſes were more uſefull for this ſervice then their perſons) to commute their journey into money, the payment whereof ſhould be as meritorious as their pilgrimage. And thus ſcraped he a maſſe of coin from ſuch ſilly people as thought themſelves cleaſed of their finnes, when they were wiped of their money, and who having made themſelves ſlaves to the Pope by their raſh vow, were glad to buy their liber-
 tie at his price.

As the Pope, ſo moſt of the Clergie improved their estates by this warre: for the ſecular Princes who went this voyage, ſold or morgaged moſt of their means (ſelling for gold to pur-
 chafe with ſteel and iron) and the Clergie were generally their chapmen. For they advised these undertakers, ſeeing this ac-
 tion was for Christ and his Church, rather to make over their estates to ſpirituali men, of whom they might again redeeme the ſame, and from whom they ſhould be ſure to find the faireſt dealing,

17
 * See Daniel,
 in Henry the
 third, pag.
 141.

* Hipp. Angl.
 pag. 702. &
 703. Diversis
 municipiis
 simplicem
 Dei populum
 fulminata ſtā
 molebatur
 Romana eu-
 ria private,
 nihil petens
 nisi aurum &
 argenteum.

18

* *Berlinus,*
De gest. Fran.
pag. 109.
* *Daniel, in*
Henry filii,
pag. 49.

dealing, then to lay-men. * Godfrey Duke of Bouillon sold that Dukedom to the Bishop of Liege; and the castle of Sarteny and Monfa, to the Bishop of Verdune. Baldwin his brother sold him the citie of Verdune. Yea, by these sales the third part of the best feoffs in France came to be possessed by the Clergie, who made good bargains for themselves, and had the conscience to buy earth cheap, and to sell heaven deare. Yea, this voyage laid the foundation of their temporall greatnessse, till at last the daughter devoured the mother, and wealth impaired religion.

Chap. 12.

The qualitie and condition of those people who undertook the warre.

IT is not to be expected that all should be fish which is caught in a drag-net, neither that all should be good and religious people who were adventurers in an action of so large a capacite as this warre was. We must in chariticall allow, that many of them were truly zealous, and went with pious intents. These were like to those of whom Bellarmine speaketh, who had no fault *preter nimiam fanfritatem*, too much fanaticke, which a learned man interpreth, too much superstition. But besides these well-meaning people, there went also a rabble-rout, rather for company than conscience. * Debtors took this voyage on them as an acquaintance from their debts, to the defrauding of their creditors: Servants counted the conditions of their service cancelled by it, going away against their masters will: Thieves and murderers took upon them the croſſe, to escape the gallows: Adulterers did penance in their armour. A lamentable case that the devils black guard should be Gods souldiers. And no wonder if the successſe was as bad as ſome of the adventurers, especially ſeeing they retained their old conditions under a new climate. And (as if this voyage had been like to repentance, never too ſoon nor too late for any to begin) not onely green ſtrippings unripe for warre, but also decayed men to whom age had given a writ of cafe, became souldiers; and thoſe who at home should have waited on their own graves, went farre to visit Chrifts ſepulchre. And which was more, women (as if they would make the tale of the Amazoni truth) went with weapons in mens clothes; a behaviour at the beſt immodest, and modeſte being the cafe of chaſtitie, it is to be feared that where the cafe is broken, the jewel is lost. This enterprize was also the mo-

* *Whistler,*
De Ecccl. con-
ſerv. cap. 11.
* *Albert. Aqu.*
in Chron. His-
tor. lib. x.
cap. 2.

Tyrius,
lib. 1. cap. 16.

Anno
Dom.

~~~

19

\* *Malmesb.*  
lib. 4. pag. 133.

ther of much non-residence, many Prelares and Friars ( fitter to handle a pen-knife then a ſword) left their covents and paſtorall charges to follow this busynesse. The totall ſumme of thofe pilgrimageſouldiers amounted to three hundred thouſand; and ſome Writers do double that number. No doubt the Christians army had been greater, if it had been leſſe: for the belly was too big for the head, and a medley of nations did rather burden then strengthen it. Besides, the armie was like a cloth of many colours, and more ſeams; which ſeams though they were curiouſly drawn up for the preſent, yet after long wearing began to be ſeen, and at laſt brake out into open rents.

## Chap. 13.

*The adventurers ſorted according to their ſeverall nations.*

THE French, Dutch, Italian, and English were the four ele-mental nations whereof this army was compounded: of theſe the French were predominant; they were the cape-merchants in this adventure. That nimble nation firſt apprehended the project, and eagerly prosecuted it. As their language wanteth one proper word to exprefſe *Stand*, ſo their natures miſlike a ſettled, fixed poſture, and delight in motion and agitation of buſineſſe: Yea, France (as being then beſt at leaſure) contributed more ſouldiers to this warre then all Christendome beſides. The ſignal men were, Hugh ſurnamed *le Grand* brother to the King of France, Godfrey Duke of Bouillon, Baldwin and Eustace his younger brethren, Stephen Earl of Bloys father to Stephen afterwards King of England, Reimund Earl of Tholouse, Robert Earl of Flanders, Hugh Earl of Saint-Paul, Baldwin de Burge, with many more; beſides of the Clergie, Aimar Biſhop of Puy and Legate to the Pope, and William Biſhop of Orange.

Germanie is flandered to have ſent none to this warre at this firſt voyage; and that other pilgrimageſ passing through that coun-try, were mocked by the Dutch and called \* fools for their pains. It is true, the Germane adventurers in number anſwered not the largeneſſe and populouſneſſe of their country: for Henry the Emperor (a Prince whom the Pope long hacked at, and hewed him off at laſt) \* being deſirous to go this voyage, was tied up at home with ciwil diſcordes. Yet we find a compeſenſie of ſouldiers of that nation, beſides thoſe under Godescalcus a Priſt, Emmicho the Rhene-grave, and Count Herman their leaders. But though Germanie was backward at the

\* *Centurit.*  
ex Uſperg.  
cent. II. col.  
416.

\* *Pantalon.*  
De viris Ger.  
part. 2. pag.  
139.

20

the first, yet afterwards it proved the main Atlas of the warre : that Nation like a heavie bell was long a rasing, but being got up made a loud sound.

Italy sent few out of her heart and middle Provinces nigh Rome. The Pope was loth to adventure his darlings into danger: those white-boyes were to stay at home with his Holinesse their tender father: Wherefore \* he dispensed with them for going, as knowing how to use their help nearer, and to greater profit. Peters patrimonie must as well be looked to, as Christ's sepulchre. But though the Pope would spend none of his own fewel, he burnt the best stakes of the Emperours hedge, and furthered the Imperiall partie to confume it self in this tedious warre. Out of the furthermost parts of Italy, Boemund Prince of Tarentum, and Tancred his nephewe ( both of the Normane seed, though growing on the Apulian foyl ) led an armie of twelve thousand men. And Lombardie was also very liberall of her sholdiers towards this expedition.

\* Daniel, in  
William the  
second, pag. 49.

Daniel, ut  
prius.

\* Amilias,  
De gest. Fran.  
pag. 109.

\* Almster,  
Cosmogr.

England ( the Popes pack-horse in that age, which seldom rested in the stable when there was any work to be done ) sent many brave men under Robert Duke of Normandie, brother to William Rufus; as Beauchamp, and others, whose names are lost. Neither surely did the Irish-mens feet stick in their bogs, though we find no particular mention of their achievements.

Spain had other use for her swords against the Saracens at home, and therefore sent none of her men abroad. As \* one faith, The Spaniards did follow their own Holy warre; a work more necessary, and no lesse honourable. Thus they acted the same part, though not on the same stage with our Pilgrimes, as being also employed in fight against infidels.

Poland had the same excuse for not much appearing clean through this warre; because she lieth bordering on the Tartars in her appendant countrey of Lituania, and therefore was busied in making good her frontiers. Besides, no wonder if Prussia, Lituania, and Livonia were not up in this service, for it was scarce break of day with them, and the sunne of the Gofpel was newly ( if at all ) risen in those parts. Yea, Poland was so farre from sending men hither, that she fetcht them from hence, \* and afterwards implored the aid of the Teutonick order, who came out of Palestine to assist her against her enemies.

Hungary might bring filling-stones to this building, but few foundation or corner-stones, and at this time had no Commander of note in this action.

Scotland also presenteth us not with any remarkable piece of service which her men performed in all this warre. It was not want of devotion, which was hot enough in that cold countrey: rather we may impute it to want of shipping, that countrey being

Anno  
Dom.

Anno  
Dom.

ing little powerfull at sea: or (which is most probable) the actions of this nation are hidden, as wrapped up in the bundle with some others; I should guesse under the French, but the intimation of thole two people is of a farre later date.

Denmark and Norway neare-acquainted with the Arctick pole, though they lagged the last, (and may therein be excused because of the length of the way) were sharers in the honour of this employment, and performed good sea-service.

Sweden either acted not at all, or else had a very short part in this busynesse. That countrey being a separatist because of her remote situation, had little communion with other parts of Europe. And indeed histories are mute of Sweden, but that of late Gustavus his victorie hath put a tongue into them, and hath made that countrey famous to all posteritic.

1096  
March  
8

July

## Chap. 14.

*The sad beginning of the warre.*

**T**Heir first setting forth was checked with bad successe. For Walter Senfaver a noble man (but what countrey-man it is unknown) \* who had more of the fail of valour then the basalt of judgement, led forth an ill-grown and unproportioned armie, with many thousand foot, and \* eight horsemen onely. But we must not think that this fowl should flie farre, whose wings were so short, and train so long. His men were routed and slain by the Bulgarians, and he himself through many miseries scarce recovered Constantinople. Peter the Hermite with his armie went further to meet his own destruction. For after many difficulties having crossed the Bosphorus, they came into Asia, and there found some cities forsaken by the Turks their inhabitants. This they imputed to their enemies fear, which proceeded from their policie: and therefore being more greedy to pillage, then carefull to fortifie the places they took, hunted after preys so long till they became one themselves. Hugh brother to the King of France, with his surname of the Great, had as little successe as the former; his armie being quickly abridged by the furious Bulgarians in their passage, and \* he brought prisoner to Constantinople. Besides these, one Goteſcalcus a Priest, a wolf in sheeps clothing, and Emmicho a tyrant-Prince neare the Rhene, led forth a rout of wicked people, who carried the badge of the Croſſe, and served the devil under Christ's livery, killing and pillaging the poore Jews and other people in Germanie as they went. This made Coloman King of Hungarie, not onely deny them paſſage through his countrey ( and no wonder

21

\* Almias.  
lib. 4. p. 133.

\* Cæſarius,  
pag. 893. in  
Annos 1096.

\* Amilias,  
De gest. Fran.  
pag. 111.

\* Malmes.  
lib. 4. pag. 133

\* Vrſpergen.  
pag. 227. &  
228.

22

wonder if he was loth to lodge those guests who were likely to rob their host) but also put most of them to the sword. Some suspected these beginnings to be but the bad breakfast to a worse dinner; and therefore abandoning their resolutions, returned home: others little moved hereat, conceived these first defeats to be but the clarifying of the Christian army from the dregs of base and ruder people.

### Chap. 15. *The Pigrimes arrivall at Constantinople, enter-tainment, and departure.*

\* vespereus.  
pag. 233.

**B**ut now (to speak in my \* Authours phrase) the chaff being winnowed with this fanne out of Gods flore, the good grain began to appear. Godfrey Duke of Bouillon set forth, and marched through Hungary with an armie of civil and well-conditioned soldiery; so also did Boemund, Reimund, and Robert the Normaine, whose setting forth bare diverse dates: and they embrased severall courses through sundry countreys; but the first Rendezvous where all met was at Constantinople.

This was no pleanty prospect to Alexius the Grecian Emperour, to see the sea full of ships, the shore of soldiery. He had gotten the Empire by bad practices (by depoising and cloistering Nicephorus his predecessor) and an ill conscience needeth no enemye but it self: for now he affrighteth himself with the fanste, that these Pilgrimes were so many pioners come to undermine him. Yea, he seemeth to have entailed his jealousies on all his successours; who never cordially affected this warre, but suspected that these Western Christians made but a false blow at Jerusalem, and meant to hit Constantinople. But though he had a storm in his heart, yet he made all fair weather in his face; and finding these his guests so strong that they could command their own welcome, he entertained them rather for fear then love. At last it was covenanted betwixt them, that what countreys or cities soever (Jerusalem alone excepted) once belonging to this Grecian Empire, should be recovered by these Latines, should all be restored to Alexius; in lieu whereof he was to furnish them with armour, shipping, and all other warlike necessaries. Thus might that Emperour have much improved his estate by these adventurers; but he (like those who cannot see their own good for too stedfast looking on it) by his over-carefulness and causeless suspicion, deprived himself of this benefit, and implunged himself in much just hatred for his unjust

\* M. Paris,  
pag. 38.

Emilius,  
De gest. Fran.  
pag. 122.

Anno  
Dom.  
~

Anno  
Dom.  
~

just dealing and treachery. Polybius (though a Grecian himself) yet thus painteth out his countrymen amongst the Greeks; If one should lend a talent, though he should have for it ten bonds, ten feals, and twice as many witnesses, yet the borrower will not keep his credit. It seems Alexius was one of this same faith, who though so solemnly engaged on his honour to perform this agreement so advantagious to himself, most un-prince-like brake his word, and molested these Pilgrims afterwards.

\* Some question the discretion of these Princes in this agreement, to bargain to purchase Alexius his profit with their blood, and conceive that they much under-valued themselves in swearing homage unto him; which onely\* Robert Earl of Flanders (remembering that he was free-born and bred) refused to do: Yet they may herein be partly excused; for they apprehended it of absolute necessity to gain this Emperours favour, on what price soever, because his countrey was the high-way through which they must passe. Besides, their zeal to be at their journeys end, made them insensible of any future disadvantages, so be it they might have but preuent expedition to the place they were bound for. And we may also think that Alexius his libe-rall gifts had great efficacie in this matter, to win these Princes to his own desires.

### Chap. 16. *The estate of Asia; siege, and taking of Nice; Turks overthrown in battel.*

**A**t our last mentioning of the Turks and their victories, we left them possest of Jerusalem, and the greater part of Syria: but since they have thrived better, and won the lesser Asia from the Grecian Emperour. Indeed those Emperours with their own hands lifted up the Turks into their throne, and caused them thus speedily to conquer. For giving themselves over to pleasure, they gave little countenance, and leſſe maintenance to men of service and action: whereby the martiall sparks in noble spirits were quenched; and no wonder if vertue did wither where it was not watered with reward. Secondly, out of covetousnesse the Emperours unfurnished their frontiers of garrisons, and laid them open to invasions; a notorious solecisme in policie: for if doores in private houses are to be locked, much more frontiers in Kingdomes. Neither did it a little advantage the Turks proceedings, that the Grecian Empire fell to Eudoxia

23  
Lib 6. V.de  
Erasmum in  
Adagio,  
Greciae fides.

\* M. Paris,  
pag. 38.

\* Malms.  
pag. 137.

24 Eudoxia a woman, and her children in minoritie, too weak Pilots to steer so great a State in the tempest of war. And though after other changes it fell to Alexius, one whose personall abilities were not to be excepted against; yet he being totally busied at home, to maintain his title against home-bred foes, had no leisure to make any effectuall resistance against forrein enemies. Nor did the death of Cutlen-Mutes their king, any whit prejudice the Turkish proceedings: for Solyman his sonne succeeded him, a Prince no leſſe famous for his clemencie, then his conquests; as victorie to generous minds is onely an inducement to moderation. In this case under the tyrannie of the Turks stood Asia the leſſe, and though there were many Christians in every citie, yet these being disarmed, had no other weapons then those of the Primitive Church, tears and prayers.

But now theſe Western Pilgrimes arriving there, besiege the citie of Nice with an armie as glorious as ever the funne beheld. This city was equally beholden to nature and art for her strength; and was formerly famous for the firſt generall Council, called there by Constantine againſt Arius, wherein were assembled 318 Bifhops. The Pilgrimes had a Lombard for their engineer; the neighbouring wood afforded them materials, whereof they made many warlike instruments, and hoped ſpedily to conquer the citie. But breathed deer are not ſo quickly caught. The Turks within being experienced fouldiers, defeated their enterprifes. And here one might have ſeen art promising her ſelfe the victory, and ſuddenly meeting with counter-art which maſtered her. The lake Ascanius whereon the citie ſtood, having an out-let into the ſea, much advantaged the besieged, whereby they fetcht viuualls from the country, till at laſt that paſſage was locked up by the Grecian fleet. Soon after the citie was ſurrendred, on composition that the inhabitants lives and goods ſhould be untouched; whereat the ſouldiers, who hitherto hoped for the ſpoyle, now ſeeing themſelves ſpoyle of their hope, ſhewed no ſmall diſcontentment. Solymans wife and young children were taken priſoners, and the citie (according to the agreement) was delivered to Tatinius the Grecian Admirall, in behalf of Alexius his maſter.

From hence the Christians ſet forward to the vale of Dogorgan, when behold Solyman with all his might fell upon them, and there followed a cruel battell, fought with much courage and varietie of ſuccesse. A cloud of arrows darkened the ſkies, which was quickly diſſolved into a ſhowre of bloud. The Christians had many diſadvantages: For their enemies were three to one; and valour it ſelf may be preffed to death under the weight of multitude. The ſeaſon was unfeafonable; the ſcorching of the funne much annoyng these Northern people, whileſt the

Anno  
Dom.  
1097.

1097.  
May  
14.

June  
20.

the Turks had bodies of proof against the heat. Besides, the Christians horses affrighted with the barbarous ſounds of the Turkish drummes, were altogether unſerviceable. However, they bravely maintained their fight by the ſpeciall valour and wiſdome of their Leaders (amongſt whom Boemund, and Hugh brother to the King of France, deserved high commendations) till at laſt finding themſelves overmatched, they began to guard their heads with their heels, and fairly ran away. When in came \* Robert the Normane in the very opportunitie of opportunity. Much he encouraged them with his words, more with his valour, ſlaying three principall Turks with his own hands. This fight ſo inspirited the Christians, that coming in on freſh, they obtained a moft glorious victorie. Two thouſand on their ſide were slain, whereof William the brother of Tancred, Godfrey de Mont, and Robert of Paris were of ſpeciall note. But farre greater was the slaughter of their enemies, eſpecially after that Godfrey of Bouillon, who had been absent all the battell, came in with his armie: yet they wanted a hammer to drive the victorie home to the head, having \* no horſes to make the purſuit. Solyman flying away burned all as he went, and to prop up his credit, gave it our that he had gotten the day, pleating himſelf to be a conquerour in report. This great battel was fought July the first, though ſome make it many dayes after: Yea, to great is the varietie of Historians in their dates, that every one may ſeem to have a ſeverall clocke of time, which they ſet faster or ſlower at their own pleasure: but as long as they agree in the maine, we need not be much moved with their pettie diſſenſions.

25

\* M. Paris,  
pag. 42. &  
H. Hunting.  
lib. 7. pag. 374.

\* V. Malmesb.  
pag. 138.

### Chap. 17.

#### *The ſiege and taking of Antiochia; Corboran overcome in fight; of Chrifts ſpear, and of holy fraud.*

From hence with invincible industry and patience, they bore a paſſage through valleys, up mountains, over rivers, taking as they went the famous cities, Iconium, Heraclea, Tarsis, and conquering all the country of Cilicia. This good ſuccesse much \* puffed them up; God therefore to cure them of the pleurie of pride, did let them bloud with the long and costly ſiege of Antiochia. This citie watered by the river Orontes, and called Reblich of the Hebrews, was built by Seleucus Nicator,

\* Urbergens.  
pag. 233.

E and

26 and enlarged by Antiochus. Compassest it was with a double wall, one of square stone, the other of brick; strengthened with 460 towres, and had a castle on the East rather to be admired then assaulted. Here the professors of our faith were first named \* Christians: and here S. Peter first sat Bishop, whose fair Church was a Patriarchall seat for many hundred years after. Before this citie the Pilgrimes army incamped, and strongly besieged it: but the Turks within manfully defending themselves under Auxianus their captain, frustrated their hopes of taking it by force. The siege grew long, and victuals short in the Christians camp: and now \* Peter the Hermite being brought to the touch-stone, discovered what base metall he was of, ran away with some other of good note, and were fetcht back again, and bound with a new oath to prosecute the warre. At last, one within the citie (though Authours agree neither of his name nor religion, some making him a Turk, others a Christian; some calling him Pyrrhus, some Hemipherrus, others Empher) in the dead of the night betrayed the citie to Boemund. The Christians issuing in, and exasperated with the length of the siege, so remembred what they had suffered, that they forgot what they had to do,\* killing promiscuously Christian citizens with Turks. Thus paffions, like heavie bodies down steep hills, once in motion move themselves, and know no ground but the bottom.

Antiochia thus taken, was offered to Alexius the Emperour; but he refused it, suspecting some deceit in the tender; as bad men measure other mens minds by the crooked rule of their own. Hereupon it was bestowed on Boemund; though this place dearly purchased was not long quietly possessed: For Corboran the Turkish Generall came with a vast armie of Persian forces, and besieged the Christians in the citie, so that they were brought into a great strait betwixt death and death, hunger within and their foes without. Many secretly stole away, whereat the rest were no whit discomfited, counting the losse of cowards to be gain to an armie. At last, they generally resolved rather to lose their lives by whole-slafe on the point of the sword, then to retail them out by famine, which is the worst of tyrants, and murdereth men in state, whilst they die in not dying. It did not a little encourage them, that they found in the Church of S. Peter that lance wherewith our Saviours bodie was pierced: They highly prized this military relique of Christ, as if by wounding of him, it had got vertue to wound his enemies, and counted it a pawn of certaine victorie. Whether this spear was truly found, or whether it was but invented to cozen men with, we will not dispute: However, it wrought much with these Pilgrimes; for conceit oftentimes doeth

\* Aet. 11. 26.

\* Sabell. Enn.  
9. lib. 5. pag.  
357. Et AE-  
minus. in Pbi-  
lip the first,  
pag. 123.

\* P. Emil.  
pag. 127.

\* Tyrius.  
lib. 6. cap. 1. 4.

Anno  
Dom.

Octob.

21.

1098  
June  
3.

doeth things above conceit, especially when the imagination apprehendeth something founded in religion. Marching forth in severall armies they manfully fell upon their enemies, and being armed with despair to escape, they fought to sell their lives at the dearest rate. Valour doth fwell when it is crushed betwixt extremities, and then oftentimes goeth beyond her self in her achievements. This day by Gods blessing on their courage they got a noble conquest. Some saw \* S. George in the aire with an armie of white horses fighting for them, but these no doubt did look through the spectacles of fanzie. And yet though we should reject this apparition, we need not play the Origens with the storie of S. George, and change all the literall sense into an allegorie of Christ and his Church: for it is improbable that our English Nation, amongst so many Saints that were, would choose one that was not, to be their Patron, especially seeing the world in that age had rather a glut then a famine of Saints.

And here let me adveritize the Reader once for all, not to expect that I should set downe thole many \* miracles wherewith Authours who write this warre so lard their stories, that it will choke the belief of any discreet man to swallow them. As the intent of these Writers was pious, to gain credit and converts to the Christian faith, so the prosecuting of their project must be condemned, in thinking to grace the Gospel in reporting such absurd falshes. But let us know that heaven hath a pillowrie, whereon *Fraus pia* her self shall be punished; and rather let us leave Religion to her native plainnesse, then hang her ears with counterfeit pearls.

The pride of the Turks being abated in this battel, and an 100000 of them being slain, the Christians grew mightyly inflent, and forgot to return to God the honour of the victorie. Whereupon followed a great mortalitie, and 50000 died in few dayes; whether this proceeded from the climate (the bodies of Europe not being friends with the aire of Asia, till use by degrees reconcileth them) or whether it was caused by their intemperance: for after long fasting they would not measure their stomachs by the standard of physick, and dieting themselves till nature by degrees could digest the meat, but by surfeiting digged their graves with their own teeth.

And now we are come to the skirts and borders of Palestine: wherefore as Heralds use to blazon the field before they meddle with the charge, so let us describe the land before we relate the actions done therein. If in bowling they must needs throw wide, which know not the green or alleys whereon they play; much more must they misse the truth in story, who are unacquainted with that countrey whereon the discourse proceedeth.

27

\* *At Paris,*  
*in Gulielmo*  
*secundo. pag.*  
57.

\* Mundus se-  
nescens pati-  
tur phantasi-  
as fallorum  
miracula-  
rum propter  
ea sunt nunc  
habenda mi-  
racula valde  
suspecta,  
Gerff.

28 Briefly therefore of the Holy land ; as not intending to make a large and wide description of so short and narrow a countrey.

Anno

Dom.

~

## Chap. 18.

*A Pisgah-sight, or short Survey of Palestine in generall; and how it might maintain 1200000 men.*

Palestine is bounded on the North with mount Libanus; West with the mid-land-sea; South, with the wildernes of Paran, parting it from Egypt; and East, with the mountains of Gilead, and the river of Arnon. To give it the most favourable dimensions; From the foot of Libanus to Beersheba, North and South, may be allowed 210 miles: and from Ramoth-Gilead to Endor, East and West, (eventie, which is the constant breadth of the countrey). In which compasse in Davids time were maintained \* thirteen hundred thousand men, besides women, children, and impotent persons: and yet the tribes of \* Benjamin and Levi were not reckoned. True this must needs be, for Truth hath said it: Yet is it wonderfull. For though the United Provinces in the Low-countreys maintain as many people in as little a plot of ground, yet they feed not on home-bred food, but have Poland for their granarie, the British ocean for their fish-pond, High-Germanie for their wine-cellars; and by the benefit of their harbours unlock the store-houses of all other countreys. It fared not thus with the Jews, whose own countrey fed them all. And yet the seeming impossibilitie of so many kept in so small a land will be abated, if we consider these particulars;

\* 2. Sam. 24. 9.  
1. Chron. 21. 6.

1. People in those hot countreys had not so hot appetites for the quantite of the meat eaten, nor glutonous palates for the varietie of it.

2. The countrey rising and falling into hills and vales, gained many acres of ground, whereof no notice is taken in a map: wherein all things presented are conceived to be *in plano*: And so the land was farre roomthier then the scale of miles doth make it.

3. They had pasturage to feed their cattle in, in our countreys beyond Palestine. Thus the tribe of \* Reuben grazed their cattle east-ward, even to the river Euphrates.

4. Lastly, the soyl was transcently fruitfull, as appeareth by that great \* bunch of grapes carried by two men: For though many a man hath not been able to bear wine, it is much that one should be loaden with one cluster of grapes.

\* 1. Chron. 5.  
9. 10.

\* Num. 13. 23.

If

Anno

Dom.

~

If any object against the fruitfulness of this countrey; That there were many wilderneses therein, as those of Maon, Ziph, Carmel, Gibeon, Judah, and these must needs cut large thonges out of so narrow a hide: it is answere, That these wilderneses took up no great space, as probably being no bigger then our least forrests in England. As for the greater deserts, we must not conceive them to lie wholly waste, but that they were but thinly inhabited: for we find \* six cities with their villages in the wildernes of Judah.

29

Principall commodities of this countrey were,

1. Balm, which \* wholly failed not long after our Saviours Passion; whether because the type was to cease when the truth was come, or because that land was unworthy to have so foreigne bodily physick grow in her, where the Physician of the soul was put to death.

2. Honey, and that either distilled by bees those little chymists (and the pasture they fed on was never a whit the barer for their biting) or else rained down from heaven, as that which \* Jonathan tafted, when his sweet meat had like to have had fowre sauce, and to have cost him his life.

\* Jesh. 15. 61.  
\* Balsam,  
in Terra sancta,  
pag. 1017.  
&c. in Egypt.  
pag. 1135.

Besides these, milke, oyl, nuts, almonds, dates, figs, olives; So that we may boldly say, no countrey had better sauce and better meat, having fowl, fish, in sea, lakes, and rivers; flesh of sheep, goats, bucks, and kine.

\* 1. Sam. 14.  
27.

Mines of gold and silver, with pearls and precious stones, Judea rather had not then wanted; either because God would not have his people proud or covetous; or because these are not essentiall to mans life; or because nature bestoweth these commodities in recompence on barren countreys.

\* 1. Sam. 8. 4.

Horses they had none but what they bought out of Egypt for service, using asses for burden, oxen for drawing, and mules for travel. And for many hundred years they uled no horses in battell, till David took some from \* Hadadezer. The greatest inconvenience of the land was that it had wild beasts; and their sheep were not securely folded like ours in England, which stand more in danger of men then wolves.

The chief river of the countrey was Jordan: over which the Israelites passed on foot; afterwards Elijah made a bridge over it with his cloke: and our Saviour washed the water hereof, by being baptiz'd in it. This ariseth from the springs of Jor and Dan, whence running south he enlargeth himself first into the waters of Merom, then into the lake of Genesareth or Tiberias; and hence recovering his stream, as if sensible of his sad fate, and desirous to deferre what he cannot avoid, he fetcheth many turnings and windings, but all will not excuse him from falling into the Dead sea. Authors are very fruitfull on the barrennesse

30. of this sea ( where Sodome once stood ) writing how on the banks thereof grow those hypocrite apples and well-complexioned dust ( the true emblemes of the false pleasures of this world ) which touched fall to ashes.

### Chap. 19. *Galilee described.*

Palestine contained four Provinces : Galilee on the North, Trachonitis beyond Jordan on the East, Judea on the South, and Samaria in the middle. Galilee was divided into the upper and lower. The upper ( called also Galilee of the Gentiles, because it bordered on them ) comprehended the tribes of Asher and Nephthali.

Asher entertaineth us with these observables. 1. \*Misrephoth-majim, the Nantwhich of Palestine, where salt was boyled. 2. Sarepta, where Elijah multiplied the widows oyl. 3. Tyre, anciently the Royall-Exchange of the world; but of this ( as of Sidon and Ptolemais ) largely hereafter. 4. Aphek, whose walls falling down gave both the death and grave-stones to 27000 of Benhadads foildiers. 5. Cana the great, whereof was that woman whose daughter Christ dispossesed of a devil. 6. Belus, a rivulet famous for his glasse fand. 7. Mount Libanus, whether so called ( as our Albion ) from his snowy top, or from frankincense growing thereon.

Nephthali, with these : 1. Abel-beth-maacha : In this borough Sheba that vermine earthed himself, till a womans wifdomme threw his head over the walls : And pitie it was those wals should have stood, if they had been too high to throw a traytours head over them. 2. Harosheth, the citie of Sisera, who for all his commanding of 900 iron-chariots, was slain with one iron nail. 3. Capernaum, where Christ healed the Centurions servant, and not farre off fed an armie of guests with five loaves and two fishes: so that if we consider what they ate, we may wonder that they left any thing; if what they left, that they ate any thing. 4. Kedeshe, a citie of refuge, whither they were to flee that killed men unawares. As for those who formerly priviledged Sanctuaries in England, where the worst traytours and wilfullest murderers were secure from punishment, they rather propounded Romulus then Moses for their president. 5. Riblah, where King Zedekiah ( more unhappy that he saw so long, then that he was blind so soon ) had his eyes put out, after he had beheld the slaughter of his sonnes. 6. Cefarea-Philippi, the chief citie of Decapolis; which was a small territorie on both

*Anno  
Dom.*

sides of Jordan, so called of ten cities it contained; though Authors wonderfully differ in reckoning them up. 7. Christs mount, so named because it was his pulpit, as the whole Law was his text, when he made that famous sermon in the mount. This Sunne of righteoufnesse, which had all Palestine for his zodiack, the twelve tribes for his signes, stayed longest here and in Zabulon; and as S. Hierome \* observeth, as these two tribes were first carried into captivitie, so redemption was first preach'd in these countreyes.

Lower Galilee consisted of Zabulon and Issachar. Zabulon presenteth us with Naim, where our Saviour raifed the widows sonne, so that she was twice a mother, yet had but one child. 2. Cana the leffe, where he shewed the virginity of his miracles at a mariage; turning water into wine. 3. Bethulia, where Judith strook off Holofernes his head; though some since have strook off that story, not onely from canonickall Scripture, but from truth. 4. Bethsaida, upbraided by Christ, famous for her great means, great ingratitude, great punishment. 5. Nazareth, where our Saviour had his conception and education. 6. Tiberias, so called by Herod the Tetrarch in the honour of Tiberius. 7. Mount Carmel, the Jewish Parnassus, where the Prophets were so convervant. 8. Tabor, where our Saviour was transfigured, the earnest of his future glory. 9. The river Kishon, Gods besom to sweep away Sisera's great army.

In Issachar we find Tarichea, taken with great difficultie by Vespasian. 2. Shunem, where Elisha was so often entertained by an honourable woman. And as if this land had been thirsty of bloud, here in this tribe were fought the battels of Gideon against the Midianites, Jehu against Jehoram, Saul against the Philistines upon mount Gilboa. David therefore cursed that mountaint that neither dew nor rain should fall on it. But of late some English travellers climbing this mountain were well wetted, David not cursing it by a prophetical spirit, but in a poetical rapture.

### Chap. 20. *The description of Samaria.*

Samaria contained half Manasses on this side Jordan, and the tribe of Ephraim. In the former we meet with Bethhean, on the walls whereof the Philistines hanged Sauls bodie. 2. Tirzah, where Zimri ( whose onely goodnesse was, that he reigned but seven dayes ) burned himself and the Kings palace.

3. Thebez,

31

\*In 4. Matib.

3. Thebez, where Abimelech, prodigall of his life, but rig-  
gardsly of his reputation; not so pained with his death, as angie  
with his killer (because a woman) would needs be killed again  
by his armour-bearer. 4. Megiddo, where Josiah that bright  
sunne set in a cloud, engaging himself in a needlesse quarrel,  
wherein he was slain. 5. Cefarea-Stratonis, where Herod was  
eaten up with worms. 6. Jezreel, a royll citie of the Kings of  
Israel, nigh which lay the vineyard (or rather bloud-yard) of  
Naboth.

Ephraim was adorned with Samaria the chief citie of Israel,  
which at this day sheweth more ruines then Jerusalem. 2. Shi-  
loah, where the Ark was long Leiger; and where Eli heart-broke-  
n with bad news, brake his neck with a fall. 3. Sichem, where  
Dinah bought the satisfying of her curiositie with the losse of  
her chastitie. And as if the ground here were stained with per-  
fidiousnesse, here Simeon and Levi killed the Sichernites, Jo-  
seph was sold by his brethren, Abimelech usurped the govern-  
ment, the ten tribes revolted from Rehoboam. 4. Mount E-  
phraim, a ridge of hills crossing this country. 5. Gerizzim  
and Ebal, two mountains: the blessings were pronounced on the  
one, and the curses on the other.

## Chap. 21.

*Judea Surveyed.*

Judea comprised the tribes of Benjamin, Dan, Simeon, and  
Judah. Benjamin flourished with Gilgal, where Joshua circum-  
cised the Israelites. They hitherto had been fellow-com-  
moners with the Angels, feeding on manna, which here ceas'd;  
God withdrawing miracles where he afforded means. 2. Gib-  
on, whose inhabitants cozened Joshua with a passe of false-da-  
ted antiquite: Who would have thought that clouted shoes could  
have covered so much subtiltie? Here Joshua sent his mandate  
to the sunne to stand still, and to wait on him whilst he conquer-  
ed his enemies. 3. Nob, where Doeg, more cruel than the  
Kings cattel he kept, slew eighty five Priests as innocent as their  
ephods were white. 4. Jericho, whose walls were battered  
down with the sound of rammes horns. 5. Bethel, where God  
appeared to Jacob. 6. Ai, where the Israelites were slain for  
the sacrilege of Achan.

Dan had these memorables. 1. Joppa a safe harbour, where  
Jonah fled from Gods service. 2. Ashdod or Azotus, where Da-  
gon did twice homage to the Ark, not onely falling bare, but  
put-

Anno  
Dom.

ting off his head and hands. 3. Gath, a seminary of giants, where  
Goliath was born. 4. Ekron, where Beelzebub the God of flies  
had his nest or temple. 5. Timnath, where Judah committed  
incest with Tamar, but betrayed himself by his own tokens, and  
bear himself with his own staff. Hence Samson fetcht his wife,  
whose *epithalamium* proved the dirge to so many Philistines.  
6. Modin, where the Maccabees were buried. 7. Sorek, the  
chief if not onely rivulet of this tribe.

Entering on the south-coasts of Simeon, we light on Askelon,  
where Herod was born. 2. Gaza, chief of the five Satrapies of  
the Philistines, the gates whereof Samson carried away, and  
hither being sent for to make sport in the house of Dagon, acted  
such a tragedie that plucked down the stage, flev himself and all  
the spectators. 3. More inland, Ziklag, assigned by Achish to  
David. 4. Beersheba and Gerar; where Abraham and Ifaac  
lived most constantly, neare unto the brook of Besor.

The tribe of Judah was the greatest of all, so that Simeon  
and Dan did feed on the reversion thereof, and received those  
cities which originally belonged to this royal tribe. Memorable  
herein were 1. Hebron, the land whereof was given to Caleb,  
because he and Joshua consented not to the false verdict which  
the jurie of spies brought in against the land of Canaan. 2. Nigh,  
in the cave of Machpelah, the Patriarchs were buried; whose  
bodies took livery and seafin in behalf of their posterite, which  
were to possess the whole land. 3. Kirjath-sepher or Debir; an  
ancient Universite of the Canaanites: for though Parnassus  
was onely in Greece, yet the Muses were not confined to that  
country. 4. Tekoa, where Amos was born, fetcht from the  
herdsman to feed Gods sheep; and to dress his vine, from ga-  
thering wild-figs. 5. Zoar, Lots refuge, neare to which his wife  
for one farewell-glance at Sodome, was turned into a pillar of  
salt, to feaston us to measure a sinne by the infinitenesse of God  
who forbiddeth it. Adjoyning is Lots cave, where he affecting  
solitariness, had too much companie of his own daughters.  
6. Carmel, where Nabal lived as rich as foolish; but those  
grains of widsome which were wanting in him, were found over-  
weight in his wife. Here Uzziah pastured his cattel, a King, yet  
delighted in hushdry; as thrif is the fewell of magnificence.  
7. Bethlehem, where our Saviour was born. 8. Jerusalem;  
whereof afterwards

34

Chap. 22.  
*Of Trachonitis.*

**W**E want one adequate word of a countrey to expresse the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and half-Manasses beyond Jordan. Trachonitis cometh the nearest, so called because it riseth up in sharp hills, which are known to Ptolemy by the name of Hippus, to Strabo, of Trachones; but in Scripture, of mount Hermon, or Gilead.

Reuben, though disinherited of the birth-right, had this honour of an elder brother, that he was first provided for. His chief places, Heshbon, and Medeba, and Macherus, the strongest in-land citie in that part of the world. Mount Abarim, a chain of hills, the highest whereof was Nebo, the top-cliff of Nebo, Pisgah; whence Moses viewed the land: hereabouts the Angel buried him, and also buried his grave, left it should occasion idolatrie. The river Arnon parteth this tribe from Moab.

In Gad, we find Peniel where Jacob wrestled with God; lost a sinew, but got a blessing: Jabbesh-gilead, where Saul was buried: Ramoth-gilead, where Ahab was slain: Rogelim, the manours of Barzillai, superannuated to be a courtier: Mahanaim, where the Angels appeared to Jacob: The Forrest of Ephraim, where that execution was done by Jephthah on the Ephraimites, for not pronouncing that heavie aspiration in Shibleth: The river Jabbok.

In Manasses, Edrei the citie of Og, on whose giant-like proportion the Rabbines have more giant-like lies: Gaddara, whose inhabitants loved their swine better than their Saviour. They that desire to be further informed of Canaan, let them spare pains to strike fire, and light their candle at Sir Walter Raleghs torch.

## Chap. 23.

*The description of the citie of Jerusalem; the observables within, and about her.*

**J**ERUSALEM by the often change of her fortunes, hath somewhat altered her situation, having hitched her self more North-west-ward. For the mountain of Calvarie, which formerly laye out of her gates, as the infamous place of execution, the now

Anno.  
Dom.

now embraceth within her walls as her most venerable monument.

On the South of Jerusalem (once part of her, now excluded) lieth mount Sion, famous anciently for the palace of David: On the East, mount Olivet, parted with the vale of Jehoshaphat, which (some will have) shall be the hall for the great Assemblies of the world at the day of judgement: whilst others more modestly conceive that the place as well as the time is concealed. On the West, the hill of Gihon: And on the North it is indifferent plain.

The monuments which are still extant to be seen without or within the citie, are reduceable to one of these three ranks.

1. Certainly true, as the mountains compassing it, which are standards too great and too heavie for either time or warre to remove: and such also are some eminent particulars of some places, which constant tradition without rupture hath entailed on posterite. 2. Of a mixt nature; where the text is true, but superstition and fanaticke have commented on it. 3. Stark lies, without a rag of probabilitie to hide their shame; where the believer is as foolish as the inventor impudent. We will bundle them together, and let the Reader sort them at his discretion: for it is as hard to fit the throats, as to please the palates of men; and that will choke one mans belief, which another will swallow as easily credible. Neither let any censure this discourse as a parenthesis to this historie, seeing that to see these reliques was one principall motive with many to undertake this pilgrimage.

To begin without the citie; On the South there remain the ruines of Davids palace, too neare to which was Uriahs house, and the \* fountain is still shewed where Bathsheba's washing of her boodie, occasioned the fouling of her soul. Next, Davids tombe is to be seen wherein he was buried: his monument was enriched with a masse of treasure, saith Josephus: out of which Hircanus 850 years after took three thousand talents. But surely David who despised riches in his life, was not coveteous after his death: And I am sure they are his own words, that \* *Man shall carry nothing away with him; neither shall his great pomp follow him.* Thirdly, Aceldama that burying-place for strangers: and the grave that every where hath a good stomack, hath here a *boulimia* or greedy worm; for it will devour the flesh of a corpse in 48 hours. Fourthly, Absaloms pillar, which he built to continue his memorie, though he might have fayed that cost, having eternized his infamie by his unnatural rebellion. Fifthly, the houses of Annas and Caiphas, to passe by others of infernour note.

On the East; First, mount Olivet, from whence our Saviour took

35

\* *Marijona Trav. part. 1. pag. 226.*

\* *Psal. 49. 17.*

36

took his rise into heaven. The chapell of Ascension, of an eight-square round mounted on three degrees, still challengeth great reverence; and there the footsteps of our Saviour are still to be seen, which cannot be covered over. Secondly, the fig-tree which Christ cursed: for he who spake many, here wrought a parable; this whole tree being but the bark, and Christ under it cursing the fruitless profession of the Jews. Thirdly, the place where S. Stephen was stoned; and the stones thereabouts are over-grown with a red rust, which is (forsooth) the very bloud of that holy martyr. Fourthly, the place where Judas surprised our Saviour, and he fell down on a stone, in which the print of his elbows and feet are still to be seen. Fifthly, the sepulchre of the blessed Virgin: whose bodie after it had been three dayes buried, was carried up by the Angels into heaven; and she let fall her girdle to S. Thomas, that his weak faith might be swaddled therewith: otherwise he who in the point of Christs resurrection would have no creed, except he made his own articles, and put his finger into his side, would no doubt hardly have beleaved the Virgin's assumption. With this legend we may couple another, which though distant in place will be beleaved both together: They shew at \*Bethlehem a little hole over the place where our Saviour was born, through which the starre which conducted the wisemen fell down to the ground. But who will not conclude but there was a *vertigo* in his head, who first made a starre subject to the falling-sicknesse? Sixthly, the vale of Hinnom or Tophet, in which wise Solomon befooled his wives, built a temple to Moloch. Seventhly, Cedron, a brook so often mentioned in Scripture.

The West and North-sides of Jerusalem were not so happily planted with sacred monuments; and we find none thereon which grew to any eminence.

We will now lead the Reader into Jerusalem: Where first on mount Moriah (the place where Isaac was offered, though not sacrificed) stood Solomons temple, destroyed by the Chaldeans, rebuilt by Zorobabel: Afterward Herod reedified it so stately (faith Josephus) that it exceeded Solomons temple; if his words exceed not the truth. But no wonder if he that never saw the sunne, dare say that the moon is the most glorious light in the heavens. Secondly, Solomons palace, which was \*thirteen years in building, whereas the temple was finished in \*seven: Not that he bestowed more cost and pains (because more time) on his own then on Gods house: but rather he \*plied Gods work more thoroughly, and entertained them more builders; so that contrary to the proverb, Church-work went on the most speedily. Thirdly, the house of the Forrest of Lebanon, which was (as appeareth by comparing the text) fourtie cubits

\* Sandys,  
pag. 190.

\* Bidulphs  
Trav. pag. 130  
et Morisons,  
part. 1. pag.  
227.

\* 1. King. 7. 1.

\* 1. King. 6. 38.

\* Vide Tre-  
mel in locum

Anno  
Dom.

1533

longer, and thirtie cubits broader then the temple it self. But no doubt the holy Spirit speaking of holy buildings, meaneth the great cubit of the Sanctuarie, but in other houses, the ordinary or common cubit. It was called the house Lebanon; because hard by it Solomon planted a grove; the abridgement of the great Forrest; so that the pleasures of spacious Lebanon were here written in a leesse character. Fourthly, Pilates palace; and the Common hall, where the Judge of the world was condemned to death. Fifthly, the pool of Bertheda, the waters whereof troubled by the Angel were a *Panpharmacon* to him that first got into them. Here was a spittle built with five porches, the mercie of God being seconded by the charite of man, God gave the cure, men built the harbour for impotent persons. Sixthly, the houle of Dives the rich glutton: and therefore (faith Adricomius,) it was no parable: But may we not retort his words? It was a parable, and therefore this is none of Dives his house. Sure I am, Theophylact is against the literall sense thereof, and saith, They think foolishly that think otherwise.

But my discourse hasteth to mount Calvary, which at this day hath almost engrossed all reverence to it self. It is called Calvarie, Golgotha, or the place of a scull, either because the hill is rolled and rounded up in the fashion of a mans head, (as \*Pen in the British tongue signifieth both an head, and a copped hill) or because here the bodies of such as were executed were cast. As for that conceit, that Adams scull should here be found, it is confuted by S. Hierome, who will have him buried at Hebron. Neither is it likely, if the Jews had a tradition that the father of mankind had here been interred, that they would have made his sepulchre their Tiburn where malefactours were put to death, and the charnel-house where their bones were scattered. Over our Saviours grave stood a stately Church, built say some by Helen, say others by Constantine: but we will not set mother and sonne at variance; it might be she built it at his cost. In this Church are many monuments: As the pillar whereunto Christ was bound when scourged, wherein red spots of dusky-veined marble usurped the honour to be counted Christs bloud. Secondly, a great cleft in the rock which was rent in funder at the Passion, whereby the bad thief was divided from Christ (the signe of his spirituall separation) and they say it reacheth to the centre of the earth: a thing hard to confute. Thirdly, certain pillars which being in a dark place under ground, are said miraculously to weep for our Saviours suffering. But I referre those who desire the criticismes of these places without going thither, to read our English travellers: for in this case as good wares and farre cheaper peny-worths are bought at the second hand.

37

\* Adricom.  
ex Hieron.  
pag. 153.

\* Theatr.  
Ter. sancti.  
153.

\* Apelles.  
Comment. in  
16. Luc.

\* Illyricus.  
27. Matth.  
\* Cambdens.  
Brit. in Buck-  
inghamshire.

\* Bridew.  
De Domini  
sepulcro.

38

To conclude our description of Palestine, let none conceive that God forgot the Levites in division of the land, because they had no entire countrey allotted unto them. Their portion was as large as any, though paid in severall summes : They had 48 cities with their suburbs, tithes, first-fruits, free-offerings, being better provided for then many English Ministers, who may preach of hospitalitie to their people, but cannot go to the cost to practise their own doctrine.

*A table shewing the varietie of places names in Palestine.*

In the Old Te-  
stament.

At Christ's  
time.

In S. Hieromes  
time.

At this  
day.

a Sandye,  
pag. 149.  
b Adricom.  
pag. 23.  
c Motifon,  
pag. 216.  
d Ralgh,  
pag. 322.  
e Adricom.  
pag. 70.  
f Ralgh,  
pag. 483.

g Sandye,  
pag. 216.  
h Ralgh,  
pag. 291.  
i Sandye,  
pag. 155.  
k Adricom.  
pag. 143.  
l Sandye,  
pag. 219.  
m Adricom.  
pag. 22.  
n Bidulph,  
pag. 94.  
o Adricom.  
pag. 32.  
p Sandye,  
pag. 212.

|                         |               |                   |         |
|-------------------------|---------------|-------------------|---------|
| 1 Azzah.                | Gaza.         | Constantia.       | Gazra.  |
| 2 Japho.                | Joppa.        | Arimathea.        | Jaffa.  |
| 3 Ramah.                |               |                   | Ramma.  |
| 4 Shechem.              | Sychar.       | Neapolis.         | Pelofa. |
| 5                       | Lydda.        | Diolopolis.       |         |
| 6 Capharsalam           | Antipatris.   |                   | Affur.  |
| 7 Zaraphath.            | Sarepta.      |                   | Saphet. |
| 8                       | Emmaus.       | Nicopolis.        |         |
| 9 Bethsan.              |               | Scytopolis.       |         |
| 10 Tzor.                | Laish.        |                   | Sur.    |
| 11 { Dan.               | Lefhem.       | Cesarea-Philippi. | Belina. |
| 12 Jerusalem.           | Hierosolyma.  | Ælia.             | Cuds.   |
| 13 Samaria.             | Samaria.      | Sebastie.         | Saffer. |
| 14 Cinnereth.           | Tiberias.     |                   | Acree.  |
| 15 Accho.               | Ptolemais.    | Dio-Cesarea.      | Ybilin. |
| 16 Gath.                | Damascus.     | Areopolis.        | Sham.   |
| 17 Dammesek.            |               |                   | Petra.  |
| 18 Arnon.               | Philadelphia. |                   | Houle.  |
| 19 Rabbah.              | Semochonite   |                   |         |
| 20 Water of Me-<br>rom. | lake.         |                   |         |

Chap. 24.

*The siege and taking of Jerusalem.*

BY this time cold weather (the best before to sweep the chambers of the aire) had well cleared the Christians camp from

Anno  
Dom.

Anno  
Dom.

1098

1109.

39

April

10.

May

29.

June

6.

June

10.

June

6.

June

10.

from infection : and now their devotion moved the swifter, being come neare to the centre thereof, the citie of Jerusalem. Forward they set, and take the citie of Marra, and imploy themselves in securing the countrey about them, that so they might clear the way as they went. Neither did the discords betwixt Reimund and Boemund much delay their proceedings, being in some measure feasonably compounded ; as was also the seavattel betwixt the Pisans and the Venetians. For the Venetians seeing on the Pisans the \* cognisance of the Croffe, the uncounterfeited pasport that they were for the Holy Warre, suffered them safely to go on, though otherwise they were their deadly enemies; yea, and set five thousand of them at libertie, whom they had taken captive.

The Pilgrimes kept their Easter at Tripoli, Whitunday by Cesarea-Stratonis, taking many places in their passage ; and at last came to Jerusalen. Discovering the citie afarre off, it was a prettie sight to behold the harmonic in the difference of expressing their joy; how they clothed the same passion with diverse gestures: some prostrate, some kneeling, some weeping, all had much ado to manage so great a gladnesse. Then began they the siege of the citie on the North (being farre assaultable on any other side by reasoun of steep and broken rocks) and continued it with great valour. On the fourth day after, they had taken it but for want of scaling-ladders. But a farre greater want was the defect of water, the springs being either stopped up or poysoned by the Turks; so that they fetcht water \* five miles off. As for the brook Cedron, it was dried up, as having no subsistence of it self, but merely depending on the benevolence of winter-waters, which mount Oliver beftoweth upon it. Admiral Coligni was wont to say, He that will well paint the beast *Warre*, must first begin to shape the belly; meaning, that a good Generall must first provide victuals for an armie. Yea, let him remember the bladder in the beasts belly as well as the guts, and take order for moyiture more especially then for meat it self; thirst in northern bodies being more unsupportable then famine: Quickly will their courage be cooled, who have no moyiture to cool their hearts. As for the Christians want of ladders, that was quickly supplied: for the Genoans arriving with a fleet in Palestine, brought most curious engineers, who framed a wooden towre, and all other artificiall instruments. For we must not think, that the world was at a losse for warre-tools before the brood of guns was hatched: It had the \* battering ramme, first found out by Epeus at the taking of Troy : the *balsifa* to discharge great stones, invented by the Phenicians; the *carrubba*, being a sling of mighty strength, wherof the Syrians were authours: and perchance

\* *Sabellius*,  
Ent. 9. lib. 3.  
pag. 357.

\* *Æmilius*,  
pag. 135.

\* *Plinius Nat.*  
hist. lib. 7.  
cap. 56.

40  
2. Chron. 16.  
15.

perchance King \* Uzziah, first made it; for we find him very dextrous and happie in devising such things. And although these bear-whelps were but rude and unshaped at the first, yet art did lick them afterwards, and they got more teeth and sharper nails by degrees; so that every age set them forth in a new edition, corrected and amended. But these and many more voluminous engines (for the ramme alone had an hundred men to manage it) are now virtually epitomized in the cannon. And though some may say, that the finding of gunnes hath been the losing of many mens lives, yet it will appear that battells now are fought with more expedition, and victorie standeth not so long a neuter, before she expresse her selfe on one side or other.

But these gunnes have shott my discourse from the siege of Jerusalem: To return thither again. By this time, in the space of a \* moneth, the Genoans had finished their engines which they built \* seven miles off: for nearer there grew no stick of bignesse. I will not say, that since our Saviour was hanged on a tree, the land about that citie hath been cursed with a barrennes of wood. And now for a preparative, that their courage might work the better, they began with a fast, and a soleman procession about mount Olivet.

Next day they gave a fierce assault; yea, \* women played the men, and fought most valiantly in armour. But they within being forty thousand strong, well victualled and appointed, made stout resistance, till the night ( accounted but a foc for her friendship ) jumpred betwixt them, and abruptly put an end to their fight in the midst of their courage.

When the first light brought news of a morning, they on a fresh; the rather, because they had \* intercepted a letter tied to the legs of a dove ( it being the fashion of that countrey both to write and send their letters with the wings of a \* fowl ) wherein the Persian Emperour promised present succours to the besieged. The Turks cased the out-side of their walls with bags of chaff, straw, and such like pliable matter, which conquered the engines of the Christians by yelding unto them. As for one sturdie engine whose force would not be tamed, they brought \* two old witches on the walls to enchant it: but the spirit thereof was too strong for their spells, so that both of them were miserably slain in the place.

The day following, Duke \* Godfrey fired much combustible matter, the smoke whereof ( the light cause of an heavie effect) driven with the wind, blinded the Turks eyes; and under the protection thereof the Christians entred the citie: Godfrey himself first footinge the walls, and then his brother Eustace. The Turks retired to Solomons temple ( so called because

\* M. Par's,  
pag. 63.  
\* P. Amyl.  
pag. 125.  
\* Tyrus,  
lib. 8. cap. 6.

\* Tyrus,  
lib. 8. cap. 13.

\* P. Amylus,  
pag. 136.  
\* The manner  
set down at  
large, Bidulph:  
Trav. pag. 43.

\* Tyrus,  
lib. 8. cap. 15.

\* Idem, lib. 8.  
cap. 18.

Anno  
Dom.  
1299

July  
11.

July  
12.  
July  
13.

July  
14.

July  
15.

Anno  
Dom.  
1299

July  
18.

G

because built in the same place) there to take the farewell of their lives. In a desperate confiict there, the foremost of the Christians were miserably slain, thrust upon the weapons of their enemies by their fellows that followed them. The pavement so swam, that none could go but either through a rivulet of blood, or over a bridge of dead bodies. Valour was not wanting in the Turks, but superlatively abundant in the Christians, till night made them leave off. Next morning mercie was proclaimed to all those that would lay down their weapons: For though bloud be the best fauour for victorie, yet must it not be more then the meat. Thus was Jerusalem wonne by the Christians, and \* twentie thousand Turks therein slain, on the fifteenth of July being Friday, about three of the clock in the afternoon. \* Tyrus findeth a great mysterie in the time, because Adam was created on a Friday, and on the same day and hour our Saviour suffered. But these Synchronismes, as when they are naturall they are prettie and pleasing; so when violently wrested, nothing more poore and ridiculous.

Then many Christians, who all this while had lived in Jerusalem in most lamentable flaverie, being glad to lurk in secret ( as truth oftentimes seeketh corners as fearing her judge, though never as suspecting her cause) came forth joyfully, wellcomed and embrased these the procurers of their libertie.

Three daies after it was concluded, as a necessary piece of \* severity for their defensē, to put all the Turks in Jerusalem to death; which was accordingly performed without favour to age or sex. The pretense was for fear of treason in them, if the Emperour of Persia should besiege the citie. And some slew them with the same zeal wherewith Saul slew the Gibeonites; and thought it unfit that these goats shold live in the sheeps pasture. But noble Tancred was highly displeased hereat, because done in cold bloud, it being no slip of an extemporary passion, but a studied and premeditated act; and that against pardon proclaimed, many of them having compounded and paid for their lives and libertie. Besidz, the execution was mercilie, upon fucking children, whose not-speaking spake for them; and on women, whose weaknesse is a shield to defend them against a valiant man. To conclude, Severite hot in the fourth degree, is little better then poyson, and becometh crueltie it self: and this act seemeth to be of the same nature.

*The end of the first Book.*

41

\* M. Pavus,  
pag. 65.

\* Lib. 8. cap.  
18.

\* Beoldus,  
De regibus  
Hierosol. ex  
varis autor-  
ibus, pag. 119.

THE  
HISTORIE  
OF THE  
HOLY VVAR.  
BOOK II.

Chap. I.

*Robert the Normane refuseth the kingdome of Jerusalem; Godfrey of Bouillon chosen king; his parentage, education, and vertues.*

Anno  
Dom  
1099  
July  
23.



Iight dayes after Jerusalem was wonne; they proceeded to the election of a King: but they had so much choice that they had no choice at all; so many Princes there were, and so equally eminent, that Justice her self must suspend her verdict, not knowing which of them best deserved the Crown. Yet it was their pleasure to pitch on Robert the Norman as on the man of highest descent, being sonne to a King: for great Hugh of France was already returned home, pretending the colick; though some impute it to cowardlinesse, and make the disease not in his bowels but his heart.

Robert refused this honourable proffer, whether because he had an eie to the Kingdome of England now void by the death of William Rufus, or because he accounted Jerusalem would be incumbred with continual warre. But he who would not take the Crown with the Croffe, was faine to take the Croffe without the Crown, and never thrived afterwards in any thing he undertook. Thus they who refuse what God fairly carveth for them, do never after cut well for themselves. He lived to see much miserie, and felte more, having his eyes put out by king Henry his brother, and at last found rest (when buried) in the now Cathedrall Church of Gloucester under a \* wooden monumēnt, bearing better proportion to his low fortunes then

\*P. *Aemilius*,  
pag. 137.

*Henry Hun-*  
*ting. Lib. 7.*  
*pag. 377.*

\* *Gambden*  
*Brit. p. 255.*

44

high birth. And since, in the same quire he hath got the companye of another Prince as unfortunate as himself, King Edward the second.

They go on to a second choice; and that they may know the natures of the Princes the better, their servants were examined on oath to confess their masters faults. The <sup>\*</sup> servants of Godfrey of Bouillon protested their masters only fault was this, That when Mattens were done he would stay so long in the Church, to know of the Priest the meaning of every image and picture, that dinner at home was spoiled by his long tarrying. All admired hereat, that this mans worst vice should be so great a vertue, and unanimously chose him their King. He accepted the place, but refused the solemnitie thereof; and would not wear a crown of gold there, where the Saviour of mankind had worn a crown of thorns.

He was sonne to Eustace Duke of Bouillon, and Ida his wife, daughter and heir to Godfrey Duke of Lorein; born, faith <sup>\*</sup> Tyrius, at Bologne a town in Champaigne on the English sea, which he mistaketh for Bouillon up higher in the continent neare the Countie of Lutzenburg. Such slips are incident to the pennes of the best Authours: yea, we may see Canterbury mistaken for Cambridge, not only in <sup>\*</sup> Mumfer, but even in all our own printed Statute-books in the 12<sup>th</sup> of Richard the <sup>\*</sup> second. He was brought up in that school of valour, the Court of Henry the fourth the Emperour. Whilest he lived there, there happened an intricate suit betwixt him and another Prince about title of land; and because Judges could not untie the knot, it was concluded the two Princes should cut it asunder with their sword in a combat. Godfrey was very <sup>\*</sup> unwilling to fight, not that he was the worse souldier, but the better Christian: he made the demurre not in his courage, but in his conscience; as conceiving any private title for land not ground enough for a duell: Yea, we may observe generally, that they who long most to fight duells, are the first that surfeet of them. Notwithstanding, he yeelded to the tyrannie of custome, and after the fallion of the countrey entred the lists: when at the first encounter his sword brake; but he struck his adversary down with the hilt, yet so that he saved his life, and gained his own inheritance. Another parallel act of his valour was when being standard-bearer to the Emperour, he with the Imperiall ensigne killed Rodulphus the Duke of Saxonie in single fight, and fed the Eagle on the bowels of that arch-rebell. His soul was enriched with many vertues, but the most orient of all was his humilitie, which took all mens affections without resistance: And though one faith, Take away ambition, and you take away the spurres of a souldier; yet, Godfrey without those spurres rode on most triumphantly.

Chap.

<sup>\*</sup> Tyrius,  
lib. 9. cap. 2.<sup>\*</sup> Lib. 9. cap. 5.<sup>\*</sup> Lib. 2. of  
mog. pag. 50.  
<sup>\*</sup> As caus  
graveth it  
plainly out of  
Walshingham.<sup>\*</sup> Quantum  
potuit renite-  
batur, Tyrius,  
lib. 9. c. 7.Anno  
Dom.Anno  
Dom.

45

*The establishing of Ecclesiasticall affairs, and Patriarchs in Antioch and Jerusalem; the number of Palestine-Bishops.*

But now let us leave the Helmets, and look on the Mitres, and consider the ordering of Ecclesiasticall affairs. For the Common-wealth is a Ring, the Church the Diamond; both well set together, receive, and return lustre each on other. As soon as Antioch was taken, one Bernard (a reverend Prelate) was made Patriarch there with generall consent. But more stirre was there about that place in Jerusalem: For first Arnulphus, a worthleffe and vitiouse man, was by <sup>\*</sup> popular faction lifted up into the Patriarchs chair, but with much ado was avoided, and Daberti, Archbisshop of Pisa, substituted in his room; one very wise and politick, an excellent book-man in reading of men, and otherwise well studiied, especially as that age went, wherein a mediocrity was an eminency in learning. But he was infected with the humour of the Clergy of that age, who counted themselves to want room except they jested with Princes. As for Arnulphus, he never ceased to trouble and molest this Daberti, and as a firebrand smoketh most when out of the chimney, so he after his displacing was most turbulent and unquiet, ever sitting on his skirts that sat in the Patriarchs chair, till after many changes he strugled himself again into the place.

Under these Patriarchs many Archbisshops and Bisops were appointed in the very places (as neare as might be) where they were before the Saracens overrunning the countrey, and good maintenance assigned to most of them.

But at this time Bisops were set too thick for all to grow great; and Palestine fed too many Cathedrall Churches to have them generally fat. <sup>\*</sup> Lydda, Jamnia, and Joppa, three episcopall towns, were within four miles one of another. Yea, Tyrius makes 24 Bisops under the Archbisshop of Tyre, 20 under the Archbisshop of Cesarea, under the Archbisshop of Scytopolis 9, 10 under the Archbisshop of Rabbah, besides 25 suffragan Churches, which it seemes were immediately depending on the Patriarch of Jerusalem, without subordination to any Archbisshop. Surely, many of these Bisops (to use Bishop <sup>\*</sup> Langhams expression) had high racks but poore mangers. Neither let it stagger the Reader if in that catalogue of Tyrius he light on many Bisops seats which are not to be found in Mercator, Ortelius, or any other Geographer; for some of them

\* Famo populo suffragia  
inconfulta  
ministrante,  
Tyrius, lib. 9.  
cap. 4.

\* Vide tabulas  
Adrienni.  
Lib. 14. cap.  
12.

\* In the Arch-  
bisshop of Cant.  
p. 143.

G 3.

were

\* Fox Mar-  
tyrol. p.173.

were such poore places, that they were ashamed to appear in a map, and fall so much under a Geographers notice, that they fall nor under it. For in that age Bishops had their Sees at poore and contemptible villages; (as here in England before the Conquest, who would suspect Sunning in Barkshire, or Dorchester neare Oxford to have had Cathedrall churches?) till in the dayes of \* William the first, Bishops removed their seats to the principall towns in the shire.

### Chap. 3. *The Saracens conquered at Askelon.*

**M**ahometes tombe hung not so strong but now it began to shake, and was likely to fall. These victories of the Christians gave a deadly wound to that religion. Wherefore the Saracens combined themselves with the Turks to affit them, there being betwixt these two nations, I will not say an unite, but a conspiracie in the same superstition; so that therein they were like a nest of hornets, stirre one and anger all. Wherefore coming out of Egypce under Ammirayflus their General, at Askelon they gave the Christians battell. But God sent such a qualm of cowardinesse upon the hearts of these Infidels, that an hundred thousand of them were quickly slain; so that it was rather an execution then a fight, and their rich tents which seemed to be the \* exchequer of the East-country, spoiled; so that the Pilgrimes knew not how to value the wealth they found in them.

This victorie obtained, such Pilgrimes as were disposed to return, addressed themselves for their countrey; and these merchants for honour went home, having made a gainfull adventure. Those that remained were advanced to Signories in the land; as Tancred was made governour of Galilee. Nor will it be amisse to insert this storie: Peter Bishop of Anagnia in Italy was purposed here to lead his life without taking care for his charge, when behold S. Magnus\* patron of that Church appeared to him in a vision, pretending himself to be a young man who had left his wife at home, and was come to live in Jerusalem. Fie, said Peter to him, go home again to your wife, whom God hath joyned together let no man put asunder. Why then, replied S. Magnus, have you left your Church a widow in Italy, and live here so farre from her company? This vision, though calculated for this one Bishop, did generally serve for all the non-residents which posted hither, and who payed not

Anno  
Dom.

Aug.  
12.

\* Tyrius,  
lib.9. cap. 12

\* Baronius  
out of Bracca  
in anno 1099.

the

Anno  
Dom.

the lawfull debt to their conscience, whilst by needleſe bonds they engaged themselves to their own will-worſhip. For though ſouls of men be light, beaſies immaterial, yet they may prove an heavie burden to theſe careleſe Pastours who were to anſwer for them.

After the return of theſe Pilgrimes, the heat of the Christians victories in Syria were ſomewhat allayed: for \* Boemund Prince of Antioch marching into Mesopotamia, was taken priſoner; and Godfrey besieging the citie of Antipatris, then called Aſſur, though hitherto he had been alwayes a conquerour, was faine to depart with diſgrace. So ſmall a remora may stay that ſhip which faileth with the faireſt gale of ſuccesse.

\* Tyrius,  
lib.9. cap. 30.  
\* Idem, lib.9.  
cap. 19.

### Chap. 4. *The originall and increase of the Hospitallers; their degenerating through wealth into luxurie.*

\* **A**bout this time under Gerard their first master, began the Order of Knights-hospitallers. Indeed more anciently there were Hospitallers in Jerufalem; but there were no Knights: they had a kind of order, but no honour annexed to it; but were pure Alms-men, whose house was founded and they maintained by the charite of the merchants of Amalphia a citie in Italy.

But now they had more stately buildings assigned unto them, their house dedicated to S. John of Jerufalem; Knights-hospitallers and thofe of S. John of Jerufalem being both the fame; although learned \* Dr. Ridley maketh them two diſtinct orders, for which our \* great Antiquary doth justly reprove him. But ſuch an errore is veniall; and it is a greater fault rigidly to censure, then to commit a ſmall oversight. The one lewheth himſelf man, in miſtaking; the other no man, in not pardoning a light miſtake.

To make one capable of the highest order of this Knight-hood (for their \* ſervitours and priests might be of an inferior rank) the party muſt thus be qualified: Eighteen years old, at the leaſt; of an able body; not descended of Jewiſh or Turkifh parents; no baſtard, except baſtard to a Prince, there being honour in that diſhonour, as there is light in the very ſpoſts of the Moon. Defended he muſt be of worshipfull parentage. They wore a red belt with a white croſſe; and on a black cloke the white croſſe of Jerufalem, which is a croſſe croſſed; or five croſſes together, in memorie of our Saviours five wounds. Yet was

\* Hophianian.  
De orig. Mon.  
fol.165.

\* In his View  
of Civil Law,  
pag.159.

\* M. Selden,  
in his preface  
of tithe, p.6.

\* Hophianian.  
De orig. Mon.  
fol.165.

48

was there some difference betwixt their habit in peace and in war. Their profession was to fight against Infidels, and to secure Pilgrimes coming to the Sepulchre; and they vowed Poverty, Chastitie, and Obedience. Reimundus de Podio their second master made some additionals to their profession: as, They must receive the Sacrament thrice a year, here Mass once a day if possible: They were to be no merchants, no usurers, to fight no private duells, to stand neutrals and to take no side, if the Princes in Christendome should fall out.

But it is given to most religious orders, to be clear in the spring and mirie in the stream. These Hospitallers afterwards getting wealth, unlased themselves from the strictnesse of their first Institution, and grew loose into all licentiousnesse. What was their obedience to their master but rebellion against the Patriarch their first Patron? as shall be shewed hereafter. What was their poverty but a couzenage of the world, whilst their order sued *in forma pauperis*, and yet had nineteen thousand manours in Christendome belonging unto them? Neither will it be *scandalum magnatum* to their lordships, to say what S. Bernard speaks of their chastitie, how they lived *inter scorta & epulas*, betwixt bawds and banquets. And no wonder if their forced virginity was the mother of much uncleanesse: For commonly those who vow not to go the high-way of Gods ordinance, do haunt base and unwarrantable by-paths.

I will not foretell the historie, to shew how these Hospitallers were afterwards Knights of Rhodes, and at this day of Malta; but will conclude with the ceremonies used at their creation, because much materiall stuff no doubt may be picked out of their formalities.

There is delivered them, 1. a \* sword, in token that they must be valiant, 2. with a croffe-hilt; their valour must defend religion: 3. With this sword they are struck three times over the shoulders, to teach them patiently to suffer for Christ: 4. They must wipe the sword; their life must be undefiled. 5. Gilt spurres are put on them, because they are to scorn wealth at their heels: 6. And then they take a taper in their hands, for they are to lighten others by their exemplary lives; 7. and so go to heare Mass: where we leave them.

\* At the same time Knights of the Sepulchre were also ordained, which for their originall and profession are like to these Knights-hospitallers. The order continueth to this day. The Padre Guardian of Jerusalem maketh them of such as have seen the Sepulchre. They should be Gentlemen by birth: but the Padre carrieth a Chancerie in his bosome to mitigate the rigour of this Common law, and will admit of him that bringeth fat enough, though no bloud: as of late he made an Apothecarie

Anno  
Dom.*Hospitallian. ut  
prius.**\* Camb. Brit.  
pag. 311.**\* Cited by Vo-  
laterran.**\* Sand. Trav.  
pag. 259.**\* Sand. Trav.  
pag. 259.*

of

Anno  
Dom.

of Aleppo of that honour: So that there the sword of Knight-hood is denied to none who bring a good sheath with them, and have a purse to pay soundly for it.

49

## Chap. 5.

*The scuffling betwixt the King and Patriarch  
about the city of Jerusalem, the issue thereof.*

Not long after, there was started a controversie of great consequence betwixt the King and Patriarch: the Patriarch claiming the cities of Jerusalem and Joppa, with the appertenances; the King refusing to surrender them.

The Patriarch pleaded, That these places anciently belonged to his predecessors: He set before the King the hainousnesse of sacrilegious; how great a finne it was when Princes, who should be nursing-fathers and suckle the Church, shall fuck from it: and shewed how the Common-wealthe may grow fat, but never heathfull, by feeding on the Churches goods.

On the other side the King alledged, That the Christian Princes had now purchased Jerusalem with their bloud, and bestoweded it on him: that the Patriarchs over-grown title was drowned in this late conquest; from which, as from a new foundation, all must build their clams who challenge any right to any part in the citie. Secondly, he pleaded, it was unreasonabla that the King of Jerusalem should have nothing in Jerusalem (as at this day the Romane Emperour is a very cypire, without power or profit in Rome) and should live rather as a sojourner then a Prince in his royll citie, confined to an arie title, whilst the Patriarch should have all the command.

To this the Patriarch answered, That the Christians new conquest could not cancell his ancient right, which was enjoyed even under the Saracens; That this voyage was principally undertaken for advancing the Church, and not to restore her only to her libertie, and with-hold from her her lands, so that in this respect she should find better usage from her foes then from her children. If we mistake not, the chief pinch of the cause lieth on the Patriarch proof, that the lands he demanded formerly belonged to his predecessors: and we find him to fail in the main issue of the matter. True it was, that for the last thirty yeares the Patriarchs on condition they should repair and fortifie the walls of Jerusalem, were possessed of a fourth part of the citie, even by grant from Boncensfor the Emperour of the Sar-

H

50

Saracens, in the yeare of our Lord 1063. But that ever he had the whole citie, either by this or by any previous grant, it appeareth not in Tyrus, who saith moreover, \* We wonder for what reaon the lord Patriarch shoulde raife this controveरsie against Duke Godfrey.

<sup>\* Lib. 9. c. 16.</sup>

Let me adde, that this our Authour is above exception: for being both a politick States-man and pious Prelate, no doubt his pen striketh the true and even stroke betwixt King and Patriarch. Besideth, he might well see the truth of this matter, writing in a well-proportioned distance of time from it. Those who live too neare the stories they write, oftentimes willingly mistake through partialitie; and those who live too farre off, are mistaken by uncertainties, the footsteps of truth being almost worn out with time.

But to return to Godfrey, who though unwilling at first, yet afterwards not onely on Candlemas-day restored to the Patriarch the fourth part of the citie, but also on the Easter following, gave him all Jerusalem, Joppa, and whatsoeuer he demanded: conditionally that the King shoulde hold it of the Patriarch till such time as he could conquer Babylon, or some other royll citie fit for him to keep his Court in. If in the mean time Godfrey died without issue, the Patriarch was to have it presently delivered unto him.

<sup>\* Centuria  
tois centur.  
12. col. 197.  
Descriptio mat.</sup>

We will be more charitable then those that say that the Patriarch herein did bewitch and beman Godfrey to make this large donation to him, by torturing his conscience at the confession of his sinnes. Only we may question the discretion of this Prince in giving a gift of so large a size: for Charities eyes must be open as well as her hands; though she giveth away her branches, not to part with the root.

<sup>\* In his Paff.  
11.</sup>

And let the Reader observe, that Godfrey at the time of this his boundfull grant lay on his death-bed, sick of that irrecoverable disease which ended him. How easilly may importunitie stamp any impression on those whom desperate sicknesse hath softened! And if the sturdiet man nigh death may be affrighted into good works for fear of Purgatory, no wonder if devout Godfrey were pliable to any demand. \*Pierce Plowman maketh a witty wonder, why Friars should covet rather to confess and buriel, then to chrislen children; intimating it proceeded from covetousnesse, there being gain to be gotten by the one, none by the other. And this was the age wherein the Covets got their best living by the dying: which made them (contrary to all other people) most to worship the sunne setting.

Chap.

*Anno  
Dom.**Anno  
Dom.*

51

Chap. 6.

*Godfreys death and buriall.*

**A**ulhours differ on the death of this noble King: some making him to die of that long-waiting sicknesse; others, of the \* plague: It may be the plague took him out of the hands of that lingring disease, and quickly cut off what that had been long in fretting. He died July 18, having reigned one year wanting five dayes. A Prince valiant, pious, bountifull to the Church: for besideth what he gave to the Patriarch, he founded Canons in the temple of the Sepulchre, and a Monasterie in the vale of Jeholaphat.

<sup>\* P. Emylie.  
us lib. 5.</sup>

We would say his death was very unseasonable (leaving the orphane State not onely in its minority, but its infancie) but that that fruit which to mans apprehension is blown down green and untimely, is gathered full ripe in Gods providence. He was buried in the temple of the Sepulchre, where his tombe is unviolated at this day, whether out of a religion the Turks bear to the place, or out of honour to his memory, or out of a valiant scorn to fight against dead bones; or perchance the Turks are minded as John King of England was, who being wished by a Courtier to untombe the bones of one who whilest he was living had been his great enemie, Oh no, said King John, would all mine enemies were as honourably buried.

Chap. 7.  
*Baldwine chosen King. He keepeth Jerusalem  
in despite of the Patriarch.*

**G**odfrey being dead, the Chriftians with a joyn特 consent dispatched an embassie to Baldwine his brother, Count of Edessa (a citie in \* Arabia, the lord whereof had adopted this Baldwine to be his heir) entreated him to accept of the Kingsome: which honourable offer he courteously embraced.

<sup>\* Plin.lib. 5.  
cap. 24.</sup>

A Prince whose body Nature cut of the largest size, being like \* Saul, higher by the head then his subjects. And though the Goths had a law, alwayes to chooſe a ſhort thick man for their Kiug, yet ſurely a goodly ſtature is moft majesticall. His hair and beard brown, face fair, with an eagles noſe; which in the \* Perſian Kings was anciently obſerved as a mark of magnanimitie.

<sup>\* Tyrus lib.  
10. cap. 2.</sup><sup>\* Manf. Cap.  
mogr. lib. 3.  
pag. 264.</sup><sup>\* Pantal. in  
vita Caroli.</sup><sup>as mas  
Cries of Saul  
taller then  
the multitud  
by his head.</sup>

\* Tyrillus, lib.  
10. cap. 1.  
\* Fox, Mar-  
tyrol. p. 136.

nimity. Bred he was a scholar, entred into Orders, and was Prebendary in the\* churches of Rhems, Liege, and Cambray; but afterwards turned secular Prince, as our Athelwulphus, who exchanged the mitre of Wincheter for the crown of England. Yet Baldwin put not off his scholarship with his habit, but made good use thereof in his reigne. For though bookishnesse may unactive, yet learning doth accomplish a Prince, and maketh him sway his sceptre the steadier.

He was properly the first King of Jerusalēm ( his brother Godfrey never accounted more then a Duke ) and was crowned on Christnasse-day. The reaon that made him assume the name of a King, was thereby to strike the greater \* terror into the Pagans. Thus our Kings of England from the dayes of King John were styled but Lords of Ireland, till Henry the eighth firt entituled himself King, because \* Lord was slighted by the seditious rebels. As for that religious scruple which Godfrey made, to wear a crown of gold where Christ wore one of thorns, Baldwin easilly dispensed therewith. And surely in these things the mind is all: A crown might be refused with pride, and worn with humilitie.

But before his Coronation there was a tough bickering about the citie of Jerusalēm. Dabert the Patriarch, on the death of Godfrey, devoured Jerusalēm and the towre of David in his hope; but coming to take possession, found the place too hot for him. For Garnier Earl of Gretz, in the behalf of King Baldwin ( who was not as yet returned from Edessa ) manned it against him. But so it happened, that this valiant Earl died three dayes after, which by \* Dabert was counted a just judgement of God upon him for his sacrilege. Now though it be pietie to impute all events to Gods hand, yet to say that this mans death was for such a finne, sheweth too much presumption towards God, and too little charite towards our neighbour. Indeed if sudden death had singled out this Earl alone, it had somewhat favoured their censure; but there was then a generall mortalitie in the citie which swept away\* thousands: and, which is most materiall, what this Patriarch interpreted sacrilegide, others accounted loyaltye to his Sovereigne. As for that donation of the citie of Jerusalēm and towre of David which Godfrey gave to the Patriarch, some thought that this gift overthrew self with its own greatnesse, being so immoderately large: others supposed it was but a personall act of Godfrey, and therefore died with the giver; as conceiving his successours not obliged to perform it, because it was unreasonable that a Prince should in such sort fetter and restrain those which should come after him. Sure it is, that Baldwin having both the stronger sword, and possession of the citie,

\* Munif. Co-  
meg. p. 1008.

\* Cambden,  
Brit. pag. 732.

\* Tyrillus, lib.  
10. cap. 4.

\* Urfberg.  
pag. 136.

Anno  
Dom.  
~

Dic.  
25.

Anno  
Dom.  
~

cie, kept it perforce, whilst the Patriarch took that leave which is allowed to losers, to talk, chafe, and complain, sending his bemoning letters to \* Boemund Prince of Antioch, inviting him to take arms, and by violence to recover the Churches right, but from him received the usleesse assistance of his pitie, and that was all.

13

\* Tyrillus,  
lib. 10.

## Chap. 8.

*The Church-storie during this Kings reigne. A chain of successive Patriarchs; Dabert, Ebremare, Gibelline, and Arnulphus: Their severall characters.*

1102

A fterwards, this breach betwixt the King and Patriarch was made up by the mediation of some friends: but the skinne only was drawn over, not dead flesh drawn out of the wound; and Arnulphus (whom we mentioned before) discontented for the losse of the Patriarchs place, still kept the fore raw betwixt them. At last Dabert the Patriarch was fain to flee to Antioch, where he had plentifull maintenance allowed him by Bernard Patriarch of that See. But he was too high in the instep to wear another mans shoes, and conceived himself to be but in a charitable prisone whilst he lived on anothers benevolence. Wherefore hence he hasted to \* Rome, complained to the Pope, and received from his Holinesse a command to King Baldwin to be reestablished in the Patriarchs place, but returning home died by the way at Messana in Sicily, being accounted seven yeares Patriarch, fourre at home, and three in banishment.

1103.

Whilst Dabert was thrust out, one Ebremarus was made Patriarch against his will by King Baldwin. An holy and devout man, but he had more of the dove then the serpent, and was none of the deepest reach. He hearing that he was complained of to the Pope for his irregular election, posted to Rome to excuse himself, shewing he was chosen against his will: and though preferment may not be snatched, it needs not be thrust away. But all would not do; It was enough to put him out, because the King put him in. Wherefore he was commanded to return home, and to wair the definitive sentence, which Gibellinus Archbishop of Arles and the Popes Legate should pronounce in the matter.

\* Tyrillus,  
lib. 11. cap. 4.

54

Gibellinus coming to Jerusalem, concluded the election of Ebremarus to be illegal and void, and was himself chosen Patriarch in his place; and the other in reverence of his pietie made Archbishop of Cefarea. And though Arnulphus (the fire-brand of this Church) desir'd the Patriarchs place for himself, yet was he better content with Gibellinus his election, because he was a through-old man, and hoped that candle would quickly go out that was in the socket.

\* *Tyrus,*  
*lib. 11. c. 28.*

*Baronius in*  
*anno 1108.*

To this Gibellinus King Baldwin granted, that all places which he or his successours should winne, should be subject to his jurisdiction; and this also was confirmed by Pope Paschal the second. But Bernard Patriarch of Antioch found himself much aggrieved hereat, because many of these cities by the ancient Canon of the Council of Nice, were subject to his Church. At last the Pope took the matter into his hand, and stroked the angry Patriarch of Antioch into gentlenesse with good language. He shewed, how since the Council of Nice the countrey had got a new face; ancient mountaines were buried, rivers drowned in oblivion, and they new-christened with other names: Yea, the deluge of the Saracens tyranne had wash'd away the bounds of the Churches jurisdictions, that now they knew not their own severals, where Mahomeranisme so long had made all common and waste. He desir'd him therefore to be contented with this new division of their jurisdictions: especially because it was reasonable, that the King of Jerusalem and his successours should dispose of those places which they should winne with their own swords. Bernard perceiving hereby how his Holinesse stood affected in the busynesse, contented his conscience that he had set his title on foot, and then quietly let it fall to the ground, as counting it no policie to shew his teeth where he durst not bite.

Gibellinus never laid claim to the citie of Jerusalem, whether it was because in thankfullnesse for this large Ecclesiasticall power which King Baldwin had bestowed upon him, or that his old age was too weak to strive with so strong an adversary. He sat foure yeares in his chair, and Arnulphus thinking he went too slow to the grave, is suspected to have given him someting to have mended his pace, and was himself substituted in his room by the especiall favour of King Baldwin.

This Arnulphus was called *mala corona*, as if all vices met in him to dance a round. And no wonder if the King being himself wantonly disposed, advanced such a man: for generally, loose Patrones cannot abide to be pinched and pent with over-strict Chaplains. Besides, it was policie in him to choose such a Patriarch as was liable to exceptions for his vittious life; that so if he began to bark against the King, his mouth might be quickly stopped.

Anno  
Dom.  
1108.

1112.

stopped. Arnulphus was as quiet as a lambe, and durst never challenge his interest in Jerusalem from Godfretys donation; as fearing to wrestle with the King, who had him on the hip, and could out him at pleasure for his bad manners. Amongst other vices he was a great church-robb'rer, who to make Emmelor his niece a Princesse, and to marry Euface Prince of Sidon, gave her the citie of Jericho for her dowrie, and lands belonging to his See worth five thousand crowns yearly. And though Papists may pretend that marriage causeth covetousnesse in the Clergie, yet we shall find when the Prelacie were constrained to a single life, that their nephews ate more church-bread then now the children of married Ministers. Yea, some Popes not onely fed their bastards with church-milk, but even cut off the Churches breasts for their pompous and magnificent maintenance. And thus having dispatched the storie of the Church in this Kings reigne, we come now to handle the busynesse of the Commonwealth entirely by it self.

55

## Chap. 9.

*A mountain-like armie of new adventurers after long and hard travail delivered of a mouse;*  
*Alexius his treachery.*

1101.

The fame of the good successe in Palestine summoned a new supply of other Pilgrimes out of Christendome. Germany, and other places which were sparing at the first voyage, made now amends with double liberality. The chief adventurers were, Guelph Duke of Bavaria, (who formerly had been a great champion of the Popes against Henry the Emperour; and from him \* they of the Papall faction were denominated Guelphes, in distinction from the Imperial party which were called Gibellines.) Hugh brother to the King of France, and Stephen Earl of Bloys, (both which had much suffered in their reputation for deserting their fellows in the former expedition, and therefore they sought to unstain their credite by going again.) Stephen Earl of Burgundie, William Duke of Aquitain, Frederick Count of Bogen, Hugh brother to the Earl of Thofose: besides many great Prelates, Diemo Archbishop of Salzburg, the \* Bishops of Millain and Pavie, which led 50000 out of Lombardie, the total summe amounting to 250000. All stood on the tiptoes of expectation to see what so great an armie would atchieve; men commonly measuring victories by the mul-

\* *Pastor. De*  
*bili. Germ.*  
*part 2. pag.*  
*151.*

\* *Vrijberg.*  
*p. 14. 237.*

56

*\* In chronicis,  
pag. 239.**\* Cited by  
Lampad. Stel-  
lis bistor. part.  
3. pag. 265.**\* Befoldus.  
P. Amyl.  
pag. 140.**\* Munt. cof-  
migr. p. 640.*

multitudes of the souldiers. But they did nothing memorable, save only that so many went so farre to do nothing. Their sufferings are more famous then their deeds; being so consumed with plague, famine, and the sword, that \* Conrade Abbot of Ursprung, who went and wrote this voyage, beleeveth that not a thousand of all these came into Palestina, and those so poore that their bones would scarce hold together: so that they were fitter to be sent into an hospital then to march into the field; having nothing about them wherewith to affright their enemies, except it were the ghost-like ghastliness of their famished faces. The army that came out of Lombardie were so eaten up by the swords of the Turks, that no fragments of them were left, nor news to be heard what was become of them: And no wonder, being led by Prelates unexperienced in martiall affairs; which, though perchance great Clerks, were now to turn over a new leaf, which they had no skill to reade.. \* Luther was wont to say, that he would be unwilling to be a souldier in that armie where Priests were Captains, because the Church and not the Camp was their proper place; whereas going to warre, they willingly ouerted themselves of Gods protection, being out of their vocation.

But the main matter which made this whole voyage miscarry in her travail, was the treachery of the midwife through whose hands it was to passe. For Alexius the Grecian Emperour feared, left betwixt the Latines in the East in Palestina, and West in Europe, as betwix two milstones, his Empire lying in the midst should be ground to powder. Wherupon, as these Pilgrimes went through his country, he did them all possible mischief, still under the pretense of kindness, (What hinderer to a false helper?) calling the chief Captains of the armie his sonnes; but they found it true, The more courtesie, the more craft. Yea, this deep dissembler would put off his visard in private, and professe to his friends that he delighted as much to see the Turks and these Christians in battell, as to see \* mastiff-dogs fight together, and that \* which side soever lost, yet he himself would be a gainer.

But when they had passed Grecia, and had crossed the Bosporus (otherwise called The arm of S. George) entring into the dominion of the Turks, they were for thirty dayes expoled a mark to their arrows. And though this great multitude was never stabb'd with any mortall defeat in a set battell, yet they consumed away by degrees, the cowardly Turks striking them when their hands were pinnioned up in the straits of unknown passages. The Generals besrawed the countrey about with their corpses. Great Hugh of France was buried at Tarsus in Cilicia; Duke Guiphio, at Paphos in Cyprus; \* Dicmo the Arch-

*Anno  
Dom.*

*Anno  
Dom.* Archbishop of Salzburg saw his own heart cut out, and was \* martyred by the Turks at Chorazin: And God ( saith my Author ) manifested by the event, that the warre was not pleasing unto him.

*\* Ursprung.  
pag. 238.*

## Chap. 10.

*Antipatris and Cesarea wonne by the Christians.  
The variety of King Baldwines successe.*

Mean time King Baldwine was employed with better successe in Palestina: for hitherto Joppa was the only port the Christians had; but now by the assistance of the Genoan fleet (who for their pains were to have \* a third part of the spoil, and a whole street to themselves of every citie they took) Baldwine wonne most considerable havens along the mid-land-sea. He began with Antipatris, to ransome the Christian honour which was morgaged here, because Godfrey was driven away from hence: And no wonder, having no \* shipping; whereas that armie which taketh a strong harbour, otter-like must swim at sea as well as go on ground.

Next he took Cesarea-Stratonis, built and so named in the honour of Cesar Augustus, by Herod the great; who so \* politickly poised himself, that he sat upright whilst the wheel of Fortune turned round under him. Let Antony winne, let Augustus winne, all one to him, by contrary winds he failed to his own ends. Cesarea taken, Baldwine at Rhamula put the Turks to a great overthrow.

But see the chance of warre, Few dayes after at the same place he received a great defeat by the Infidels, wherein besides many others, the two Stephens, Earls of Burgundy and Blois, were slain. This was the first great overthrow the Christians suffered in Palestina: and needs must blows be grievous to them who were not used to be beaten. The King was reported slain, but fame deserved to be pardoned for so good a lie; which for the present much disheartened the Christians, a great part of the souldiers courage being wrapped up in the life of the Generall.

Baronius (as bold as any \* Bethshemite to pric into the ark of Gods secrets) \* saith, This was a just punishment on Baldwine for detaining the Churches goods. But to leave hidden things to God, the apparent cause of his overthrow was his own \* rashness, being desirous to ingrosse all the credit alone, without sending for succours and supplies from his neighbours. He assaulted

*\* Tyrius. lib.  
10. cap. 14.**\* Tyrius. lib.  
9. cap. 18.**\* Iosephus.**\* 1. Sam. 6.  
\* In Annal.  
Eccl. annis  
1100. & ver-  
sus. cap. 10.  
\* Tyrius. lib.  
10. cap. 10.*

58 faulted his numerous enemies with an handfull of men; and so brake himself, with covetousnesse to purchase more honour then he could pay for. And herein he discovered his want of judgement, being indeed like an arrow well-feathered, but with a blunt pile; he flew swift, but did not sink deep. Thus his credit lay bleeding, but he quickly stanched it. The Pagans little suspecting to be reincident, gave themselves over to mirth and jollitie (as securitie oftentimes maketh the sword to fall out of their hands from whom no force could wrest it) when Baldwine coming on them with fresh souldiers, strook them with the back-blows of an unexpected enemie, which awakes pierce the deepest, routed them and put them to the flight. This his victory followed so suddenly after his overthrow, that some mention not the overthrow at all, but the victory onely; as that good horfeman is scarce perceived to be thrown that quickly recovereth the saddle.

## Chap. II.

*The conquest of sundry fair havens by the Christians; Ptolemais, &c.*

VHilest the King was thus busied in battel, Tancred Prince of Galilee was not idle, but enlarged the Christian dominions with the taking of Apamea and Laodicea. These cities in Cœlosyria were built by \*Antiochus: and they agreed so well together, that they were called sisters; and as in concord, so in condition they went hand in hand, being now both conquered together.

Ptolemais next stooped to the Christian yoke; so named from Ptolemeus Philometor King of Egypt; a citie on the Mediterranean, of a triangular form, having two sides washed with the sea, the third regarding the champaign. The Genoan galleys being fevety in number, did the main service in conquering, and had granted them for their reward large profits from the harbour, a Church to themselves, and jurisdiction over a fourth part of the citie. This Ptolemais was afterwards the very seat of the Holy warre. Let me mind the Reader of a Latine proverb, \**Lis Ptolemaica*, that is, A long and constant strife; so called from Ptolemais, a froward old woman who was never out of wrangling. But may not the proverb as well be verified of this citie, in which there was ninelcore yeares fighting against the Turks?

With \*worse successe did Baldwine Count of Edessa, and Earl

\* Tyrius, lib.  
10. cap.23.  
Idem, cap.28.

\* Y. de Erafm.  
Adag.

\* Tyrius, lib.  
10. cap.30.

Anno  
Dom.

1102.

1104.

1110.

Earl Joceline besiege Charran in Mesopotamia: for when it was readie to be surrendred, the Christian Captains fell out amongst themselves, were defeated by the Pagans, and the two forenamed Earls taken prisoners. This Charran is famous for \* Abrahams living, and his father Terahs dying there: And in the same place rich \* Craftus the Romanië vomited up the sacrilegious goods he had devoured of the Temple of Jerusalem, and had his armie overthrown. Nor here may we overpaſſe, how Boemund Prince of Antioch with a great navis spoyleſt the harbours of Grecia, to be revenged of treacherous Alexius the Emperour. Voluntaries for this service he had enough, all desirous to have a lash at the dog in the manger, and every mans hand itching to throw a cudgel at him; who like a nut-tree must be manured by beating, or else would never bear fruit: yet on some conditions an agreement at last was made betwixt them.

To return to Palestine. The next citie that felt the victorius arms of the Christians was Byblus; a good haven, and built by Heveus the sixth sonne of Canaan. Here Adonis was anciently worshipped, whose untimely death by a bore Venus so much bemoned: And the fable is moralized, when Lust lamenteth the losse of Beautie consumed by age. Nor did Tripoli hold out long after; so called, becaufe joynlytly built by the Tyrians, Sidonians, and Aradites. And Berytus ( since Barutus ) accompanied her neighbour, and both of them were yeelded unto the Christians. The King created one Bertram, a well-deserving Noble-man, Earl of Tripoli; who did homage to the King for his place, which was accounted a title of great honour; as being one of the four Tetrarchies of the kingdome of Jerusalem.

59

\* Gen.11.31.  
\* Iosephus.

Tyrius lib.11.  
cap.6.

Idem.

## Chap. 12.

*The description of Sidon and Tyre, the one taken, the other besieged in vain by Baldwine.*

Sidon is the most ancient citie of Phenicia. And though the proud Grecians counted all Barbarians besides themselves, yet Phenicia was the school-mistresse of Grecia, and first taught her her alphabet. For Cadmus a Phenician born, first invented and brought letters to Thebes. Sidon had her name from the eldest sonne of \* Canaan, and was famous for the finest crystall-glaſes, which here were made. The glaſie land was fetched forty miles off, from the river Belus: but it could not be made

\* Gen.10.15.

Chap. 12. K.Baldwine. *The Historie of*

## Book II.

60  
\* Sand. Trav.  
pag. 210.\* Tyrius,  
lib. 11. cap. 14.

\* fusile till it was brought hither; whether for want of tools, or from some secret sullen humour therein, we will not dispute. This citie anciently was of great renown: but her fortune being as brittle as her glases, she was fain to find neck for every one of the Monarchs yokes; and now at last (by the assistance of the \* Danish and Norwegian fleet) was subdued by the Christians.

Fleshed with this conquest, they next besieged Tyre. Sea and land, nature and art consented together to make this citie strong: for it was seated in an ifland, save that it was tacked to the continent with a small neck of land, which was fortified with many walls and towres. It is questionable whether the strength or wealth of this citie was greater; but out of question that the pride was greater then either. Here the best purples were died, a colour even from the beginning destined to Courts and Magistracie; and here the richest clothes were imbroidered and curiously wrought. And though generally those who are best with their fingers are worst with their arms, yet the Tyrians were also stout men, able mariners, and the planters of the noblest colonies in the world. As their citie was the daughter of Zidon, so was it mother to Romes rivil Carthage, Lepis, Utica, Cadiz, and Nola. The most plentifull proof they gave of their valour, was, when for three years they defended themselves against Nebuchadnezzar, and afterwards stopped the full career of Alexanders conquests, so that his victorious armie which did flie into other countreys, was glad to creep into this citie. Yet after seven moneths siege (such is the omnipotencie of industry) he forced it, and stripped this ladie of the sea naked beyond modestie and mercie, putting all therein to the sword that resisted, and hanged up 2000 of the prime citizens in a rank along the sea-shore.

Yet afterwards Tyre out-grew these her miseries, and attained, though not to her first giant-like, yet to a competent proportion of greatness. At this time wherein King Baldwine besieged it, it was of great strength and importance, insomuch that finding it a weight too heavey for his shoulders, he was fain to break off his siege and depart.

With worse successe he afterwards did rashly give battell to the vast armie of the Persian Generall, wherein he lost many men, all his baggage, and escaped himself with great difficultie.

Anno  
Dom.Decem  
19.  
1112.1116.  
1117.

1113.

## Chap.

\* Tyrius, lib.  
11. cap. 19.Book II. *the Holy Warre. K.Baldwine. Chap. 13.*Anno  
Dom.Decem  
19.

*The pleasurable voyages of King Baldwine, and his death.*

After the tempest of a long warre a calm came at last, and King Baldwine had a five yeares vacation of peace in his old age: In which time he disported himself with many voyages for pleasure: as, one to the Red-sea, not so calld from the rednesse of the water, or sand, as some without any colour have conceited; but from the neighbouring Edomites, whom the Grecians called Erythreans, or red men, truly translating the Hebrew name of Edomites: they had their name of rednesse from their father Edom. And here Baldwine surveyed the countrey, with the nature and strength thereof. Another journey he took afterwards into \* Egypt, as conceiving himself ingaged in honour to make one inrode into that countrey in part of payment of those many excursions the Egyptians had made into his Kingdome. He took the citie of \* Pharamia, anciently called Ramees, and gave the spoil thereof to his souldiers. This work being done, he began his play, and entertained the time with viewing that riddle of Nature, the river of Nilus, whose stream is the confluence of so many wonders: first, for its undiscovered fountain; though some late Geographers, because they would be held more intelligent then others, have found the head of Nilus in their own brains, and make it to flow from a fountain they fancies in the mountains of the moon, in the South of Africa: then for the strange creatures bred therein; as river-bulls, horses, and crocodiles: But the chiefeft wonder is the yearly increasing thereof from the \* seventeenth of June to the midft of September, overflowing all Egypt, and the banks of all humane judgement to give the true reaon thereof.

Much time Baldwine spent in beholding this river, wherein he took many fishes, and his death in eating them: for a new surfer revived the grief of arold wound, which he many years before received at the siege of Ptolemais. His sicknesse put him in mind of his finnes, conscience speaking loudest when men begin to grow speechleſſe: And especially he grieved, that having another wife alive, he had married the Countesse of Sicilie, the relieft of Earl Roger: But now heartily sorrowfull for his fault, he sent away thin his last wife; yet we read not that he received his former again. Other faults he would have amended, but was prevented by death. And no doubt where the deed could

61

## Chap. 13.

\* Scelig, on  
Feilut, in E-  
gypt, pag. 2.  
Fuller, Mi-  
cell. lib. 4.  
cap. 20.

\* Tyrius,  
lib. 11. cap. 31.  
\* Calvifius  
makes it to be  
winter at the  
former voyage

\* Sand. Trav.  
pag. 94.

I 3

62

could not be present, the desire was a sufficient proxy. He died at Laris, a citie in the road from Egypt, and was brought to Jerusalem, and buried on Palm-sunday in the temple of the Sepulchre, in the eighteenth yeare of his reigne.

A Prince superiour to his brother Godfrey in learning ; equall in valour, inferiour in judgement ; rafh, precipitate, greedy of honour, but swallowing more then he could digest, and undertaking what he was not able to perform ; little-affected to the Clergie, or rather to their temporall greatnessse, especially when it came in competition with his own ; much given to women, (befides the three wives he had, first marrying Guttera an English-woman, after her death, Tafror an Armentian Lady, and whilst she yet survived, the Countesse of Sicilie) yet he had no child, God commonly punishing wantonnesse with barrennesse. For the rest, we referre the Reader to the dull Epitaph written on his tombe, which (like the verses of that age) runneth in a kind of rythme, though it can scarce stand on true feet :

*Rex Baldwinus, Fudus alter Maccabeus,  
Spes patriæ, vigor Ecclesiæ, virtus utriusque,  
Quem formidabant, cui dona tributa ferabant,  
\* Cedar, Aegypti Dan, ac homicida Damascus ;  
Proh dolor ! in modico clauditur hoc tumulo.*

Baldwine another Maccabee for might,  
Hope, help of State, of Church, and boths delight,  
Cedar, with Egypts Dan of him afraid,  
Bloody Damascus to him tribute paid :

Alas! here in this tombe is laid.

Let him who pleaseth play the critick on the divers readings ; and whether by *Dan* be meant the Souldan, or whether it relatheth to the conceit that Antichrist shall come of the tribe of Dan. But perchance the text is not worth a comment.

### Chap. 14.

#### *Baldwine the second chosen King; Prince Eustace peaceably renounceth his right.*

IT happened the same day King Baldwin was buried, that Baldwin de Burgo his kinsman and Count of Edessa came casually into the citie, intending only there to keep his Easter : when behold the Christian Princes met together for the election

\* *Allier,*  
*Cæsar.*

Anno  
Dom.  
1118.  
March  
26.

63

on of a new King. The greater part did centre their suffrages on Prince Eustace, brother to the two former Kings, but then absent in France. They alledged, That it was not safe to break the chain of succession, where the inversion of order bringeth all to confusion ; and, That it was high ingratitude to the memories of Godfrey and Baldwin to exclude their brother from the crown, especially he being fit in all points to be a King, wanting nothing but that he wanted to be there ; That in the mean time some might be deputed to lock up all things safe, and to keep the keyes of the State till he should arrive.

On the other side, some objected the danger of an *interregnum*, how when a State is headlesse evrie malecontent would make head ; inconveniences in other countreys would be mischiefs here, where they lived in the mouth of their enemies : and therefore to stay for a King, was the way to lose the Kingdome.

Then Joceline Prince of Tiberias, a man of great authoritie, offered himself a moderatour in this difference, and counselled both sides to this effect : To proceed to a present election, and therein to be directed not confined by succession ; though they missed the next, let them take one of Godfreys kinred : As the case now stood, he must be counted next in bloud that was next at hand, and this was Baldwin Count of Edessa, on whom he bestowed most superlative praises. All were much affected with these his commendations ; for they knew that Joceline was his sworn adversary, and concluded that it must needs be a mighty weight of worth in Baldwin, which pressed out praise from the mouth of his enemie : though indeed private ends prompted him to make this speech, who hoped himself to get the Earldome of Edessa when Baldwin should be translated to Jerusalem. However his words took effect, and Baldwin hereupon was chosen King, and \* crowned on Easter-day by Arnulphus the Patriarch.

Meantime some secretly were sent to Prince Eustace to come and challenge the crown. But he hearing that another was already in possession, though he was on his journey coming, quietly went back again. A large alms, to give away a Kingdome out of his charite to the publick cause.

Baldwine was of a proper personage, and able bodie, born nigh Rhems in France, sonne to Hugh Count of Rorster and Millecent his wife. He was exceedingly charitable to the poore, and pious towards God, witness the brawn on his hands and knees made with continuall praying : valiant also, and excellently well seen in all martiall affairs.

We had almost forgotten what happened in this yeare, the death of Alexius the Grecian Emperour, that arch-hypocrite and

\* *Tyrus, lib.  
13. cap. 4.*

64

and grand enemie of this warre. On whom we may bestow this  
Epitaph :

*If he of men the best doth know to live,  
Who best knows to dissemble, justly then  
To thee, Alexius, we this praise must give,  
That thou so live didst know the best of men.  
And this was it at last did stop thy breath,  
Thou knew'st not how to counterfeit with death.*

His sonne Calo-Johannes succeeded him in his Empire, of whom  
we shall have much cause to speak hereafter.

### Chap. 15. *The Ecclesiasticall affairs in this Kings reigne.*

According to our wonted method, let us first rid out of the  
way Church-matters in this Kings reigne, that so we may  
have the more room to follow the affairs of the Commonwealth. We left Arnulphus the last Patriarch of Jerusalem; sence which time the bad favour of his life came to the Popes  
nose, who sent a Legate to depose him. But Arnulphus hasted  
to Rome with much \* money, and there bought himself to be in-  
nocent, so that he enjoyed his place during his life.

\* *Tyrus, lib.  
11. cap. 36.*

Guarimund succeeded in his place, a very religious man, by  
whom God gave the Christians many victories. He called a  
Council at Neapolis or Sichem, wherein many wholesome  
things were concluded for reformation of manners. Betwixt  
him and William Archibishop of Tyre (an English-man) there  
arose a difference, because this Archibishop would not receive  
his confirmation of him, (from whom by ancient right he should  
take it) but from the Pope, counting it the most honour to hold  
of the highest landlord. And indeed the Pope for gain confirmed  
him, though he should have sent him to the Patriarch. But  
the court of Rome careth not though men steal their corn, so be  
it they bring it to their mills to grind.

After Guarimunds death, Stephen Abbot of S. John de Valla  
was chosen Patriarch; once a cavalleer, but afterward laying  
down the Sword, he took up the Word, and entred into Orders.  
He awaked the Patriarchs title to Jerusalem, which had slept  
during his three predecessors, and challenged it very imperi-  
ously of the King; for he was a man of spirit and metall. And  
indeed he had too much life to live long. For the King fearing  
what flame this spark might kindle, and finding him to be an  
active man, gave him (as it is suspected) a little more active poi-  
son,

Anno  
Dom.

1119.

1128.

65  
son, which cut him off in the midst of his age, and beginning of  
his projects.

The King coming to him when he lay on his death-bed, asked  
him how he did : To whom he answered, My \* Lord, for the  
present I am as you would have me. A cruel murder, if true :  
But it is strange, that he whose hands (as we have said) were  
hardened with frequent prayer, should soften them again in inno-  
cent bloud. Wherefore we will not condemn the memorie of a  
King on doubtful evidence. The Patriarchs place was filled  
with William Prior of the Sepulchre, a Fleming, a man better  
beloved then learned.

\* *Tyrus, lib.  
13. cap. 25.*

### Chap. 16. *Knights-Templars, and Teutonicks instituted.*

About this time the two great orders of Templars and Teu-  
tonicks appeared in the world. The former under Hugh de  
Paganis, and Ganfred of S. Omer their first founders. They a-  
greed in profession with the Hospitallers, and performed it  
alike, vowed Poverty, Chastite, and Obedience, and to defend  
Pilgrimes coming to the Sepulchre. It is \*falsely faterhered on  
S. Bernard, that he appointed them their rule, who prefcribeth  
not what they should do, but onely \* describeth what they did :  
namely, How they were never idle, mending their old clothes  
when wanting other employmen; never played at chesse or dice,  
never hawked nor hunted, beheld no stage-plays; arming them-  
selves with faith within, with steel without; aiming more at  
strength then state; to be feared, not admired; to strike terror  
with their valour, not stirre covetousnesse with their wealth in  
the heart of their enemies. Other sweet praises of them let  
him who pleath fetch from the mouth of this mellifluous  
Doctor.

\* *Baronius, ju  
anno 1127.*

\* *Quarto &  
quinto cap.  
exhort.*

Indeed at first they were verie poore; in token whereof they  
gave for their \* Seal, Two men riding on one horse. And hence  
it was, that if the Turks took any of them prisoners, their con-  
stant ranfome was a \* Sword and a Belt; it being conceived that  
their poore state could stretch to no higher price. But after  
their order was confirmed by Pope Honorius (by the intreay of  
Stephen the Patriarch of Jerusalem) who appointed them to  
wear a White garment, to which Eugenius the third added a  
Red croise on their breast; they grew wonderfully rich by the  
bountie of severall Patrones: Yea, \* the King and Patriarch of  
Jerusalem dandled this infant-order so long in their laps till it

\* *Weaver,  
Fan-mon. pag.  
7.1..*

\* *Hospit. De  
orig. mon.*

\* *Tyrus, lib.  
12. Cap. 7.1.*

K brake

66

broke their knees, it grew so heavie at last, and these ungratefull Templars did pluck out the feathers of those wings which hatched and brooded them. From Alms-men they turned Lords; and though verie valiant at first (for they were sworn rather to die then to flee) afterwards laziness withered their arms, and swelled their bellies. They laughed at the rules of their first Institution, as at the swaddling-clothes of their infancie: neglecting the Patriarch, and counting themselves too old to be whipped with the rod of his discipline, till partly their vices, and partly their wealth caused their finall extirpation, as (God willing) shall be shewed hereafter.

\* Lib 5. cap.  
1, 2, 3.

At the same time began the Teutonick order, consisting one-ly of Dutch-men well descended, living at Jerusallem in an house which one of that nation bequeathed to his countrey-men that came thither on pilgrimage. In the yeare 1190 their order was honoured with a great Master, whereof the first was Henry a-Walpot, and they had an habit assigned them to wear, Black croses on white robes: They were to fight in the defense of Christianity against Pagans. But we shall meet with them more largely in the following storie.

## Chap. 17.

*The Christians variety of successe; Tyre taken by the assistance of the Venetians.*

Tyrius, lib. 12.  
cap. 10.

IT is worth the Readers marking, how this Kings regne was chequered with variety of fortune: For first, Roger Prince of Antioch (or rather guardian in the minoritis of young Boemund) went forth with greater courage then discretion; whereunto his successe was answerable, being conquered and killed by the Turks. But Baldwin on the fourteenth of August following, forced the Turks to a restitution of their victory, and with a small armie gave them a great overthrow, in spite of Gazi their boasting General.

To qualifie the Christians joy for this good successe, Joceline unadvisedly fighting with Balak, a petty King of the Turks, was conquered and taken prisoner: and King Baldwin coming to deliver him, was also taken himself; for which he might thank his own rashnesse: For it had been his best work to have done nothing for a while, till the Venetian succours which were not farre off, had come to him, and not presently to adventure all to the hazard of a battell.

Yet the Christians hands were not bound in the Kings captivitie;

Anno  
Dom.

1122.

1123.

vitie: For Eustace Grenier, chosen Vice-roy whilst the King was in durance, stoutly defended the country: and Count Joceline, which had escaped out of prison, fighting again with Balak at Hircapolis, routed his armie, and killed him with his own hands. But the main piece of service was the taking of Tyre, which was done under the conduct of Guarimund the Patriarch of Jerusallem, but chiefly by the help of the Venetian navie, which Michael their Duke brought, who for their pains were to have a third part of the citie to themselves. Tyre had in it store of men and munition; but famine increasing (against whose arrows there is no armour of proof) it was yeeded on honourable terms. And though perhaps hunger shortly would haue made the Turks digest courser conditions, yet the Christians were loth to anger their enemies valour into desperatenesse.

June 29.

1125.

1126.

1127.

Next yeare the King returned home, having been eighteen moneths a prisoner, being to pay for his ranome an hundred thousand Michealets, and for securite he left his daughter in pawn. But he paid the Turks with their own money, or (which was as good coin) with the money of the Saracens, vanquishing Barsequen their Captain at Antiochia: and not long after, he conquered Doldequin another great Commander of them at Damacus.

To correct the ranknesse of the Christians pride for this good successe, Damacus was afterward by them unfortunately besieged: Heaven discharged against them thunder-ordinance, arrows of lightning, small-shot of hail, whereby they being miserably wafted were forced to depart. And this affliction was increased when Boemund the young Prince of Antioch, one of great hope and much lamented, was defeated and slain. Authors impute these mishaps to the Christians pride, and relying on their own strength, which never is more untrustie then when most trusted. True it was, God often gave them great victories, when they defended themselves in great straits: Hereupon they turned their thankfulness into presumption, grew at last from defending themselves to dare their enemies on disadvantages to their often overthrow: for God will not unmake his miracles by making them common. And may not this also be counted some cause of their ill successe, That they alwayes imputed their victories to the materiall Croffe which was carried before them? So that Christ his glory after his ascension suffered again on the Croffe by their superstition.

67

68

## Chap. 18.

*The death of Baldwin the second.*

**K**ing Baldwin a little before his death renounced the world, and took on him a religious habit. This was the fashion of many Princes in that age; though they did it for divers ends. Some thought to make amends for their disordered lives, by entering into some holy order at their deaths: Others having surfeited of the worlds vanities, fasted from it when they could eat no more because of the impotence of their bodies: Others being crossed by the world by some misfortune, sought to cross the world again in renouncing of it. These like furious gamesters threw up their cards, not out of dislike of gaming, but of their game; and they were rather discontented to live then contented to die. But we must believe that Baldwin did it out of true devotion, to ripen himself for heaven, because he was piously affected from his youth so that all his life was religiously tuned, though it made the sweetest musick in the cloce. He died not long after, on the 22 of August, in the thirteenth yeare of his reigne; and was buried with his predecessors in the temple of the Sepulchre. By Morpha Grecian Ladie his wife he had four daughters: whereof Milleſent was the eldest; the second Alice, married to young Boemund Prince of Antioch; the third Hodern, wife to Reimund Prince of Tripoli; and Mete the youngest, Abbess of Bethanie.

Anno  
Dom.  
1136.

1132.

## Chap. 19.

*Of Fulco, the fourth King of Jerusalem.*

**F**ulco Earl of Tours, Mam, and Anjou, coming some three years before on pilgrimage to Jerusalem, there took in marriage Milleſent the Kings daughter. He had assigned to him the title of Tyre, and some other Princely accommodations for his present maintenance, and the Kingdome after the death of his father in law, which he received accordingly. He was well nigh 60 years old: And by his first wife he had a sonne, Geoffrey Plantagenet Earl of Anjou; to whom he left his lands in France, and from whom our Kings of England are descended. This Fulco was a very valiant man, able both of bodie and mind. His greatest defect was a weak memory (though not so bad as that of \* Messala Corvinus, who forgot his own name) info-

\* Plin. lib. 7.  
cap. 24.

Anno  
Dom.  
1136.

insomuch that he knew not his owne servants; and those whom he even now preferred, were presenyly after strangers unto him. Yet though he had a bad memorie whilst he lived, he hath a good one now he is dead, and his vertues are famous to posterite.

69.

## Chap. 20.

*The Church-story during this Kings reigne; The remarkable ruine of Rodolphus Patriarch of Antioch.*

**T**he Church of Jerusalem yeelded no alterations in the reigne of Fulco. But in Antioch there was much stirre who should succeed Bernard that peaceable long-lived man, who far thirty six years, and survived eight Patriarchs of Jerusalem. Now whilst the Clergie were tedious in their choice, the Laitie was too nimble for them, and they (thinking it equall to have an hand in making, who must have their arms in defending a Patriarch) clapped one \* Rodolphus of noble parentage into the chair. He presently took his pall off from the altar of S. Peter, thereby sparing both his purse and pains to go to Rome, and acknowledging no other superior than that Apostle for his Patrone. This man was the darling of the Gentrie, (and no wonder if they loved him who was of their cloth and making) but hated of the Clergie. Wherefore knowing himself to need strong arms who was to swim against the stream, he wrought himself into the favour of the Princess of Antioch, the widow of young Boemund, so that he commanded all her command, and beat down his enemies with her strength. He promised to make a marriage betwixt her and Reimund Earl of Poictou, (a Frenchman of great fauor, who was coming into these parts) but he deceived her, and caused the Earl to marry Constantia the daughter of this Ladie, by whom he had the principality of Antioch. Indeed this Constantia was but a childe for age, but they never wane yeares to marrie, who have Kingdome for their portion.

The Patriarch, to make sure work, bound Prince Reimund by an oath to be true to him: But friends unjustly gotten are seldom comfortably enjoyed: Of his sworn friend, he proved his sworn enemy, and forced him to go up to Rome, there to answer many accusations laid to his charge, wherein the ground-work perchance was true, though malice might set the varnish on

\* Tyrius, lib. 15

C.H.

K 3

on

70 on it. The main matter was, that he made odious comparisons betwixt Antioch and Rome, and counted himself equal to his Holiness.

Rodolphus coming to Rome found the Popes doores shut against him, but he opened them with a golden key. Money he sowed plentifully, and reaped it when he came to be tried; for he found their hands very soft towards him whom formerly he had grieved in the fist. He also resigned his old pall, and took a new one from the Pope. As for his other crimes, it was concluded that Albericus Bishop of Ostia should be sent into Syria the Popes Legate, to examine matters, and to proceed accordingly with the Patriarch as things there should be found alledged and proved: Whereat his adversaries much stormed, who expected that he should instantly have been deposed.

Yet afterwards they prevailed mightily with Albericus the Legate, and bowed him on their side. He coming to Antioch cited the Patriarch to appear; who being thrice called, came not. On his absence all were present with their conjectures, what should cause it: Some imputing it to his guiltiness; others to his contempt; others to his fear of his enemies potencies, or judges partialities: for indeed the Legate came not with a virgin-judgement, but ravished with prejudice; being prepossessed with this intent to dispossesse him of his place. Some thought he relied on his peace formerly made at Rome, where the illegalitie of his election was rectified by his laying down his first pall, and assuming a new one from the Pope.

Here was it worth the beholding in what severall \* streams mens affections ran. All wished that the tree might be felled, who had hopes to gather chips by his fall; and especially one Arnulphus, and Dean Lambert, the promoters against the Patriarch. Others pitied him, and though perchance content that his roof might be taken down, were loth he should be razed to the ground. Some reserved their affections till they were countelled by the event which side to favour; and would not be engaged by any manifest declaration, but so that they might fairly retreat if need required. Amongst other Prelates which were present, Serlo Archbishop of Apamea was one, who formerly had been a great enemy to the Patriarch, but had lately taken himself off from that course. The Legate demanded of him why he proceeded not to accuse the Patriarch as he was wont: To whom he answered, " \* What formerly I did, was done out of unadvised heat against the health of my soul, discouering the nakednesse of my father, like to cursed Cham; and now God hath recalled me from mine error: so that I wil neither accuse, nor presumtuously judge him, but am ready to die for his safetie. Hereupon the Legate immediately ( such was

\* Baronius, in  
anno 1136.

\* Tyrinus, lib.  
15. cap. 16.

71 was the martiall law in a Church-man) deposed him from his Archbisshoprick. Little hope then had the Patriarch, who saw himself condemned in his friend: and he himself followed not long after, being thrust out by violence, cast into prison, and there long kept in chains, till at last he made an escape to Rome, intending there to traverfe his cause again, had not death ( occasioned by poison, as is thought) prevented him.

I. dem, lib. 15.  
cap. 17.

### Chap. 21.

*Calo-Johannes the Grecian Emperour demandeth Antiochia; Reimund the Prince thereof doth homage to him for it.*

Calo-Johannes the Grecian Emperour came up with a \* vast armie of horse and foot, and demanded of Reimund Prince of Antioch, to resigne unto him that whole Signory, according to the composition which the Christian Princes made with \* Alexius his father.

Hereat Reimund and all the Latines stormed out of measure; Had they purchased the inheritance of the land with their own bloud, now to turn tenants at will to another? Some pleaded, That the ill usage of Alexius \* extorted from Godfrey and the rest of the Pilgrimes that agreement; and an oath made by force, is of no force, but may freely be broken, because not freely made. Others alledged, That when Antiochia was first wonne, it was offered to Alexius, and \* he refused it: so fair a tender was a painment. Others argued, That that generation which made this contract was wholly dead; and that the debt descended not on them to make it good. But most insisted on this, That Alexius kept not his covenants, and assifisted them not according to the agreement. Indeed he called these Princes his sonnes; but he disinherited them of their hopes, and all their portion was in promises never payed. No reason then, that the knot of the agreement should hold them fast, and let him loose.

The worst of these answers had been good enough, if their swords had been as strong as the Grecian Emperours. But he coming with a numerous army, in few dayes overcame all Cilicia (which for fourtie yeares had belonged to the Prince of Antioch) and then besieged the citie of Antioch it self. Force is the body, and resolution the soul of an action: both these were well tempered together in the Emperours armie; and the citie brought to great distresse. Whereupon Fulk King of Jerusalem with

\* Tyrius, lib.  
14. cap. 24.

\* Vide supra,  
Book I. chap.  
15.

\* Urfjerg, pag.  
233. tonis  
sacramentis.

\* Vide supra,  
Book I. chap.  
15.

72 with some other Princes, fearing what wofull conclusion would follow so violent premisses, made a composition between them. So that Reimund did homage to the Emperour, and held his principallity as a vassall from him. And though four yeares after the Emperour came again into these parts, yet he did not much harm; pillaging was all his conquest. Some years after he died, being accidentally poisoned by one of his own arrows which he intended for the wild boar. A Prince so much better to the Latines then his father Alexius, as an honourable foe is above a treacherous friend. His Empire he disposed to Emmanuel his sonne.

Anno  
Dom.

1146.

## Chap. 22.

*The succession of the Turkish Kings, and Saracen Caliphs: Of the unlimited power of a Souldan; Some resemblance thereof anciently in the kingdome of France.*

No great service of moment was performed in the reigne of King Full, because he was molested with domestical discords, and intestine warres against Pontius Count of Tripoli, and Hugh Earl of Joppa: Only Beerheba was fortified, and some forts built about Askelon, as an introduction to besiege it. Also skirmishes were now and then fought with variety of success, against Sanguin one of the Turks great Princes.

And here let the Reader take notice, that though we have mentioned many Commanders, as Auxianus, Corboran, Ammarius, Tenduc, Gazi, Balak, Dordequin, Borsequin, Sanguin, some Turkish, some Saracen, yet none of these were absolute Kings (though perchance in courtesy sometimes so styled by writers) but were onely Generals and Lieutenants accountable to their Superiors, the Caliphs either of Babylon or Egypt: Who what they were, we referre the Reader to our Chronologie.

Caliph was the Pope (as I may say) of the Saracens, a mixture of Priest and Prince. But we need not now trouble our selves with curiositie in their successions, these Caliphs being but obscure men, who confined themselves to pleasures, making play their work, and having their constant diet on the fawce of recreation. We are rather to take notice of their Generals and Captains, which were the men of action. For a Souldan (which was but a Vice-roy) with his borrowed light shineth brighter in histo-

history then the Caliph himself. Yet may we justly wonder, that these florhfull Caliphs shoud do nothing themselves, and commit such unlimited power to their Souldars; especially seeing too much trust is a strong tentation to make ambitious flesh and bloud disloyal. Yet something may be said for the Caliph of Egypt, besides that the pleasures of that countrey were sufficient to invite him to a voluptuous life: First, the awfull regard which the Egyptians had of their Princes, gave them security to trust their Officers with ample Commission. Secondly, herein they followed an ancient custome practised by the Pharaohs anciently, who gave unto Joseph so large authority, as we may read in Genesis. Some example also we have hereof in France about nine hundred yeares ago. Childerick, Theodorick, Clovis, Childebert, Dagobert, &c. a chain of idle Kings well linked together, gave themselves over to pleasures privately, never coming abroad; but onely on May-day they shewed themselves to the people, riding in a chariot, adorned with flowers, and drawn with oxen, (slow cartel, but good enough for so lazie luggage) whilst Charles Martell and Pipin, Maiors of the palace, opened packets, gave audience to Embassadors, made warre or peace, enacted and repealed Laws at pleasure, till afterwards from controllers of the Kings housshold they became controllers of the Kings, and at last Kings themselves.

To return to Egypt: Let none be troubled (pardon a charitable digression to satisfie some scrupulous in a point of Chronologie) if they find anciently more Kings of the Egyptians, and longer reigning then the consent of times will allow room for: for no doubt that which hath swelled the number, is the counting Deputies for Kings. Yea, we find the holy Spirit in the same breath,<sup>1. Reg. 22. 47.</sup> speake a Vice-roy to be a King and no King. *There was no King in Edom, a Deputy was King.*

73

Sir Walter  
Raleigh, part 1.  
book 2. chap.  
16.

Gen. 41. 40.

## Chap. 23.

*The lamentable death of King Full.*

When Fulco had now eleven years with much industrie and care (though with little enlarging of his dominions) governed the land, he was slain in earnest as following his sport in hunting, to the great grief of his subjects. And we may hear him thus speaking his Epitaph:

*A hare I hunted, and death hunted me;  
The more my speed was, was the worse my speed;*

AB MUNIUS  
TIBI  
ME LEBE  
in toto.

TYRIM, lib.  
15. cap. 11.

L For

74

*For as well-mounted I away did flee,*  
*Death caught and kill'd me, falling from my steed;*  
*Yet this mishap an happie misse I count,*  
*That fell from horse that I to heaven might mount.*

\* Lib. 14.  
cap. 1.

A Prince of a sweet nature, and though one would have read him to be very furious by his high-coloured countenance, yet his face was a good hypocrite; and (*contra leges istius coloris*, saith Tyrius) he was affable, courteous, and pitifull to all in distresse. He was buried with his predecessours in the temple of the Sepulchre, leaving two sonnes, Baldwin who was thirteen, and Almerick seven yeares old.

## Chap. 24.

*The disposition of Baldwin the third; The care of Queen Mlfesent in her sonnes minority.*

\* Tyrius, lib.  
16. cap. 2.

Baldwin succeeded his father, who quickly grew up, as to age, so in all roiall accomplishments, and became a most compleat Prince; well learned, especially in historie; liberal; very witty, and very pleafant in dicouirle: He would often give a smart jest, which would make the place both blush, and bleed where it lighted: Yet this was the better taken at his hands, because he cherisched not a cowardly wit in himself, to wound men behind their backs, but played on them freely to their faces; yea, and never refuled the coyn he payed them in, but would be contented (though a King) to be the subject of a good jest: and sometimes he was well-favouredly met with, as the best fencer in wits school hath now and then an unhappy blow dealt him: Some thought he defcended beneath himself in too much familiarity to his subjects, for he would commonly call and salute mean persons by their names: But the vulgar sort, in whose judgement the lowest starres are ever the greatest, conceived him to surpass all his predecessours, because he was so fellow-like with them.

But whilest yet he was in minoritie, his mother Mlfesent made up his want of age with her abundant care, being goverour of all. A woman in sex, but of a masculine spirit. She continued a widow, and as for childrens sake she married once, so for her childrens sake she married no more. S. Bernard and she spake often together by letters. He exolled her single life; How it was more honour to live a widow, then to be a Queen: \* This she had by birth, that by Gods bounty. This she was happily

Anno  
Dom.

1243

1154.

Anno  
Dom.

happily begotten, that she had manfully gotten of her self. Yet we find not that she made a vow never to marrie again; wherein she did the wifer: For the chasteſt minds cannot conclude from the present calm, that there will never after arise any lustfull storin in their souls. Besides, a Resolution is a free custodie, but a Vow is a kind of prison, which restrained nature hath the more desire to break.

75

## Chap. 25.

*Of Fulcher Patriarch of Jerusalem, and the insolencie of the Hospitallers against him.*

William, who was last possessed of the Patriarchs chair in Jerusalem, was none of the greatest clerks. But whatsoever he was for edifying of the Church, he was excellent at building of Castles (one at Askelon, another at Ramula, a third called Blank-guard for the securing of Pilgrimes) till at last having sat in his place fifteen years, he was translated to heaven, and on earth Fulcher Archbisshop of Tyre succeeded him. An honest old man, whose weak age was much moleſted with the pride and rebellion of the Hospitallers, who lately had procured from the Pope a plenary exemption from the Patriarch. This his Holinesſe did the more willingly grant, because hereby he made himself absolute master of all orders, pinning them on himself by an immediate dependance, and so bringing water to his mill by a streighter and nearer stream. But hereby the entireneſſe of Episcopall jurisdiction was much maimed and mangled, and every Covent was a castle of rebels, armed with priviledges to fight against their lawfull Dioceſan.

Now as these Hospitallers wronged the power of the Bishops, so did they rob the profit of poore Priests, refusing to pay any tithes of their Mannours, which contained many parishes (so that the Pastours who fed the flocks, were starved themselves, and having laboured all day in the vineyard, were at night sent supperleſſe to bed) the Hospitallers pleading that the Pope had freed them from these duties; as if an acquittance under the hand of his Holinesſe was ſufficient to discharge them from paying of tithes, a debt due to God. Other foul crimes they also were guilty of: as, out-braving the temple of the Sepulchre with their ſtately buildings; giving the Sacraments to, and receiving of excommunicate perſons; ringing their bells when their Patriarch preached, that his voice might not be heard;

L 2

76  
\* Tyrius, lib.  
18. cap. 3.

heard, shooting arrows into the Church to disturb him and the people in Divine Service; A bundle whereof were hung up as a monument of their impiety.

Fulcher the Patriarch crawled to Rome, being an hundred yeares old, to complain of these misdemeanours, carrying with him the Archbishop of Tyre, and five other Bishops. But he had sped better, if in stead of every one of them he had carried a bag of gold. For the Hospitallers prevented him, and had formerly been effectually present with their large bribes, so that the Patriarchs suit was very cold: And no wonder, seeing he did afford no fewell to heat it. The Cardinals eyes in the Court of Rome were old and dimme; and therefore the glasse wherein they see any thing must be well-silvered. Indeed two of them, Octavian, and John of S. Martin, favoured Christs cause and his Ministers, but all the rest followed gifts, and the way of Balaam the sonne of Bosor. But here Baroniis, who hitherto had leaned on Tyrius his authority, now starteth from it: And no wonder, for his men will seldome cast ink when he meeteth with the corruption of the Romish Court. But sure it was, that the good Patriarch wearied with delays, returned back with his grievances undressed. Whereupon the Hospitallers grew more insolent; and under pretense of being freed from fetters, would wear no girdle, denying not only subjection, but any filiall obedience to a Superior.

\* Alii omnes  
absunt, post  
munera, fecun-  
ti sunt vias  
Balaam filii  
Bosor, Tyrius.  
lib. 18. c. 8.  
• Annual. Ec-  
clesie in annis  
1155.

## Chap. 26.

*Of Almericus Patriarch of Antioch his insti-  
tuting of Carmelites; Their differing from the  
pattern of Elias.*

1142.

After the tragical life and death of Rodolphus Patriarch of Antioch, who was twelve years Patriarch, counting his banishment; Haymericus by the contrary faction and power of Prince Reitmund succeeded him, with little quiet and comfort of his place.

And here to our grief must we take our finall farewell of the distinct succession of the Patriarchs of Antioch, with the yeares that they sat; such is the obscurity and confusion in it. Yet no doubt this Haymericus was the same with Almericus, who about the yeare 1160 first instituted the order of Carmelites. Indeed formerly they lived dispersed about the mountaine of Carmel: but he gathered them together into one house; because foli-

\* compare Ba-  
ronius with  
himself in  
these years,  
1143, 1144,  
1145, and me-  
shall find Hay-  
mericus and  
Almericus the  
same.

Anno  
Dom.  
1156.

Anno solitariness is a trespass against the nature of man, and God when he had made all things good, law it was not good for man to be alone.

Surely from great antiquite in the Primitive Church, many retired themselves to solitary places (where they were always alone, and awayes in the company of good thoughts) chiefly to shad themselves from the heat of persecution. Whose example was in after-ages imitated by others, when there was no such necessite: As here by these Carmelites, whose order was afterwards perfected in the yeare 1216, by Albert Patriarch of Jerusalem, with certain Canonical observations imposed upon them. And in this next age, these bees which first bred in the ground and hollow trees, got them hives in gardens, and leav- ing the deserts, gained them princely houes in pleasaunce places. They pretended indeed that they followed the pattern of Elias, though farre enough from his example: First, for their habit; they wore white coats guarded with red streaks: but they have no colour in the Bible that Elias ever wore such a livery; it suits rather with Ioseph then with him. Secondly, by their order they were to ride on he-asles; whereas we reade that Elias went on foot, and rode but once in a chariot of fire. Thirdly, they by the constitution of Pope Nicolas the fifth, had sisters of their company living near unto them; we find Elias to have no such feminine comforts. Fourthly, they lived in all lust and lazynesse, as Nicolas Gallus their own Generall did complain, that they were Sodomites, and compareth them to the tail of the Dragon: so that their luxury differed from Elias his austerity, as much as velvet from sackcloth. Wherefore that the Carmelites came from mount Carmel cannot be denied: But on that mountain I find that both Elias and Baals priests gathered together, and let the indifferent Reader judge which of them their lives do most ressemble.

Afterwards Pope Honoriis the third, counting the party-coloured coats these Carmelites did wear to be too gaudie, caused them to wear onely white, the colour which nature doth die, simple, and therefore fittest for religion. But Melexala King of Egypt, who formerly was very bountifull to the Carmelites, knew not his Alms-men in their new coats, but changed his love, as they their livery, and persecuted them out of all Egypt. It seemeth afterwards, by the complaint of Mantuan, that they wore some black again over their white: For he playeth on them, as if their bad manners had blacked and altered their clothes.

Now though Palestine was their mother, England was their best nurse. Ralph Fresburg, about the yeare 1240, first brought them hither, and they were first seated at Newenden

77

Poly. Virg.  
lib. 1. cap. 3.  
Sabel. Em. 9.  
lib. 5.  
Helipl. De  
orig. mon.

\* Baroniis,  
lib. 20. cap. 5.

\* Balaam, in  
vita Nicol. 5.

\* Vide Bala-  
um, centur. 4.  
cap. 42. in ap-  
pend.

\* Elog. 2.  
immuratur  
muniti velle-  
ra mores.

78  
• Yet Camden  
saith they  
were fift  
feasted in  
Northum-  
berland.  
• Piscator in  
indice Garm:

in \* Kent. An \* hundred and fourty English writers have been of this order. And here they flourished in great pomp, till at last King Henry the eighth, as they came out of the wildernes, so turned their houses into a wildernes; not onely breaking the necks of all the Abbeys in England, but also scattering abroad their very bones, past possibility of recounting them.

Anno  
Dom.

## Chap. 27.

*Edessa lost; The hopefull voyage of Conrade the Emperour and Lewis King of France to the Holy land, blasted by the perfidiousnesse of Emmanuel the Grecian Emperour.*

Empires have their set bounds, whither when they come, they stand still, go back, fall down: This we may see in the kingdome of Jerusalem, which under Godfrey and the two first Baldwines was a gainer, under Fulk a saver, under the succeeding Kings a constant losse till all was gone. For now Sanguin Prince of the Turks (as bloudy as his name) wrested from the Christians the countrey and citie of Edessa, one of the fourte Tetrarchies of the kingdome of Jerusalem. And though Sanguin shortly after was stabb'd at a feast, yet Noradine his sonne succeeded, and exceeded him in cruelty against the Christians.

The losse of Edessa (wherein \* our religion had flourished ever since the Apostles time) moved Conrade Emperour of the West, and Lewis the seventh surnamed the Young, King of France, to undertake a voyage to the Holy land. Pope Eugenius the third bestrifffed himself in the matter, and made S. Bernard his solicitor to advance the designe. For never could so much steel have been drawn into the East, had not this good mans perswasion been the loadstone. The Emperours armie contained two hundred thousand foot, besides fiftie thousand horse: Nor was the army of King Lewis much inferiour in number. In France they sent a \* distaff and a spindle to all those able men that went not with them, as upbraiding their effeminateesse: And no wonder, when women themselves went in armour, (having a brave lass like another Penthesilea for their leader, so befringed with gold, that they called her \* Golden-foot) riding astride like men; which I should count more strange, but that I find all women in England in the same posture on their horses, till \* Anna, wife to King Richard the second, some 200 years since, taught them

1147.

\* Christiano  
nomini à  
temporibus  
Apololorum  
devota, Ty-  
tium, lib. 16.  
cap. 5.

\* P. Amyntin  
Ludov. 7.

\* Nicetas, in  
Emm. Conn.  
Xpouères.  
\* Camb. Brit.  
in Survey.

Anno  
Dom.

them a more modest behaviour. The Turks did quake hearing of these preparations, which to them were reported farre greater then they were; fame (contrary to all other painters) making those things the greatest which are presented the farthest off.

79

Conrade with his armie took his way through Grecia: where Emmanuel the Emperour, possessed with an hereditarie fear of the Latines, fortified his cities in the way, as knowing there needed strong banks where such a stream of people was to passe. And suspecting that if these Pilgrimes often made his Empire their high-way into Palestine, little grasse would grow in so troden a path; and his countrey thereby be much endamaged; he used them most treacherously, giving them bad welcome, that he might no more have such guests. To increase their miseries, as the Dutch encamped by the river \* Melas (if that may be called a river which is all mud in summer, all sea in winter) deserving his name from this black and dismal accident, it drowned many with its sudden over-flowings; as if it had conspired with the Grecians, and learned treachery from them. They that survived this sudden mishap, were reserved for lingring miserie. For the Grecian Emperour did them all possible mischief, by mingling lime with their meal, by killing of stragglers, by holding intelligence with the Turks their enemies, by corrupting his coin, making his silver as base as himself (so that the Dutch sold good wares for bad money, and bought bad wares with good money) by giving them false Conductours which traided them into danger; so that there was more fear of the guides then of the way. All which his unfaithfull dealings are recorded by that faithfull Historian \* Nicetas Choniates: who though a Grecian born, affirmeth these things; the truth of his love to his countrey-men no whit prejudicing his love to the truth.

\* Nicetas, ut  
prius.

\* In vita  
Manuel.  
Conn. lib. 1.  
S. 5. p. 100.

Chap. 28.  
*The Turks conquered at Meander; The Dutch  
and French arrive in Palestine.*

Scarce had the Dutch escaped the treachery of the Greeks, when they were encountered with the hostilitie of the Turks, who waited for them on the other side of Meander. The river was not foordable; ship or bridge the Christians had none: when behold Conrade the Emperour adventured on an action, which because it was successfull, shall be accounted valiant; otherwise

we

80

- \* Knobels, Turk. hist. pag. 33.
- \* Nicetas, in Man. Comn. lib. I. S. 6.
- \* Liv. lib. 2.

\* Münft. Ces.  
mogr. lib. 2.  
pag. 227.

\* *Serres,*  
(translated by  
Grimston) in  
*vita Ludov.7*  
Dr. P. Amy.  
lives in ejus-  
dem villa.

we should term it desperate. After an exhortation to his army, he commanded them all at once to flownce into the river. Meander was plunged by their plunging into it: his water stood amazed, as unresolved whether to retreat to the fountain, or proceed to the sea; and in this extase afforded them a dry passage over the stream. An act, which like that of Horatius Cocles his leaping into Tiber, *\* plus fama ad posteros habiturum quam fidei*, will find more admirers then believers with posterity. The affrighted Turks on the other side, thinking there was no contending with them that did teach nature it self obedience, offered their throats to the Christians swords, and were killed in such number, that whole piles of dead bones remain there for a monument: like those heaps of the Cimbrians slain by Marius near Marsfeils, where afterwards the inhabitants walled their vineyards with skulls, and guarded their grapes with dead men. Hence Conrade made forward to Iconium, now called Cogni, which he besieged in vain, to the great losse of his army.

The King of France followed after with great multitudes, and drank of the same cup at the Grecians hands, though not so deeply: till at last, finding that those who marched through the continent met with an ocean of miserie, he thought better to trust the wind and sea then the Greeks: and taking shipping safely arrived in Palestine, where he was highly welcomed by Reinmund Prince of Antioch. Some weeks were spent in complying, entertainments, and visiting holy places, till at last, Eleanor wife to the King of France, who accompanied her husband, made religion her pander, and played \* bankrupt of her honour, under pretense of pilgrimage keeping company with a base Saracen jester, whom she preferred before a King. Thus love may blindfold the eyes, but lust bore them out. Yea, now she pleaded that she might be no longer wife to the King, because she was too near unto him within the degrees forbidden: This new-started scruple never troubled her before: but some have flues in their consciences, and can keep them open or shut them as occasion requireth.

Book II. the *Holy Warre*. K. Baldwin 3. Chap. 29.

*Damascus besieged in vain; The return of the  
Emperour and King, with the censure on this  
voyage.*

1148. **T**He late-come Pilgrimes having sufficiently recreatid themselves, the Emperour and the King of France concluded to besiege Damacus : for a small town was conceived too narrow an object of their valour, whilst so eminent an action was adequate to the undertakers. Damacus is so pleasent a citie, that Mahomet durst never enter into it, lest this deceiver should be deceived himself, and be so ravished with the pleasures of the place, that he should forget to go on in that great work he had in hand. Some make Eliezer Abrahams steward builder of this citie, because he is called Eliezer of Damacus ; though that phraze speaketh him rather to have had his birth or dwelling there, then the citie her building from him. To passe this by, because as the foundations are hidden in the ground, so the founders of most ancient places are forgotten. It was for many yeare after the Metropolis of Syria, and was now straitly besieged by the Christians with great hope of successfe, had they not afterwards fallen out amongst themselves who should eat the chickens before they were hatched. Conrade and King Lewis destind the citie to Theodorick Earl of Flanders, lately arrived in those parts ; whilst other Princes which had been long resident in Palestine, and born the heat of the warre, grudged hereat : and their stomachs could not digest the crudite of a raw upstart to be preferred before them. Yea, some of the Christians corrupted with Turkish money ( though when they received it, it proved but \* gilded brasfe ; may all traytours be payed in such coin ) perswaded the King of France to remove his camp to a stronger part of the walls : which they long besieged in vain, and returned home at last, leaving the citie and their honours behind them.

The French proverb was verified of this voyage; *Much bruis and little fruit.* They not only did no good in the Holy land (\* save that some think their coming advantaged King Baldwin for the taking of the city of Askelon) but also did much harm. For now the Turks seeing one city both bear the brunt and batter the strength of both armies, began to conceive that their own fear was their greatest enemy; and those swords of these new Pilgrims which they dreaded in the sheath, they slighted when they saw them drawn; and shook off that aw-

\*Theodor. Nicæ, De privilegiis Imperii, cap. de Conrado.

• SebeNnich

82

which had formerly possessed them, of the strength of the Western Emperour. Many thousand Christians perished in this adventure, whose souls are pronounced by all the Writers of this age to be carried up into heaven on the wings of the holy cause they died for: Whose blessed estate I will not disprove; nor will I listen to the unhappy Dutch Proverb, \* *He that bringeth himself into needless dangers, dieth the devils martyr.*

\* Cited by  
Luther, on  
Cap. 3.

We must not forget how the French King coming homeward was taken prisoner by the fleet of the Grecian Emperour, and rescued again by Gregory Admirall to Roger King of Sicily. When he was safely arrived in France, in open Parliament his wife was divorced from him. Her nearness in blood was the only cause specified; and the King took no notice of her inconstancie, accounting those but foolish husbands who needlessly proclaim their wives dishonesty. He gave her back again all the lands in France which he had received with her in portion, scorning her wealth which neglegeth his love. Herein he did nobly, but not politickly, to part with the Dukedomes of Poictou and Aquitain, which he enjoyed in her right: for he brake his own garland by giving her her flowers back again; mangled and dismembered his own kingdome, and gave a \* torch into Henry King of England his hands (who afterwards married her) to set France on fire.

\* Serves,  
in Ludov. 9.

## Chap. 30.

*An apology for S. Bernard, whom the vulgar sort condemned for the murtherer of those that went this voyage.*

**S**lander (quicker then Martiell Law) arraigneth, condemneth, and executeth all in an instant. This we may see in poore S. Bernard, who was the mark for every mans tongue to shoot arrows against: and when this voyage had miscarried, many\* condemned him, because his perswasion set this project not only on foot but on wings; as if he had thrust so many men, as one mortifer, into the jaws of death.

But much may be alledged truly to excuse this good man:

First, he was but an instrument employed by Pope Eugenius and a \* Provinciall Council of French Bishops to forward the designe. Rather then should they have blamed his Holiness who set him on work. But the saddle oftentimes is not set on the right horse, because his back is too high to be reached; and

Anna  
Dom.  
viii

we see commonly that the instruments are made skreens to save the face of the principall from scorching.

Secondly, the true cause of the ill successe was the vitioufness of the undertakers. For Germany at this time surfeited of lewd people; and those grew the fattest which lived on the high-ways. But this voyage robbed the whole countrey of her \* theives; and then no wonder if they found their death in Asia, who deserved it in Europe. Heare what \* Otho Frisigenis, who went this voyage, speaketh impartially in the matter: " If we shold say that Bernard that holy Abbot was inspired by Gods Spirit to incite us to this warre, but we through our pride and wantonnesse not observing his holy commands deservedly brought on our selves the losse of our goods and lives, we shold say nothing but what is agreeable to reason and to ancient examples. However, it was an heavie affliction to S. Bernards aged back to bear the reproch of many people: it being a great grief for one to be generally condemned as guilty, for want of proof of his innocencie. And though God set his hand to S. Bernards testimoniall by the many \* miracles which that Father wrought, yet still some challenged him for a counterfeit.

And surely this humiliation was both wholesome and necessary for him. For the people, who cannot love without doting, nor approve without admiring, were too much transported with an high opinion of this man and his directions; as if that arrow could not misse the mark which came out of S. Bernards bow. Wherefore this miscarriage came very seasonably to abate their over-towring conceits of him; and perchance his own of himself. And no doubt he made a good use of this bad accident. The lese his fame blazed, the more his devotion burned; and the cutting off of his top made him take deep root, and to be made more truly humbled and sanctified. In his book of \* Consideration he maketh a modest defense of himself; whither we referre the Reader. To conclude; The devotion of this man was out of question so neglecting this world, that he even did spit out that preferment which was dropped into his mouth: But as for his judgement, it was not alwayes the best; which gave occasion to the Proverb, *Bernardus non vidit omnia.*

83

\* Germania  
tunc latrociniis  
frequens  
purgabatur  
eo genere ho-  
minum,  
Kyant. 6.  
Sax. cap. 13.  
\* In vita  
Fred. lib. 1.  
cap. 6. in fine.

\* Goffrid. ut  
princeps.

\* Lib. 2. cap. 1.

\* Baron. ar-  
nal. Eccl. in  
anno 1140.  
Insulens ope-  
riti sibi com-  
missio ab Eu-  
genio.

84.

## Chap. 31.

*Unseasonable discords betwixt King Baldwine  
and his mother; Her strength in yielding to  
her sonne.*

\* *Tyrius, lib.  
17. cap. 13.*

**U**pon the departure of Emperour Conrade and King Lewis, Noradine the Turk much prevailed in Palestine. Nor was he little advantaged by the discords betwixt Millefent Queen-mother and the Nobilitie; thus occasioned: There was a Noble-man called Manafes, whom the Queen (governing all in her sonnes minority) made Constable of the Kingdome. This man, unable to manage his own happiness, grew so insolent that he could not go, but either spurning his equals, or trampling on his inferiors. No wonder then, if envie the shadow of greatness waited upon him. The \*Nobility highly distasted him: but in all oppositions the Queens favour was his Sanctuary, who to shew her own absoluteness, and that her affection should not be controlled, nor that thrown down which she set up, still preferred the creature she had made.

His enemies perceiving him so fast rooted in her favour, and seeing they could not remove him from his foundation, fought to remove him with his foundation, instigating young King Baldwine against his mother, and especially against her favourite. They complained how the State groaned under his insolencie; He was the bridge by which all offices must passe, and there pay toll; He alone sifted all matters, and then no wonder if much bran passed; He under pretense of opening the Queens eyes did lead her by the nose, captiviting her judgement in stead of directing it; He like a by-gulf devoured her affection, which should flow to her children. They perswaded the King he was ripe for government, and needed none to hold his hand to hold the sceptre. Let him therefore either untie or cut himself loose from this slaverie, and not to be in subjection to a subject.

Libertie needeth no hard pressing on youth, a touch on that stamp maketh an impression on that waxen age. Young Baldwine is apprehensive of this motion, and prosecuteth the matter so eagerly, that at length he coopteth up this Manafes in a castle, and forceth him to abjure the Kingdome. Much stirre afterwards was betwixt him and his mother, till at last to end divisions, the Kingdome was divided betwixt them: She had the citie of Jerusalem, and the land-locked part; he the maritime half of the land. But the widest throne is too narrow for two to

Anno  
Dom.  
1149.

1149.

fit on together. He not content with this partition, marcheth furiously to Jerusalem, there to besiege his mother, and take all from her. Out of the citie cometh \* Fulcher the good Patriarch, (his age was a patent for his boldnesse) and freely reproveth the King: Why should he go on in such an action wherein every step he stirred, his legs must needs grate and crash both against nature and religion? Did he thus require his mothers care in stewarding the State, thus to affright her age, to take arms against her? Was it not her goodnesse to be content with a moyetie, when the whole Kingdome in right belonged unto her?

But ambition had so enchanted Baldwine, that he was penetrable with no reasons which crossed his desigines: so that by the advice of her friends she was content to reigne up all, left the Christian caufe should suffer in these dissensions. She retired herself to \*Sebastie, and abridged her train from State to necessity. And now the leesse room she had to build upon, the higher she raised her soul with heavenly meditations, and lived as more private, so more pious till the day of her death.

85

\* *Tyrius, lib.  
17. cap. 14.*

\* *Idem, ibi-  
dem.*

## Chap. 32.

*Reimund Prince of Antioch overcome and killed;  
Askelon taken by the Christians; The death  
of King Baldwine.*

**T**hese discords betwixt mother and sonne were harmonic in the eares of Noradine the Turk: Who coming with a great army wasted all about Antioch; and Prince Reimund going out to bid him battel, was slain himself, and his army ouerthrown: not long after Joceline Count of Edeffa was intercepted by the Turks, and taken prisoner.

As for Constantia the relict of Reimund Prince of Antioch, she lived a good while a widow, refusing the affections which many princely suiters proffered unto her, till at last she descended beneath her self to marrie a plain man, Reinold of Castile. Yet why should we say so, when as a Caftlian Gentleman (if that not a needless tautologie) as he maketh the inventor of his own worth, prizeth himself any Princes fellow: And the Proverb is, *Each lay-man of Caftile may make a King, each clerke-man a Pope?* Yea, we had best take heed how we speak against this match: for Almericus Patriarch of Antioch for inveighing against it, was by this Prince Reinold set in the heat of the funne, with his \* bare head besmeared with hony (a sweet-bitter

1153.

\* *Tyrius, lib.  
18. cap. 1.*

86

bitter torment) that so bees might sting him to death. But King Baldwin mediated for him, and obtained his libertie that he might come to Jerusalem: where he lived many years in good esteem. And Gods judgements are said to have overtaken the Prince of Antioch: for besides the famine which followed in his country, he himself afterwards fighting unfortunately with the Turks, was taken prisoner.

But let us step over to Jerusalem; where we shall find King Baldwin making preparation for the siege of Askelon: Which citie after it had long been blocked up, had at last an assualtable breach made in the walls thereof. The Templars (to whom the King promised the spoil if they took it) entred through this breach into the citie: and conceiving they had now to wield the work and master the place, set a guard at the breach, that no more of their fellow-Chritians should come in to be sharers with them in the bootie. But their \* covetousnesse cost them their lives: for the Turks contemning their few number, put them every one to the sword. Yet at last the citie was taken, though with much difficulty.

Other considerable victories Baldwin got of the Turks; especially one at the river Jordan, where he vanquished Noradine: And twice he relieved Cesarea-Philippi, which the Turks had straitly besieged. But death at last put a period to his earthly happiness, being poisoned (as it was supposed) by a Jewish Physician; for the rest of the potion killed a dog to whom it was given. This Kings youth was stained with unnatural discords with his mother, and other vices, which in his settled age he reformed. Let the witness of Noradine his enemie be believed; who honourably refused to invade the Kingdome, whilst the funeral solemnities of Baldwin were performing; and professed the Christians had a just caufe of sorrow, \* having lost such a King, whose equal for justice and valour the world did not afford. He died without issue, having reigned one and twenty years. So that sure it is the Printers mistake in Tyrius, where he hath four and twenty yeares assigned him, more then the content of time will allow.

\* *Tyrius, lib. 17. cap. 27.*

\* *Tyrius, lib. 19. cap. 34.*

### Chap. 33. King Almerick his disposition.

A lmerick brother to King Baldwin, Earl of Joppa and Askelon, succeeded to the Crown. But before his coronation he was enjoyed by the Popes Legate and by the Patriarch of Jerusalem

Anno  
Dom.  
Dom.

1154  
Aug.  
12.

1163

1163  
Febr.  
18.

87

Jerusalem, to dismiss Agnes his wife daughter to Joceline the younger, Count of Edessa, because she was his cousin in the fourth degree; with this reservation, that the two children he had by her, Baldwin and Sibyll, should be accounted legitimate, and capable of their fathers possessions. A Prince of excellent parts; of a most happy\* memorie, (wherein also his brother Baldwin was eminent, though Fulk their father was wonderfully forgetfull; so true is the maxime, *Pure personalia non propagantur*, Parents entail neither their personall defects nor perfections on their posterity) solid judgement, quick apprehension; but of a bad utterance, which made him use words only as a shield when he was urged and pressed to speak, otherwise he preferred to be silent, and declined popularitie more then his brother Baldwin affected it. Very thrifty he was; and though \* Tully saith, *Dici hominem frugi non multum habet laudis in rege*, yet moderate frugalitie is both laudable and necessarie in a King. But our Almerick went somewhat too farre, and was a little poore in admiring of riches, laying great taxations on the holy places to their utter impoverishing: Yet was he not mastered by his purse, but made it his vassall, and spared no money on a just occasion. He never received accusation against any of his Officers, and never reckoned with them ( count it as you please, carelessness or noble confidence) because he would not teach them to be dishonest by suspecting them. Nor is it the last and least part of his praise, that William Archbishop of Tyre (so often mentioned) wrote the Holy Warre at his instance. Once he angered the good Archbishop with this question, \* How the resurrection of the bodie may be proved by reason? Hereat the good Prelate was much displeased, as counting it a dangerous question wherewith one removeth a foundation-stone in Divinitie, though with intent to lay it in the place again. But the King presently protested, That he demanded it not out of any diffidence in himself about that article, but in case one should meet with a sturdie man, who (as too many now-a-dayes) would not trust faith on her single bond, except he have reason joyned for security with her. Hereupon the Archbishop alledged many strong arguments to prove it, and both rested well satisfied.

*Tyrius, lib. 19. cap. 2.*

\* *In Oret. pro Declarato.*

\* *Tyrius, lib. 19. cap. 3.*

- 88 -

Chap. 34.

*Ecclesiastical busynesse; A Sultan of Iconium,  
and the master of the Assassins desired to be  
christened; The Common-wealth of the Assas-  
sines described.*

**I**n the Church of Jerusalem we find Amalrick still Patriarch: A Frenchman born, but little fit for the place to which he was preferred by the favour of Sibyll, Countesse of Flanders, the Kings sister. Meantime the Church needed a Salick Law, to forbid diaffasts to meddle with mitres; and neither to be, nor to make Patriarchs.

But the most remarkable Church-matter in this Kings reigne, was the clandestine christening of a Sultan of Iconium. And more of his Courtiers might have followed him, but that his Embassadors being at Rome, were offended there with the vitioufness of Christians lives; which made them to exclaim, \* How can fresh and salt water flow from the same fountain? This hath made many Pagans step back, which had one foot in our Church, when they have seen Christians beleive so well, and live so ill, breaking the Commandments against the Creed.

Not long after, the great master of the Assassins was really disposed to receive our religion, and to this end sent an Embassador to King Almerick, which Embassador was treacherously slain by one of the Templars. The King demanded this murderer of the Master of the Templars, that justice might pass upon him. But the Master proudly answered, That he had already enjoynd him penance, and had directed to send him to the Pope, but stoutly refused to surrender him to the King. This cruel murder embittered the Assassins more desperately against the Christians.

the Christians. These Assassins were a precise sect of Mahometans, and had in them the very spirits of that poisonous superstition. They had some six cities, and were about fourtie thousand, in number, living near Anteradus in Syria. Over these was a chief Master, (Hell it self cannot subsit without a Beelzebub,) so much order there is in the place of confusion,) whom they called *\* The Old man of the Mountains.* At his command they would refuse no pain or peril, but stab any Prince whom he appointed out to death; scorning not to find hands for his tongue, to perform what he enjoyede. At this day there are none of them extant, (except revived by the Jesuites; for sure Ignatius Loyola, the

Ann  
Dom  
15

Book II. the *Holy Warre.* K. Almerick. Chap. 35.

*Anno  
Dom.  
1527.*  
the lame father of blind obedience fetched his plat-form hence )  
being all, as it seems, slain by the \* Tartarians, *Anno 1527.*  
But no tears need be shed at their funeralls : yea, pitie it is that  
any pitie should be lavished upon them, whose whole govern-  
ment was an engine built against humane societie, worthy to be  
fired by all men; the body of their State being a very monstro-  
sarie, and a grievance of mankind.

89  
M. Paris,  
ante ejus  
(continuator)  
anno 1257

Chap. 35.

*Dargan and Sanar two Egyptian Lords, contending about the Sultanie, Sanar calleth in the Turkey to help him. Of the danger of mercenarie souldiers; yet how well qualified, they may be serviceable.*

**E**gypt was the stage whereon the most remarkable passages in the reigne of King Almerick were acted. It will be necessary therefore to premise somewhat concerning the estate of that kingdom at this time. Whilst the Turks thus lorded it in Syria and the lesser Asia, the Saracen Caliph commanded in Egypt; under whom, two great Lords, Dargan and Sanar, fell out about the Sultanie or Vice-royship of that land. But Sanar fearing he should be worsted by Dargan, sued to Noradine King of the Turks at Damascus for aid: who sent him an army of Turks under the command of Syracon an experienced Captain, against Sultan Dargan. So Dargan and Sanar met and fought. The victory was Dargans, but he enjoyed it not long, being shortly after slain by treachery; whereby Sanar recovered the Sultans place. Meantime how strange was the voluptuous lethargie of the Caliph Elhadach, to pursue his private plăsures, whilst his Vice-roys thus fought under his nose, and employed forrein succours, yet he never regarded it, as if the tottering of his kingdome had rocked him fast asleep.

Nor was he moved with that which followed, and more nearly concerned him. For Syracon the Turkish Captain, whom Sanar had gotten to come into Egypt, would not be intreated to go home again; but seized on the city of Belbis, fortified it, and there attended the arrivall of more Turks from Damascus, for the conquest of Egypt. Which afterwards they performed, the land being never completely cleared of them, till at last

N they

90

they conquered the whole kingdome, partly under this Syracon, and wholly under Saladine his nephew.

And here my discourse (by the leave of the Reader) must a little fallay forth to treat of the danger of entertaining mercenary souldiers. They may perchance be called in with a whistle, but scarce cast out with a whip. If they be flugs, they indanger a State by their slothfulness, if spirited men, by their activitie; Cesar Borgia, Machiavils idol, whose practise he maketh the pattern of policie, faith, \* That he had rather be conquered with his own men, then be conquerour with an army of others; because he counted that conquest to be none at all.

Yet good physick may be made of poyson well corrected: They may sometimes be necessary evils; yea good and serviceable to defend a land, if thus qualified: First, if they have no command of castles, or place neare about the Princes person: for then they have a compendious way to treason, if they intend it. Secondly, if they be not entertained in too great numbers, but in such refracted degrees, that the natives may still have the predominancie: for a surfeite of forrein supplyes is a disease incurable. Thirdly, if the Prince who imployeth them, hath their wives, children, and estates in his own hands, which will be both a caution and pawn for their fidelity, and will also interest their affections more cordially in the cause. Lastly, if they be of the same religion with them, and fight against the enemie of the religion of both: for then they are not purely hirelings, but parties in part, and the cause doth at least mediately concern them. I beleeve that it will scarcely be shewn, that the Protestants have turned tails and betrayed them they came to assist.

We may observe, the Low-countrys have best thrived by setting this trade of journey-men-souldiers on work. Let them thank God and the good English: for if Francis Duke of Anjou with his Frenchmen had well succeeded, no doubt he would have spread his bread with their butter. Next them the Venetians have sped best: for they have the trick, when they find it equally dangerous to casheer their mercenary Generall, or to entertain him any longer, fairly to kill him; as they served \* Carmignola. England hath best thrived without them: under Gods protection we stand on our own legs. The last I find are an handful of Almains used against \* Kett in Norfolk in the dayes of King Edward the sixth. And let it be our prayers, That as for those hirelings which are to be last tried and lefft trusted, we never have want of their help, and never have too much of it.

\* Mach.  
Prince, cap.9.  
Se malle vinci  
ci suis armis  
quam alienis  
victorem esse.

\* Mach.  
Prince, cap.8.

\* Speed,  
Edward 6.

Anno  
Dom.

1166.

Aug.  
10.Aug.  
18.

Chap.

91

Chap. 36.

*Sanar imploreth the aid of King Almerick; A solemn agreement made betwixt them, and ratified by the magnificent Caliph.*

Sultan Sanar perceiving himself pressed and overlayed by these Turks, who with Syracon their Capraine refused to return, and of afflits turned invaders, borrowed the help of Almerick King of Jerusalem to avoid them out of Egypt. Whilst Almerick marched thither, an unfortunate battel was fought betwixt Boemund the third of that name Prince of Antioch, Reimund Count of Tripoli, Calaman Grecian governour of Cilicia, and Joceline the third the titular Count of Edesa, on the one side; and Noradine King of the Turks, on the other. The Turks got the victory, and these fourre Christian Princes were taken prisoners; and their army lost so much good bloud that day, that cast it into an irrecoverable consumption, and hastened the ruine of this kingdome. Noradine following his blow, wonne Cesarea-Philippi.

Neverthelesse Almerick went on effectually in Egypt, and for a time expulsed the Turks out of this land. But Syracon would not so quickly quit the countrey; but goeth to the Caliph of Babylon (who was oppofite to him of Egypt, each of them claiming as heir to Mahomet that false prophet, the sovereignite over all that were of the Saracen law) and offereth him his means for the extirpation of this schismatycall Caliph, and the reduction of all Egypt to the subjection of the Babylonian. The motion was joyfully entertained, and Syracon with a mighty power descendeth into Egypt.

Sanar affrighted hereat maketh new and larger proffers to King Almerick to stop this deluge of his enemies, and proffereth him a pension of fourty thouland ducats yearly for his behooffull assistance. But the King understanding that the Sultan (how much soever he took upon him) was subject to a higher Lord, would make no such bargain with him, but with the Caliph himself; and therefore sent his Embassadours, \* Hugh Earl of Cesarea, and a Knight-Templar, along with the Sultan to Galiph Elhadach then resident at Cairo. Arriving at his palace, they passed through dark paſſages well guarded with armed Ethiopians. Hence they were conducted into goodly open courts of such beauty and riches, that they could not retain the gravitie of Embassadours, but were enforced to admire the rarities they beheld. The farther they went, the greater the

\* Tyrius, lib.  
19. cap. 16.

\* Idem, cap.  
18.

92 state; till at last they were brought to the Caliphs own lodging. Where entring the prefence, the Sultan thrice prostrated himself to the ground before the curtain behind which the Caliph sat. Presently the traverse wrought with pearls was opened, and the Caliph himself discovered, sitting with great majestic on a throne of gold, having few of his most inward eunuchs about him.

The Sultan humbly kissed his masters feet, and briefly told him the cause of their coming, the danger wherein the land stood, the proffers he had made to King Almerick, desiring him now to ratifie them, and in demonstration thereof to give his hand to the Kings Embassadours. The Caliph demurred hereat, as counting such a gesture a diminution to his State; and at no hand would give him his bare hand, but gave it in his glove. To whom the resolute Earl of \* Cefarea, Sir, said he, Truth seeketh no holes to hide it self. Princes that will hold covenant must deal openly and nakedly: give us therefore your bare hand; we will make no bargain with your glove. He was loth to do it, but necessity (a more imperious Caliph then himself at this time) commanded it: and he did it at last, dismissing the Christian Embassadours with such gifts as testified his greatness.

According to this agreement King Almerick cordially profecuted his busynesse, improving his utmofth might to expell Syracon with his Turks out of Egypt; whom he bade battel, and got the day though he lost all his baggage: So that the conquest in a manner was divided; the Turks gaining the wealth, the Christians the honour of the victory. Following his blow, he pinned up the Turks afterward in the citie of Alexandria, and forced them to receive of him conditions of peace, and then returned himself with honour to Askelon.

## Chap. 37.

*Almerick against his promise invadeth Egypt;  
His perjury punished with the future ruine of  
the kingdome of Jerusalem; His death.*

When a Crown is the prize of the game, we must never expect fair play of the gamesters. King Almerick having looked on the beauty of the kingdome of Egypt, he longed for it: and now no longer to drive out the relicks of the Turks, but to get Egypt to himself: And the next yeare, againte the solemn

Anno  
Dom.  
1167.

Sept.  
21.

1168.

solemne league with the Caliph, invaded it with a great armie. He falsely pretended that the Caliph would make a private peace with Noradine King of the Turks; and hence created his quarrel. For he hath a barten brain, who cannot fit himself with an occasion, if he hath a desire to fall out. But Gilbert, master of the Hospitallers, chiefly stirred up the King to this warre, upon promise that the city and countrey of Pelusium, if conquered, should be given to his Order. The Templars were much against the designe (one of their Order was Embassadour at the ratifying of the peace) and with much zeal protested against it, as undertaken against oath and fidelity.

An oath being the highest appeal, perjurie must needs be an hainous sinne, whereby God is solemnly invited to be a witnessse of his own dishonour. And as bad is a God-mocking equivocation: For he that surpriseth truth with an ambush, is as bad an enemie as he that fightheath against her with a flat lie in open field. I know what is pleaded for King Almerick, namely, That Christians are not bound to keep faith with idolaters, the worshippers of a false god, as the Egyptian Caliph was on the matter. But open to wide a window, and it will be in vain to shut any doores. All contracts with Pagans may easily be voided, if this evasion be allowed. But what saith S. Hierome, "It matters not to whom, but by whom we swear. And God to acquit himself, knowing the Christians prosperite could not stand with his justice after their perjurie, frowned upon them. And from hence athourst date the constant ill successe of the Holy Warre. For though this Expedition sped well at the first, and Almerick wonne the citie of Belbis or Pelusium, yet see what a cloud of miseries ensued.

First, Noradine in his absence wasted and wonne places neare Antiochia at pleasure.

Secondly, \* Meller Prince of Armenia, a Christian, made a covenant with Noradine, and kept it most constantly, to the infestimble disadvantage of the King of Jerusalem. This act of Meller must be condemned, but withall Gods justice admired. Christians break their covenant with Saracens in Egypt, whilst other Christians, to punish them, make and keep covenant with Turks in Asia.

Thirdly, the Saracens grew good souldiers on a sudden: who were naked at first, and onely had bows; but now learned from the Christians to use all offensive and defensive weapons. Thus rade nations alwayes better themselves in fighting with a skilfull enemie. How good mark-men are the Irish now-a-dayes, which some seventy years ago, at the beginning of their rebellions, had three men to discharge a \* hand-gonne!

Fourthly, Almericks hopes of conquering Egypt were frustrated;

93

\* Non considerandum cui, sed per quem juraveris, Comment. 17. Ezch.

\* Centurist. Centur. 12. in Almerico.

\* Morison, in the description of Ireland, anno 1598.

94 strated; for after some victories he was driven out, and that whole kingdome conquered by Saladine (nephew to Syracon) who killed the Caliph with his horse-mace as he came to do him reverence, and made himself the absolute Turkifh King of Egypt. And presently after the death of Noradine, the Kingdome of the Turks at Damascus was by their consent bestowed upon him. Indeed Noradine left a sonne, Melexala, who commanded in part of his fathers dominions; but Saladine after his death got all for himself. Thus rising men shall still meet with more stairs to raise them; as those of falling, with stumbling-blocks to ruine them.

Mean time Jerufalem was a poore weather-beaten kingdome, bleak and open to the storm of enemies on all fides, having no covert or shelter of any good friend neare it, lying in the lions mouth, betwixt his upper and nether jaw; Damascus on the North, and Egypt on the South; two potent Turkish kingdome, united under a puissant Prince, Saladine. This made Almerick send for succours into Europe: for now few voluntaries came to this service; souldiers must be pressed with impunitie. Our Western Princes were prodigall of their pitie, but niggardly of their help: The heat of the warre in Palestine had cooled their desires to go thither: which made these Embassadors to return without supplies, having gone farre to fetch home nothing but discomfort and despair.

Lastly, King Almerick himself, wearied with whole volleys of miseries, ended his life of a bloody flux, having reigned eleven full years; and was buried with his predeceessours: Leaving two children, Baldwine and Sibyll, by Agnes his first wife: and by Mary his second wife (daughter to John Proto-Sebastus, a Grecian Prince) one daughter, Ifabell; married \* afterwards to Hemphred the third, Prince of Thorone.

\* Tyrius, lib.  
22. cap. 5.

## Chap. 38.

*Baldwine the fourth succeedeth; His education under William the reverend Archbischop of Tyre.*

Baldwine his sonne, the fourth of that name, succeeded his father: so like unto him, that we report the Reader to the character of King Almerick, and will spare the repeating his description. Only he differed in the temper of his body, being inclined to the leprosie called Elephantiasis, noysome to the patient,

1174.  
July  
15.

Anno  
Dom.  
1173.  
May.

patient, but not infectious to the company: not like King Uzziyah, but Naamans leprosie, which had it been contagious, no doubt the King of Affyria, when he went into the houle of Kimmon, would have chosen another supporter. Mean time the kingdome was as sick as the King; he of a leprosie, that of an incurable consumption:

This Baldwine had the benefit of excellent education under William Archbischop of Tyre, a pious man and excellent schollar, skilled in all the learned Orientall tonges, besides the Dutch, and French his native language, a moderate and faithfull Writer: For in the latter part of his Historie of the Holy War, his eye guided his hand, till at last the taking of the citie of Jerufalem to shook his hand, that his pen fell out, and he wrote no more. Treasurer he was of all the money contributed to the Holy Warre; Chancellour of this kingdome, employed in severall Embassies in the West; present at the Lateran Council, the Acts whereof he did record: \* Cardinal he might have been, but refused it: In a word, unhappy onely that he lived in that age, though that age was happy he lived in it.

\* Centurift.  
Centur. in E-  
pisopis.

## Chap. 39.

*The viciousnesse of Heraclius the Patriarch of Jerufalem; His Embassie to Henry the second, King of England, with the successe; The Manonites reconciled to the Romane Church.*

1181.

A fter the death of Almerick Patriarch of Jerufalem, Heraclius was by the Queen-mother Mary, second wife to King Almerick, for his handsomenesse preferred to be Patriarch. \* William Archbischop of Tyre was violent against his election on because of a prophete, That as Heraclius King of Persia wonne, so an Heraclius should lose the Crosse. But others excepted, that this exception was nothing worth: For let God give the man, and let the devil fet the name. As for those blind prophetes, they misse the truth ofter then hit it; so that no wise man will lean his belief on so slender a prop. But Heraclius had a worse name then his name, the bad report of his vitious life; keeping a Vintners wife, whom he maintained in all stacie like an Emprefse, and owned the children he had by her: Her name \* Papha de Rivera; and she was generally saluted, The Patriarchesse. His example infected the inferiour Clergie; whose

\* Beſoldas, De  
reg. Hiero:  
pag. 282.

\* Beſoldas,  
pag. 284.  
Patriarchis-  
ta, Marinus  
San. lib. 3.  
part. 6. cap. 24.

96

whose corruption was a sad presage of the ruine of the realm; For when Prelates the Seers, when once those eye-strings begin to break, the heart-strings hold not out long after.

In his time the Maronites were reconciled to the Romane Church. Their main error was the heresie of the Monothelites, touching one only will and action in Christ. For after that the heresie of Nestorius about two persons in our Saviour was detested in the Eastern Churches, some thought not themselves safe enough from the heresie of two persons, till they were fallen with the opposite extremity of one nature in Christ: violence making men reel from one extreme to another. The error once broched, found many embracers: As no opinion so monstrous, but if it hath had a mother, it will get a nurse. But now these Maronites renouncing their tenents, received the Catholick faith; though soon after, when Saladine had conquered their countrey, they relapsed to their old errors: wherein they continued till the late times of Pope Gregory the thirteenth, and Clement the eighth, when they again renewed their communion with the Romane Church. They live at this day on mount Libanus, not exceeding twelve thousand households, and pay to the great Turk for every one above twelve yeares old, \* seventeen sultanines by the yeare; and for every space of ground sixteen spanne square, one sultanine yearly; to keep themselves free from the mixture of Mahometanes. A sultanine is about seven shillings six pence of our money.

To return to Heraclius; Soon after he was sent Embassador to Henry the second, King of England, to crave his perfonall affiance in the Holy Warre, delivering unto him the Royall standard, with the keyes of our Saviours sepulchre, the tower of David, and the citie of Jerusalem, lent him by King Baldwine. King Henry was singled out for this service before other Princes, because the world justly reported him valiant, wife, rich, powerfull, and fortunate: And ( which was the maine hereby ) he might expiate his murder, and gather up again the innocent bloud which he had shed of Thomas Becket. Besides, Heraclius entituled our Henry to the Kingdome of Jerusalem, because Geoffrey Plantagenet his father was sonne ( some say, brother ) to Fulk, the fourth King of Jerusalem. But King Henry was too wise to bite at such bait, wherein was only the huske of title, without the kernel of profit. Yet he pretended he would go into Palestine; and got hereby a maffe of money towards his voyage: making every one, as well Clerk as Lay ( saving such as went ) to pay that yeare the tenth of all their revenues, moveables, and chattells, as well in gold as in silver. Of every citie in England he chose the richest men; as in London two hundred; in York an hundred, and so in proportion:

Anno  
Dom.

1182.

\* Poffevine,  
Apar. facr. in  
Maron.  
\* Briewood,  
Enquirites,  
cap. 25.

Anno  
Dom.

1183.

portion: and took the tenth of all their moveables, by the \* estimation of credible men who knew their estates; imprisoning those which refuted to pay, *sub eleemosyna titulo viuum rapaciter includens*, saith Walsingham. But now when he had filled his purse, all expected he should fulfill his promise, when all his voyage into Palestine turned into a journey into France.

Heraclius, whilst he stayed in England, consecrated the Temple-church in the suburbs of London, and the house adjoyning belonging to the Templars; since turned to a better use, for the students of our municipall Law; these new Templars defending one Christian from another, as the old ones Christians from Pagans.

97  
\* Danielin  
Henry 2.

### Chap. 40.

*Saladine fitteth himself with forrein forces. The originall and great power of the Mammalukes, with their first service.*

IN the minoritie of King Baldwine, who was but thirteen yeares old, Milo de Planci a Noble-man was Proteftour of the Realm: Whose pride and infolence could not be brooked; and therefore he was stabbed at Ptolemais, and Reimund Count of Tripoli chosen to succeed him.

Now Saladine seriously intendeth to set on the Kingdome of Jerusalem, and seeketh to furnish himself with soldiars for that service. But he perceived that the ancient nation of the Egyptians had lasted so long, that now it ran dreggs; their spirits being as low as the country they lived in, and they fitter to make merchants and mechanicks then militarie men: For they were bred in such soft imployments, that they were presently foundred with any hard labour. Wherefore he sent to the Circassians by the lake of Meotis, neare Taurica Cherfoneus, and thence bought many slaves of able and active bodies. For it was a people born in a hard countrey ( no jewel for pleasure grew there, nor was brought thither ) and bred harder; so that warre was almost their nature, with custome of continual skirmishing with the neighbouring Tartars.

These slaves he trained up in military discipline, most of them being Christians once baptized, but afterwards untaught Christ, they learned Mahomer, and so became the worse foes to Religion for once being her friends. These proved excellent soldiars and speciall horsemen, and are called Mammalukes. And surely

O

\* Tyrius, lib.  
21. cap. 23.

surely the greatnesse of Saladine and his successours stood not so much on the legs of their native Egyptians, as it leaned on the staff of these strangers. Saladine, and especially the Turkish Kings after him, gave great power, and placed much trust in these \* Mammalukes : Who lived a long time in ignorance of their own strength, till at last they took notice of it, and scorning any longer to be factours for another, they would set up for themselves, and got the sovereigntie from the Turkish Kings. Thus Princes who make their subjects over-great, wher a knife for their own throats. And posterite may chance to see the insolent Janizaries give the grand Seignior such a trip on the heel as may tumble him on his back. But more largely of these Mammalukes usurping the kingdome of Egypt ( God willing) in its proper place.

Thus Saladine having furnished himself with new souldiers, went to handel their valour upon the Chriftians; invaded the Holy land, burning all the countrey before him, and raging in the bloud of poore Christians, till he came and encamped about Askelon.

Meantime whilst Reimund Count of Tripoli, Protectour of the Kingdome, with Philip Earl of Flanders, and the chief strength of the Kingdome were absent in Celosyria, wasting the countrey about Emissa and Cefarea, young King Baldwin lay close in Askelon, not daring to adventure on so strong an enemy. With whose fear Saladine encouraged, dispersed his army, some one way, some another, to forrage the countrey. King Baldwin courted with this opportunity, marched out privately, not having past four hundred horfe, with some few footmen, and assauited his secure enemies being six and twenty thousand. But victory standeth as little in the number of souldiers, as verity in the plurality of voyces. The Christians got the conquest, and in great triumph returned to Jerufalem.

This overthrow rather madded then daunted Saladine : Who therefore to recover his credit, some moneths after with his Mammalukes fell like a mighty tempeste upon the Christians, as they were parting the spoyl of a band of Turks, whom they had vanquished; put many to the sword, the rest to flight. Otto grand Master of the Templars, and Hugh sonne in law to the Count of Tripoli, were taken prisoners; and the King himself had much ado to escape. And thus both sides being well wearied with war, they were glad to refresh themselves with a short slumber of a truce solemnly concluded; and their troubled estates breathed almost for the space of two yeares. Which truce Saladine the more willingly embraced, because of a famine in the kingdome of Damacus, where it had scarce \* rained for five yeares together.

\* Centur. 12. in  
Baldwine 4.

Anno  
Dom.  
1176.

Nov.  
25.

1179.

\* Tyrius, lib.  
21. cap. 5.

*The fatall jealousies betwixt the King and Reinmund Earl of Tripoli.*

1181.

But this so welcome a calm was troubled with domesticall discords. For the Kings mother ( a woman of a turbulent spirit ) and her brother his steward, accused Reimund Count of Tripoli, governour of the Realm in the Kings minoritie, as if he affected the Crown for himself: which accusation this Earl could never wholly wipe off. For slender and lean flanders quickly consume themselves; but he that is branded with an hainous crime ( though false ) when the wound is cured, his credit will be killed with the scarre. Before we go further, let us view this Earl Reimunds disposition, and we shall find him marked to do mischief, and to ruine this Realm. He was sonne to Reimund, grandchild to Pontius Earl of Tripoli, by Cecilia the daughter of \* Philip King of France, great-grandchild to Bertram first Earl of Tripoli, great-great-grandchild to Reimund Earl of Holose, one of speciall note amongst the primitive adventureis in the Holy Warre. His mother was Hodiern, third daughter of Baldwin the second, King of Jerufalem. A man whose stomach was as high as his birth, and very serviceable to this State, whilst the sharpnesse of his parts were used against the Turks; which at last turned edge against the Christians: Proud, not able to digest the least wrong; and though long in captivity amongst the Turks, yet a very treuant in the school of affliction, who never learned the lesson of patience: So revengefull, that he would strike his enimie, though it were through the fides of Religion and the Christian caufe. For this present accusation of treason, good Authours seem to be his compurgators for this at this time, though afterwards he discovered his treacherous intents. And because he could not rise by his service, he made his service fall by him; and undid what he had done for the publick good, because thereby he could not attain his private ends. He commanded over the Earldome of Tripoli, which was a territorie of large extent, whereip he was absolute Lord. And by the way we may take notice of this as one of the banes of the Kingdome of Jerufalem, that the Principalities of Antioch, Tripoli, and Edeffa ( whilst it was Chriftian ) were branches of this Kingdome, but too big for the bodie: For the Princes thereof on each partie distafft would stand on their guard; as if they had been subjects out of courtesie, not conscience: and though they confessed they owed the King alle-

100

allegeance, yet they would pay no more then they thought fitting themselves.

To return to King Baldwin; This suspition of Earl Reimund, though at first but a buzz, soon got a sting in the Kings head, and he violently apprehended it. Whereupon Reimund coming to Jerusalem, was by the way commanded to stay, to his great disgrace. But some of the Nobilitie foreseeing what danger this discord might bring, reconciled them with much labour. However, Baldwin ever after looked on this Earl with a jealous eye. Jealousie, if it be fire in private persons, is wild-fire in Princes, who seldom rare out their names whom once they have written in their black bills. And as the Italian proverb is, *Suspicion giveth a pas-port to faith to set it on packing*; so this Earl finding himself suspected, was never after cordially loyall, smothering his treachery in this Kings life, which afterwards broke forth into an open flame.

### Chap. 42.

#### *Saladine is conquered by King Baldwin, and conquereth Mesopotamia; Discords about the Protectourship of Jerusalem; The death and praise of Baldwin the fourth.*

Centurie.  
Cent 12. in  
Baldwin 4.

**T**He kingdome of Damascus being recovered of the famine, Saladine having gotten his ends by the truce, would now have the truce to end; and breaking it (as not standing with his haughty designes) marched with a great armie out of Egypt through Palestine to Damascus, much spoiling the countrey. And now having joyned the Egyptian with the Damascene forces, re-entered the Holy Land. But young King Baldwin meeting him, though but with seven hundred to twenty thousand, at the village Frobolet, overthrew him in a great battel; and Saladine himself was glad with speedy flight to escape the danger, and by long marches to get him again to Damascus. Afterward he besieged Berytus both by sea and land; but the vigilancie and valour of King Baldwin defeated his taking of it.

Saladine finding such tough resistance in the Holy Land, thought to make a better purchase by laying out his time in Mesopotamia. Wherfore passing Euphrates, he wonne Charran, and divers other cities; and then returning, in Syria besieged Aleppo, the strongest place the Christians had in that countrey; fo

Anno  
Dom.

Anno  
Dom.

so fortified by nature, that he had little hope to force it. But treason will runne up the steepest ascent, where valour it self can scarce creep: and Saladine with the battery of bribes made such a breach in the loyaltie of the Governour, that he betrayed it unto him.

Thus he cometh again into the Holy Land more formidable than ever before, carrying an armie of terror in the mentioning of his name, which drove the poore Christians all into their fenced cities. As for King Baldwin, the leprosie had arrested him prisoner, and kept him at home. Long had this Kings spirit endured this infirmitie, swallowing many a bitter pang with a smiling face, and going upright with patient shoulders under the weight of his disease. It made him put all his might to it, because when he yeelded to his sicknesse, he must leave off the managing of the State; and he was loth to put off his roiall robes before he went to bed, a Crown being too good a companion for one to part with willingly. But at last he was made to stoop, and retired himself to a private life, appointing Baldwin his nephew (a child of five years old) his successour; and Guy Earl of Joppa and Askelon, this childs father in law, to be Protectour of the Realm in his minority.

But soon after he revoked this latter act, and designed Reimund Earl of Tripoli for the Protectour. He displaced Guy, because he found him of no over-weight worth, scarce passable without favourable allowance, little feared of his foes, and as little loved of his friends. The more martiall Christians slighted him as a slug, and neglected so lazie a Leader that could not keep pace with those that were to follow him: Yea, they refused (whilest he was Protectour) at his command to fight with Saladine; and our of distaste to their General, suffered their enemie freely to forrage; which was never done before: For the Christians never met any Turks wandering in the Holy Land, but on even terms they would examine their passe-port how sufficient it was, and bid them batte.

Guy stormed at his displacing, and though little valiant, yet very fullen, left the Court in discontent, went home, and fortified his cities of Joppa and Askelon. What should King Baldwin do in this case? Whom should he make Protectour? Guy had too little, Reimund too much spirit for the place. He feared Guy's cowardinesse, lest he should lose the kingdome to the Turks; and Reimunds treachery, lest he should get it for himself. Thus anguish of mind and weaknesse of body (a doughtie conquest for their united strengths, which single might suffice) ended this Kings dayes, dying young at five and twentie years of age. But if by the morning we may guesse at the day, he would have been no whit inferiour to any of his predecessors;

101

102 fours; especially if his bodie had been able: but (alas!) it spoilt the musick of his soul, that the instrument was quite out of tune. He reigned twelve yeares, and was buried in the Temple of the Sepulchre: a King happy in this, that he died before the death of his Kingdome.

Anno  
Dom.  
1185;  
May  
16.

## Chap. 43.

*The short life, and wofull death of Baldwin the fifth an infant. Guy his father in law succeedeth him.*

*Camd. Brit. in  
the descript. of  
the county of  
Dublin.*

Ifa. 3. 4.

*cosmog. lib.  
in terra sancta.*

\* *Tyrius, lib.  
22. cap. 25.  
et 27. calleb  
him hominem  
indiscerum &  
penitus iauit-  
lem.*

IT is a rare happinesse of the family of S. Laurence, Barons of Hoath in Ireland, that the heirs for foure hundred yeares together alwayes have been of age before the death of their fathers: For Minors have not onely baned families, but ruined realms. It is one of Gods threatnings; *I will give children to be their Princes, and babes shall rule over them.* With this rod God strook the Kingdome of Jerusalem thrice in fourtie years; Baldwin the third, fourth, and fifth, being all under age, and this last but five yeares old. He was the posthumus sonne of William Marquess of Monferrat, by Sibyll his wife, sister to Baldwin the fourth, daughter to King Almerick: She afterwards was married to Guy Earl of Joppa and Askelon.

Now Reimund Earl of Tripoli challenged to be Protectour of this young King, by the vertue of an Act of the former King so assigning him. But Sibyll mother to this infant, to defeat Reimund, first murdered all natural affection in her self, and then by poysen murdered her sonne; that so the Crown in her right might come to her husband Guy. This Baldwin reigned eight moneths; eight dayes, faith mistaken Munster: and some mistake more, who make him not to reigne at all; cruell to wrong his memory of his honour, whom his mother had robbed both of his life and Kingdome.

His death was concealed, till Guy his father in law had obtained by large bribes to the Templars and Heraclius the Patriarch, to be crowned King: One more ennobled with his descent from the ancient family of the Lusignans in Poictou, then for any \* eminencie in himself: His gifts were better then his endowments. Yet had he been more fortunate, he would have been accounted more virtuous; men commonly censuring that the fault of the King which is the fate of the Kingdome.

1185;

Anno  
Dom.  
1185;

dome. And now the Christian affaers here posted to their wofull period, being spurred on by the discords of the Princes.

103

## Chap. 44.

*Church-affaers : Of Haymericus Patriarch of  
Antioch; Of the Grecian Anti-patriarchs;  
and of learned Theodorus Balsamon.*

WHilest Heraclius did Patriarch it in Jerusalem, one Haymericus had the same honour at Antioch. He wrote to Henry the second King of England a bemoning letter of the Christians in the East, and from him received another, fraught with never-performed fair promises. This man must needs be different from that Haymericus who began his Patriarchship in Antioch anno 1143, and sat but twelve yeares, say the

\* Centuriators: But \* Baroniis, as different from them sometimes in Chronologie as Divinity, maketh them the same. Then must he be a through-old man, enjoying his place above fourtie years; being probably before he wore the style of Patriarch well worn in yeares himself. I must confess, it falleth my Chymistrie to extract any agreement herein out of the contrariety of Writers. We must also take notice, that besides the Latine Patriarchs in Jerusalem and Antioch, there were also Grecian Anti-patriarchs appointed by the Emperour of Constantinople: who having no temporall power nor profit by Church-lands, had onely jurisdiction over those of the Greek Church. We find not the chain of their succession, but here and there light on a link, and at this time in Jerusalem on three successively: 1. Athanasius, whom though \* one out of his abundant charite is pleased to style a Schismatick, yet was he both pious and learned, as appeareth by his Epistles. 2. Leontius, \* commended likewise to posterite for a good Clerk, and an honest man. 3. Dositheus, \* inferiour to the former in both respects: Ifaac the Grecian Emperour sent to make him Patriarch of Constantinople, and Dositheus catching at both, held neither, but betwixt two Patriarchs chairs fell to the ground.

Antioch also had her Greek Patriarchs: As one Sotericus, displaced for maintaining some unfound tenets about our Saviour: After him Theodorus Balsamon, the Oracle of the learned Law in his age. He compiled and commented on the ancient Canons, and principally set forth the privileges of Con-

\* *Centur. 12.  
in Epistolis.  
Annal. Eccl.  
in Haymerico.*

\* *Baroniis, in  
anno 1180.*

\* *Nicetas  
Choniates, in  
Istacio Ange-  
lo, pag. 428.  
\* Idem ibidem*

\* Nicetas  
Chon. in Isa-  
acio, pag. 410.

Constantinople ; listening, say the Romanists, to the least noise that soundeth to the advancing of the Eastern Churches; and knocking down Rome wherefoever it peepeth above Constantinople. This maketh Bellarmine except against him as a partiall Writer ; because a true Historian shoulde be neither partie, advocate, nor judge, but a bare witnessse.

By \* Isaac the Grecian Emperour this Balsamon was also deceived : he pretended to removem him to Constantinople, on condition he would prove the translation of the Patriarch to be legal, which is forbidden by the Canons. Balsamon took upon him to prove it : and a Lawyers brains will beat to purpose when his own preferment is the fee. But herein he did but crack the nut for another to eat the kernel : For the Emperour mutable in his mind, changing his favourites as well as his clothes before they were old, when the legality of the translation was avowed, bestowed the Patriarchship of Constantinople on another ; and Theodorus was still staked down at Antioch in a true spirituall preferment, affording him little bodily maintenance.

### Chap. 45.

#### *The revolt of the Earl of Tripoli; The Christians irrecoverably overthrown, and their King taken prisoner.*

There was at this time a truce betwixt the Christians and Saladin, broken on this occasion : Saladin's mother went from Egypt to Damascus, with much treasure and a little train, as sufficiently guarded with the truce yet in force : when Reinold of Castile surprised and robbed her. Saladin, glad of this occasion, gathereth all his strength together, and besiegeth Ptolemais.

Now Reimund Earl of Tripoli appeareth in his colours, vexed at the losse of the government. His great stomach hath no room for patience: and his passions boyled from a fever to a phrensie, so thon blinded with anger at King Guy, he mistaketh his enemie, and will be revenged on God and Religion, revolting with his Principalitie (a third part of the Kingdome of Jerusalem) to Saladin, and in his own person under a visard, assisted him in this siege.

Out of the citie marched the Templars and Hospitallers, and falling on the Turks killed twentie thousand of them.

Yet

Anno  
Dom.

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

Anno  
Dom.

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

~

Yer they gave welnigh a valuable consideracion for their victory, the Master of the Hospitallers being slain, and a brave Generall in battel never dieth unattended.

Saladine hereupon raiseth his siege, and Reimund Earl of Tripoli, whether out of fear the Christians might prevail, or remorse of conscience, or discontent, not finding that respect he expected of Saladine (who had learned that politick maxime, To give some honour, no trust to a fugitive) reconciled himself to King Guy ; and sorry for his former offence, returned to the Christians.

King Guy hereupon gathering the whole strength of his weak Kingdome to do their last devoir, determined to bid Saladine battel; though having but fifteen hundred horse and fifteen thousand foot, against an hundred and twentie thousand horse and an hundred and sixtie thousand foot. Nigh Tiberias the battel was fought : They clost in the afternoon; but night moderating betwixt them, both sides drew their stakes till next morning: then on a fresh. The Christians valour poised the number of their enemies; till at last the distemper of the weather turned the scales to the Turks side. More Christians (thirstie within and scalded without) were killed with the beams the sunne darted, then with the arrows the enemies shot. Reinold of Castile was slain, with most of the Templars and Hospitallers. \* Gerard Master of the Templars, and Boniface Marquesse of Montferrat were taken prisoners; and also Guy the King, who saw the rest of his servants slain before his eyes, only obtaining of Saladin the life of his schoolmaster. Yea, in this battel the flower of the Christian chevalrie was cut down: and what was most lamented, The Crosse (saith Matthew Paris) which freed men from the captivitie of their finnes, was for mens finnes taken captive. Most impute this overthrow to the Earl of Tripoli, who that day commanded a great part of the Christian army, and is said of some treacherously to have fled away. But when a great action miscarrieth, the blame must be laid on some; and commonly it lighteth on them who formerly have been found false, be it right or wrong : So impossible is it for him who once hath broken his credit by treason, ever to have it perfectly joyned again. It increaseth the suspition, because this Earl, afterwards found dead in his bed (as some say) was circumcised.

Victorous Saladin, as he had thrown a good cast, played it as well; in a moneth conquering Beryus, Biblus, Ptolemais, and all the havens (Tyre excepted) from Sidon to Askelon. He used his conquest with much moderation, giving lives & goods to all, and forcing no Christians to depart their cities, save only the Latines. This his gentlenesse proceeded from policie, well knowing that if the Christians could not buy their lives cheap, they would

106

would sell them deare, and fight it out to the uttermost. Askelon was stout, and would not surrender. Wherefore Saladin, loth with the hazard of so long a siege to check his fortune in the full speed, left it, and went to Jerusalem, as to a place of lesse difficulty and more honour to conquer.

### Chap. 46. *Jerusalem wonne by the Turk, with wofull remarkables therat.*

**B**efore the beginning of the siege, the sunne, as sympathizing with the Christians woes, was eclipsed. A sad presage of the losse of Jerusalem. For though those within the citie valiantly defended it for a fortnight, yet they saw it was but the playing out of a desperate game which must be lost: Their foes neare, their friends farre off, and those willing to pity, unable to help. Why then should they prolong languishing, where they could not preserve life? Concluding to lavish no more valour, they yielded up the citie, on condition all their lives might be redeemed, a man for ten, a woman for five, a child for \*one besant: and fourteen thousand poore people not able to pay their ransome were kept in perpetuall bondage. All Latines were cast out of the citie, but those of the Greek religion were permitted to stay therein: Only Saladin to two Frenchmen gave libertie to abide there, and maintenance to live on, in reverence to their age: the one Robert of Corby, a souldier to Godfrey of Bouillon when he wanne this citie; the other Fulk Fiole, the first child born in the citie after the Christians had conquered it.

Saladin possessed of Jerusalem, turned the Churches into stables, sparing only that of the Sepulchre for a great summe of money. Solomons Temple he converted to a Molque, sprinkling it all over with rote-water, as if he would wash it from profaneness, whilst he profaned it with his wassing.

Thus Jerusalem, after it had fourescore and eight yeares been enjoyed by the Christians, by Gods just judgement was taken again by the Turks. Whar else could be expected: Sinne reigned in every corner; there was scarce \* one honest woman in the whole citie of Jerusalem. Heraclius the Patriarch, with the Clergie, was desperately vicious: and no wonder if iron rust, when gold doth; and if the Laicie followed their bad example.

This dolefull news brought into Europe, filled all with sighs and sorrows. Pope Urbane the third (as another Eli at the Arks capti-

\* M. Paris, in  
anno 1187;

Refoldus, in  
Guidone,  
pag. 485.

\* Bezdulus, in  
Guidone,  
pag. 284.

Anno  
Dom.

Sept.  
4.

Okt.  
2.

107

captivitie) died for grief: The Cardinals lamented out of measure, vowing such reformation of manners; Never more to take bribes, Never more to live so vitiosly; yea, Never to ride on an horse so long as the Holy land was under the feet of the Turks. But this their passion spent it self with its own violence, and these mariners vows ended with the tempest.

In this generall grief of Christendome there was one woman found to rejoice, and she a German Propheteſſe called S. Christian, a virgin. Who as she had foretold the day of the defeat, so on the fame ſhe profeffed that the ſaw in a viſion Chriſt and his Angels rejoicing. For the losſe of the earthly Canaan was gain to the heavenly, peopling it with many inhabitants, who were conquerours in their overthrow; whileſt they \* required Chriſts paſſion, and died for him who ſuffered for them. But for the truth both of the doctrine and hiftorie hereof, none need burden their belief farther then they pleafe. We will conclude all with Roger Hovedens wittie defcant on the time: \* When Jeruſalem was wonne by the Christians, and afterwards when it was lost, an Urbane was Pope of Rome, a Frederick Emperour of Germany, an Heraclius Patriarch of Jeruſalem. But by his leave, though the firſt of his obſeruations be true, the ſecond is a flat falſtie, the third a foul miſtake, and may thus be mended: (It is charitiſe to lend a crutch to a lame conceit) When the Croſſe was taken from the Persians, Heraclius was Emperour; and when it was taken from the Turks, Heraclius was Patriarch. Thus theſe curiouſe obſeruations (like over-small watches) not one of an hundred goeth true. Though it cannot be denied, but the fame name (as Henry of England, one the win-all, another the loſe-all in France) hath often been happy and unhappy in founding and confounding of Kingdomes. But ſuch nominall toyes are rags not worth a wife mans ſtooping to take them up.

\* Roger Hoveden, in Henrico 2. ann. 1187

\* Quandam moni Salvatoris vicem cum multa devotione pendunt. Barrenius, in anno 1187.

\* Loco prius citato.

*The end of the ſecond Book.*

**109**

THE  
HISTORIE  
OF THE  
HOLY VVAR.  

---

*BOOK III.*

Chap. I.  
Conrade of Montferrat valiantly defendeth  
Tyre, and is chosen King.

Ann  
Dom  
118

N this woefull estate stood the Christian affairs in the Holy Land, when Conrade Marquesse of Montferrat arrived there. His worth commandeth my pen to wait on him from his own country till he came hither. Sonne he was to Boniface Marquesse of Monferrat, and had spent his youth in the service of Isaacius Angelus the Grecian Emperour. This Isaacius, fitter for a Priest then a Prince, was alwayes bred in a private way ; and the confining of his bodie seemeth to have brought him to a pent and narrow soul. For he suffered rebels to affront him to his face, never sending any armie against them, but commanding all his cause to a company of bare-footed Friars whom he kept in his Court, desiring them to pray for him, and by their pious tears to quench the combustions in the Empire. But our Conrade plainly told him, he must use as well the weapons of the \* left hand as of the right ; meaning the sword as well as prayers : And by the advice of this his Generall, he quickly subdued all his enemies. Which his great service found small reward : \* only he was graced to wear his shoes of the Imperiall fashion, a low matter, but there ( forsooth ) accounted an high honour. But soon after Isaac was sick of this Physician who had cured his Empire. If private debtors care not for the company of their creditours , much lesse do Princes love to see them to whom they owe themselves and their Kingdome : so unwelcome are courtesies to them when above their requitall. Now it is an

\* Nicetas, in  
Isaacio Ange-  
lo, lib. 1. §. 7.  
\* Nicetas, in  
Isaacio Ange-  
lo, lib. 2. §. I.  
Μόνεν τὸ μὲν  
τοῖς πλλοῖς  
διμέλεον ταῦτα  
δημια τὰ ποδες  
τῷ σῆμῃ Καισά-  
ρων λέγω πα-  
ρεσθομεν.

110

ancient policie, to rid away high spirits by fending them on some plausible errand into remote parts, there to seek for themselves an honourable grave. To this end Isaacius by the perswasions of some spurr'd on Conrade (free enough of himself to any noble action) to go into Palestine, thereto support the ruinous affairs of the Christians. Conrade was sensible of their plot, but suffered himself to be wrought on, being weary of the Grecians base-nesse, and came into the Holy Land with a brave companie of Gentlemen furnished on their own cost.

For a while we set him aside, and return to Saladine: Who by this time had taken Askelon, on condition that King Guy, and Gerard master of the Templars should be set at libertie. Nor long after was the castle of Antioch betrayed unto him by the Patriarch; and the citie, scarce got with eleven moneths siege, was lost in an instant, with five and twenty strong towns more which attended the fortune of Antioch: and many Provinces thereto belonging came into the possession of the Turks. Must not the Christians needs be bankruptis if they continue this trade, buying deare and selling cheap, gaining by inches and losing by ells?

With better successe those in Tripoli (which citie the wife of Earl Reimund after his death delivered to the Christians) defended themselves against Saladine. For shame they would not forgo their shirts, though they had parted with their clothes. Stark-naked from shelter had the Christians been left, if stripped out of Tripoli and Tyre. Manfully therefore they defended themselves; and Saladine having tafted of their valour in Tripoli, had no mind to mend his draught, but marched away to Tyre.

But Conrade of Montferrat, who was in Tyre with his armie, so us'd the matter, that Saladine was fain to flee, and leave his tents behind him, which were lined with much treasure: And the Christians had the happiness to squeeze that sponge which formerly was filled with their spoil. They in Tyre in token of gratitude chose this Conrade King of Jerusalem, swearing themselves his subjects who had kept them from being the Turks slaves. To strengthen his title, he \*married Elisa or Isabella (Aucthors Christen her with either name) formerly espoused to Humfred of Thoron, sister to Baldwin the fourth, daughter to Almerick King of Jerusalem.

By this time King Guy was delivered out of prison, having sworne never more to bear arms against Saladine: which oath by the Clergie was adjudged void, because forced from him when he was detaine in prison unjustly against promise. The worst was, now he had gained his libertie he could not get his Kingdome. Coming to Tyre, they shut the gates against him, owning

Anno  
Dom.  
~

ing no King but Conrade. Thus to have two kings together, is the way to have neither king nor kingdome.

But Guy following the affront as well as he might, and piecing up a cloth of remants with his broken army, besieged Prote-mais. The Pisanes, Venetians, and Florentines, with their succours came to assist him. But this siege was Church-work, and therefore went on slowly; we may easer perceive it to have moved then to move, especially if we return hither at twelve-moneth hence.

111

## Chap. 2.

*The Church-storie in the Holy Land to the end  
of the Warre; The use and abuse of titular  
Bishops.*

We must now no longer look for a full face of a Church in the Holy Land; it is well if we find one cheek and an eye. Though Jerusalem and Antioch were wonne by the Turks, the Pope ceased not to make Patriarchs of both. We will content our selves with the names of those of Jerusalem, finding little else of them remarkable.

After Heraclius, Thomas Agni was Patriarch, \* present in the Laterane Council under Innocent the third.

Geraldus succeeded him, who \* sided with the Pope against Frederick the Emperour.

Albertus, Patriarch in Jerusalem when the Christians lost their land in Syria. He prescribed some rules to the \* Carmelites.

After him, Antonie Beak Bishop of Duresme, the most triumphant Prelate of the English militant Church except Cardinall Wolsey. He founded and endowed a Colledge for Prebends at \* Chester in the Bishoprick of Duresme: Yet no doubt he had done a deed more acceptable to God, if in stead of sacrifice he had done justice, and not defrauded the Lord Vessie's heir, to whom he was guardian. Let those who are delighted with Scirography, paint out (if they please) these shadow-Patriarchs, as also those of Antioch, and deduce their succession to this day: For this custome still continueth, and I find the Suffraganes to severall Archbishops and Bishops in Germany and France, style themselves Bishops of Palestine: for example, The Suffraganes of 1 Tornay, 2 Munster, 3 Mentz, 4 Utrecht, 5 Sens, 6 Triers, write themselves Bishops

\* Centur.  
Cent. 13. cap. 9.\* M. Parus, in  
anno 1129.\* Centur. sc  
priusi.\* Camden,  
Brit. pag. 60.  
Godwinus in  
Epist. Dunelm.See this Cata-  
logue of Pa-  
triarchs al-  
tered and per-  
fected in the  
Chronologie.Adriconius in  
Terra sancta.

1188

*History of  
Trent, lib. 8.  
pag. 7.*

112

Bishops of 1 Sarepta, 2 Ptolemais, 3 Sidon, 4 Hebron, 5 Cefarea, 6 Azotus. But well did one in the Council of Trent give these titular Bishops the title of *figmenta humana*, <sup>Anno</sup>  
<sup>Domi.</sup> <sup>1563.</sup> because they have as little ground in Gods mans devices; because they have as little ground in word and the ancient Canons for their making, as ground in Palestine for their maintenance: Yea, a titular Bishop soundeth a contradiction: for a Bishop and a Church or Diocese are relatives, as a husband and his wife. Besides, these Bishops by ascending to so high an honour, were fain to descend to many indecencies and indignities to support themselves, with many corruptions in selling of Orders they conferred, the truest and basest Simonie.

*Camd. Brit. in  
his descript. of  
Dublin.**History of  
Trent, lib. 2.  
pag. 140.*

However the Pope still continueth in making of them: First, because it is conceived to conduce to the state and amplitude of the Romane Church to have so many Bishops in it, as it is the credit of the Apothecary to have his shop full, though many outside-painted pots be empty within. Secondly, hereby his Holiness hath a facil and cheap way, both to gratifie and engage ambitious spirits, and such Chameleons as love to feed on aire. Yea, the Pope is not onely free of spirituall dignities, but also of temporall titular honours; as when in the dayes of Queen Elizabeth he made Thomas Stukely (a bankrupt in his loyaltie as well as in his estate) Marquesse of Leinster, Earl of Weiford and Caterlogh, Vicount Murrough, Baron Rosse and Hydron in Ireland: The best is, these honours were not heavie nor long worn, he being slain soon after in Barbary, else the number of them would have broken his back. Lastly, there is a reall use made of these nominall Bishops: for these ciphers joyned with figures will swell a number, and sway a side in a generall Council, as his Holiness pleaseth; so that he shall truly *cogere concilium*, both gather and compell it. Of the fourre Archbishops which were at the first Session in the Council of Trent, two were merely titular, who never had their feete in those Churches whence they took their honour. But enough hereof: Now to matters of the Common-wealth.

Chap.

113

*Anno  
Dom.  
1563.*

*Frederick Barbarossa his setting forth to the  
Holy Land; Of the tyrannous Grecian Emperours.*

**M**atters going thus wofull in Palestine, the Christians sighs there were alarms to stirre up their brethren in Europe to go to help them, and chiefly Frederick Barbarossa the Germane Emperour. Impute it not to the weaknesse of his judgement, but the strength of his devotion, that at Seventy years of age, having one foot in his grave, he would set the other on Pilgrimage. We must know that this Emperour had been long tied to the stake, and baited with seuen fresh successve Popes, till at last not conquered with the strength, but wearied with the continuance of their malice, he gave himself up to be ordered by them; and Pope Clement the third sent him on this voyage into the Holy Land.

*Anno  
29.*

Marching through Hungarie with a great armie of one hundred and fiftie thousand valiant souldiers, he was welcomed by King Bela. But changing his host, his entertainment was changed, being basely used when he entred into the Grecian Empire.

*Arnoldus La-  
becensis.*

Of the Emperours whereof we must speak somewhat. For though being to write the Holy Warre I will climbe no hedges, to trespass on any other story, yet will I take leave to go the high-way, and touch on the succession of those Princes which lead to the present discouer.

When Conrade Emperour of Germany last passed this way, Emmanuel was Emperour in Greece: Who having reigned thirty eight years, left his place to Alexius his sonne: A youth, the depth of whose capacite onely reached to understand pleasure, governed by the factious Nobilitie, till in his third yeare he was strangled by Andronicus his cousin.

*\* Nicetas  
Choniates, in  
fine vita An-  
dronic.*

Andronicus succeeded him, a diligent reader and a great lover of \* S. Pauls Epistles, but a bad practiser of them: Who rather observing the Devils rule, That it is the best way for those who have been bad, to be still worse, fensing his former villanies by committing new ones, held by tyrrannie what he had gotten by usurpation, till having lived in the bloud of others, he died in his own, tortured to death by the headlesse multitude; from whom he received all the cruelties which might be expected from servile natures when they command.

Then Isaicus Angelus, of the Emperiall bloud, was placed

in

114  
\* In the first  
chapter of this  
Book.

\* Nicetas  
Choniates, in  
Isaacio, lib. 2.  
pag. 426.  
\* Baroniuss,  
Annot.

in his throne ; of whom partly \* before. Nero-like, he began mildly, but soon fell to the trade of tyrannie : no personall; but the hereditarie sinne of these Emperours. He succeeded also to their suspicions against the Latines, as if they came through his countrey for some sinistre ends. This jealous Emperour reigned when Frederick with his armie passed this way, and many bad offices were done betwixt these two Emperours by unfaithfull \* Embassadours, as such false mediums have often deceived the bestnes. But Frederick finding perfidious dealing in the Greeks, was drawn to draw his sword, taking as he went, \* Philippople, Adrianople, and many other cities; not so much to get their spoil, as his own securitie. Isaac understanding hereof, and seeing these Pilgrimes would either find or make their paſſage, left all terms of enmitie, and fell to a faire complying, accommodating them with all necessaries for their transportation over the Bosphorus, pretending to haſten them away because the Christians exigencies in Palestine admitted of no delay : doing it indeed for fear, the Grecians loving the Latines best when they are furthest from them.

## Chap. 4.

The great victories and wofull death of Frederick  
the worthy Emperour.

Frederick entring into the territories of the Turkish Sultan of Iconium, found great resistance, but vanquished his enemies in four severall ſet battels. Iconium he took by force, giving the ſpoil thereof to his ſouldiers, in revenge of the injurys done to his uncle Conrade the Emperour by the Sultan of that place. The citie of Philomela he made to ſing a dolefull tune, rafing it to the ground, and executing all the people therein as rebels against the law of nations, for killing his Embassadours : and ſo came with much difficultie and honour into Syria.

Saladine ſhook for fear, hearing of his coming, and following the advice of \* Characux his counſeller ( counted one of the wiſeſt men in the world, though his perſon was moſt contemptible ; ſo true it is, none can gueſſe the jewel by the casket) diſmantled all his citiēs in the Holy Land ſave ſome frontier-places, rafing their walls and forts, that they were not tenable with an army. For he feared if the Dutch wonne theſe places, they would not eaſily be driven out : whereas

\* Bayilius, in  
Ptol. Auguſt.  
¶ pag. 178.  
¶ 179.

Anno  
Dom.  
1190.

Aug.  
25.

Mar.  
28.

May  
19.

June  
21.

whereas now being naked from ſhelter, he would weary them with ſet battels, having men numberleſſe, and thoſe neare at hand; and ſo he would tame the Romane Eagle by watching him, giving him no ref leſ nor repiſe from continuall fighting. It is therefore no Paradox to ſay, That in ſome caſe the strength of a kingdome doth coniſt in the weakeſſe of it. And hence it is, that our English Kings have ſuffered Time, without diſturbiſ her meals, to feed her belly full on their in-land castles and citie-wals; which whileſt they were ſtanding in their ſtrength were but the nurſeries of rebellion. And now, as one \* obſerueth, because we have no ſtrong cities, warre in England waxeth not old ( being quickly ſtabbed with ſet battels ), which in the Low-coutryes hath already out-lived the grand climactericall of threſcore and ten years.

But Frederick the Emperour, being now entring into the Hoſtly Land, was to the great grief of all Christians ſuddenly taken away, being drowned in the river of Saleph; a river ( ſuch is the envie of Barbarisme obſcuring all places ) which cannot accurately be known at this day, because this new name is a stranger to all ancient maps. If he went in to waſh himſelf, as ſome write, he neither conſulted with his health nor hoſtour. Some ſay, his horſe founded under him as he paſſed the water; others, that he fell from him. But theſe fev'ral relations, as variety of iſtruments, make a dolefull conforſt in this, that there he loſt his life: and no wonder, if the cold water quickly quenched thoſe few ſparks of naturall heat left in him at ſeventie yeares of age. \* Neubrigensis conceiueſt that this his ſudden death was therefore inflicted on him, because in his youth he fought againſt the Popes and Church of Rome: But I wonder that he ſeeing an Emperour drowned in a ditch, durſt adventure into the bottomleſſe depths of Gods counſels. Let it content us to know, that oftentimes heaven blaſphemeth thoſe hopes which bud firſt and faireſt; and the feet of mighty Monarchs do ſlip, when they want but one ſtep to their enemies throne.

After his death Frederick Duke of Suevia, his ſecond ſonne, undertook the conduſt of the armie. Now the Turks conceiueſt grief had ſteeped and moistened theſe Pilgrimes hearts, gave them a ſudden charge, in hope to have overthrown them. But the valiant Dutch, who though they had ſcarce wiped their eyes had ſcoured their ſwords, quickly forced them to retire. Then Frederick took the citie of Antioch, which was eaſily delivered unto him, and his hungry ſouldiers well reſrehed by the ciſtens, being as yet for the moſt part Christians. Marching from hence in ſet battele, he overthrew Dodequin Generall of Saladines forces, ſlew ſou're thouſand,

115

\* Barkley,  
Bellum in  
Anglia non  
ſenſit.

¶ Lib. 4. c. 13.

Q 2 and

.. 116

and took a thousand prisoners with little losse of his own men: and so came to the citie of Tyre, where he buried the corpse of his worthy father in the Cathedrall Church next the tombe of learned Origens, and Gulielmus Tyrius the worthy Archibishop preached his funerall Sermon. We may heare his sorrowfull Army speaking this his Epitaph unto him;

*Earth scarce did yeeld ground enough for thy sword  
To conquer, how then could a brook afford  
Water to drown thee? brook which since dost fear  
( O guilty conscience ) in a map t' appear.  
Yet blame we not the brook, but rather think  
The weight of our own sinnes did make thee sink.  
Now sith 't is so, weel fetch a brackish Main  
Out of our eyes, and drown thee once again.*

From hence by sea they were conveyed to the Christian army before Ptolemais, where young Frederick died of the plague: and his great army which at first consisted of an hundred and fiftie thousand at their setting forth out of Germanie, had now no more left then \* eighteen hundred armed men.

\* *Empliuin  
Phil. 2. pag 175*

## Chap. 5.

*The continuation of the famous siege of Ptolemais; The Dutch Knights honoured with a grand Master.*

**W**E have now at our leisure overtaken the snail-like siege of Ptolemais, still slowly creeping on. Before it the Christians had not only a National but an Oecumenicall Army, the abridgement of the Christian world: Scarce a State or populous citie in Europe but had here some competent number to represent it.

How many bloody blows were here sent on both sides, and repayed with interest: what fallies? what assaults? what encounters? whilst the Christians lay betwixt Saladin with his great army behind them and the citie before them. One memorable battell we must not omit. It was agreed betwixt Saladin and the Christians to trie their fortunes in a pitched field: and now the Christians were in fair hope of a conquest, when an \*imaginary causelesse fear put them to a reall flight; so ticklish are the scales of victory, a very mire will turn them. Thus confusely they ran away, and boote would have been given to change a strong arm for a swift leg. But behold,

\* *Fuga im=  
ginario meu=   
oria, Sabell.  
Enn. 9. lib. 5.  
pag 377.*

Anna

Dom.

~

behold, Geoffrey Lusignan King Guy's brother ( left for the guarding of the camp) marching out with his men, confundeth the Christians in this their groundlesse mistake, and reinforced them to fight, whereby they wone the day, though with the losse of two thousand men, and Gerard Master of the Tem- plars.

It was vainly hoped, that after this victory the citie would be surrendered: but the Turks still bravely defended it, though most of their horses were burnt and beaten down, and the citie reduced to a bare *keleton* of walls and towres. They fought as well with their wits as weapons, and both sides devised strange defensive and offensive engines: so that Mars himself, had he been here present, might have learned to fight, and have taken notes from their practice. Meantime famine raged amongst the Christians, and though some provision was now & then brought in from Italy ( for so far they fetched it ) yet these small shewres after great droughes parched the more, and rather raised then abated their hunger.

Once more we will take our farewell of this siege for a twelve-moneth: But we must not forget that at this time, before the walls of Ptolemais the Teutonick Order, or \* Dutch Knights ( which since the dayes of Baldwin the second lived like private pilgrimes ) had now their Order honoured with Henry of Walpot their first grand Master, and they were enriched by the bountie of many Germane benefactours. These, though slow, were sure; they did *hoc agere*, ply their work; more cordiall to the Christian cause then the Templars, who sometimes to save their own stakes would play boote with the Turks. Much good service did the Dutch Knights in the Ho- ly Warre; till at last ( no wise Doctour will layish physick on him in whom he feeth *faciem cadaverosam*, so that death hath ta- ken possession in the sick mans countenance ) finding this Warre to be desperat and *dederunt fortitudinis*, they even fairly left the Holy Land, and came into Europe, meaning to lay out their valour on some thing that would quit cost. But hereof hereafter.

317

\* *Munster, de  
Germania, lib.  
3. pag. 778.*

Q 3

Chap.

118

## Chap. 6.

*Richard of England and Philip of France set forward to the Holy Land; The danger of the interviews of Princes.*

The miseries of the Christians in Syria, being reported in Europe, made Richard the first, King of England, and Philip the second surnamed Augustus, King of France, to make up all private dissensions betwixt them, and to unite their forces against the Turks.

Richard was well stored with men, the bones; and quickly gote money, the sinews of warre, by a thousand Princely skills gathering so much coin as if he meint not to return, because looking back would unbewe his resolution. To Hugh Bishop of Duresme, for his life, he sold the Countie of Northumberland; \* jesting he had made a new Earl of an old Bishop: He sold Barwick and Roxburgh to the Scottish King for ten thousand pounds: Yea, he protested he would sell his citie of \* London (if any were able to buy it) rather then he would be burdensome to his subjects for money. But take this as he spake it, for a flourish: for pretending he had lost his old, he made a new Seal, wherewith he squeezed his subjects, and left a deep impression in their purfes; forcing them to have all their \* instruments new-sealed, which any wayes concerned the Crown.

Having now provided for himself, he forgot not his younger brother John Earl of Morton, who was to stay behind him, an active man, who if he disliked the maintenance was cut for him, would make bold to carve for himself: Lest therefore strained for means he should swell into discontent, King Richard gave him many Earldomes and honours, to the yearly value of foure thousand marks. Thus he received the golden saddle, but none of the bridle of the Common-wealthe: honour and riches were heaped upon him, but no place of trust and command. For the King deputed William Bishop of Ely his Vice-roy; choosing him for that place rather then any Lay-Earl, because a Coronet perchance may swell into a Crown, but never a Mitre: For a Clergie-mans calling made him uncapable of usurpation in his own person.

Thus having settled matters at home, he set forth with many of our Nation, which either ushered or followed him. Of these the prime were, Baldwin Archbishop of Canterbury, Hubert Bishop of Salisbury, Robert Earl of Leicester, Ralph de Glanvile late chief Justice of England, Richard de Clare,

Anno  
Dom.  
1190

119

Clare, Walter de Kime, &c. The Bishops of Duresme and Norwich, though they had vowed this voyage, were dispensed with by the Court of Rome (\* que nulli deest pecuniam largienti) to stay at home. His navie he sent about by Spain; and with a competent number took his own journey through France.

At Tours he took his Pilgrimes scrip and staff from the Archbishop. His staff at the same time \* casually brake in pieces; which some (whose dexterite lay in sinister interpreting all accidents) construed a token of ill successe. Likewise, when he and the French king with their trains passed over the bridge of Lyons, \* on the fall of the bridge this conceit was built, That there would be a falling out betwixt these two Kings, which accordingly came to passe, their intercourse and familiaritie breeding hatred and discontent betwixt them.

Yea, the interviews of equall Princes have ever been observed dangerous. Now Princes measure their equalitie not by the extent of their dominions, but by the absolutenesse of their power; so that he that is supreme and independent in his own countrey, counteth himself equall to any other Prince how great soever. Perchance some youthfull Kings may disport and solace themselves one in anothers companie, whilst as yet pleasure is all the elevation of their souls: But when once they grow sensible of their own greatnesse, (a lesson they will quickly learn, and shall never want teachers) then emulation will be betwixt them: because at their meeting they cannot so go in equipage, but one will still be the foremost: Either his person will be more proper, or carriage more court-like, or attendance more accomplished, or attire more fashioneer, or some thing will either be or conceived to be more majesticall in one then the other: And corrivals in honour count themselves eclipsed by every beam of state which shineth from their competitour. Wherefore the best way to keep great Princes together, is to keep them asunder, accommodating their businesse by Embassadours, lest the meeting of their own persons part their affections.

\* Stattebow  
Paris, in Ri-  
chardo I.,  
pag. 207.\* Roger Hove-  
den, in Ri-  
chardo I.,  
pag. 666.\* Idem, ibi.  
dem.

## Chap. 7.

*King Richard conquereth Sicily and Cyprus in his passage to the Holy Land.*

AT Lyons these two Kings parted their trains, and went severall wayes into Sicilie. King Richard in his passage, though

120

though within fifteen miles of Rome, wanting (forsooth) either devotion or manners, vouchsafed not to give his Holiness a visit: yea, plainly told \* Octavian Bishop of Ostia the Popes Confessour, that having better objects to bestow his eyes on, he would not stirre a step to see the Pope: Because lately without mercie he had sumoniacally extorted a masse of money from the Prelates of England. At Messana in Sicilie these two Kings meet again: where to complete King Richards joy, behold his Navie there safely arriving, which with much difficultie and danger had fetched a compasse about Spain.

And now King Richard by his own experience grew sensible of the miseries which merchants and mariners at sea underwent, being alwayes within few inches, often within an hairs breadth of death. Wherefore now touched with remorse of their pitifull case, he resolved to revoke the law of Wracks, as a law so just that it was even unjust. For formerly both in England and Normandie, the \* Crown was intituled to shipwrackt goods, and the King *jure gentium* made heir unto them; which otherwife *jure naturali* were conceived to be *in bonis nullius*, pertaining to no owner. But now our Richard refused to make advantage of such pitifull accidents, and to strip poore mariners out of thos rags of their estates which the mercy and modestie of the waves and winds had left them. And therefore on the moneth of October, at Messana, in the presence of many Archbishops and Bishops, he for ever \* quitted the claim to Wracks: So that if any man out of the ship cometh alive to the shore, the properte of the shipwrackt goods is still preserved to the owner. Yea, this grant was so enlarged by our succeeding Kings, that \* if a dogge or a cat escaped alive to land, the goods still remained the owners, if he claimed them within a yare and a day.

Tankred at this time was King of Sicilie, a bastard born: and no wonder, if climbing up to the throne the wrong way, he shaked when he sat down. Besides, he was a Tyrant, both detaining the dowrie, and imprisoning the person of Joan wife to William late King of Sicilie, and sister to King Richard. But in what a case was he now, having two such mightie Monarchs come unto him! To keep them out, was above his power; to let them in, against his will. Well he knew it was wofull to lie in the rode where great armes were to passe: For power knoweth no inferiour friend; and the land-lord commonly loseth his rent, sometimes his land, where the tenant is too potent for him.

\* At last he resolved ( how wisely or honestly, let others judge ) openly to poise himself indifferent betwixt these two Kings,

\* Hoveden, in  
Richard. 1.  
pag. 668.  
& Matib.  
Paris, in co-  
dem, p. 213.

\* Braffon,  
lib. 2. cap. 5.

\* Quietum  
clamavit,  
wreck &c.  
Roger Howe-  
den, in Richd.  
pag. 678.  
\* S. Ed. Coke,  
vol. 6. fol. 107.

Anno  
Dom.  
~

121

Kings, secretly applying himself to the French: which King Richard quickly discovered; as dissembling goeth not long invisible before a judicious eye.

Meantime the citizens of Messana did the English much wrong, if not by the command, with the consent of the King. For though it be unjust to fater the base actions of unruly people on their Prince; yet Tankred not punishing his people for injuring the English, when he might and was required thereunto, did in effect justify their insolencies, and adopt their deeds to be his. Wherefore King Richard to avenge himself, took Messana by assault, seised on most forts in the Island, demanding satisfaction for all wrongs done to him and his sister. Tankred though dull at first, now pricked with the sword, came off roundly with many thousand ounces of gold; and seeing, as the case stood, his best thrift was to be prodigal, gave to our King what rich conditions soever he demanded.

Worse discorde daily encreased betwixt the Kings of France and England; King Richard sleighting the King of France his sister, whom he had promised to marrie, and expressing more affection to Beringaria daughter to the King of Navarre. Some Princes interposing themselves in this breach, rather asswaged the pain then removed the maladie: So dangerous are ruptures betwixt great ones, whose affections perchance by the mediation of friends may be brought again to meet, but never to unite and incorporate. King Philip thinking to forestall the market of honour, and take up all for himself, hasted prently to Prolemais: Richard followed at his leisure, and took Cyprus in his way. Isaac ( or Cursac ) reigned then in Cyprus; who under Andronicus the Grecian Emperour ( when every factious Nobleman snatched a plank out of that ship-wrecked Empire ) seised on this Island, and there tyrannized as a reputed King. Some falsely conceive him a Pagan: and his faith is suspected, because his charite was so bad; killing the English that landed there, not haying so much man as to pity a woman, and to suffer the seafick Ladie Beringaria to come on shore. But King Richard speedily overran the Island, honoured Isaac with the magnificent captivity of silver fetters; yet giving his daughter liberty and princely usage. The Island he pawned to the Templars for ready money. And because Cyprus by antiquity was celebrated as the seat of Venus, that so it might prove to him, in the joyous moneth of May he solemnly took to wife his beloved Ladie Beringaria.

R

Chap.

122

## Chap. 8.

*The taking of the citie Ptolemais.*

**W**Hilst King Richard stayed in Cyprus, the siege of Ptolemais went on: and though the French King thought with a running pull to bear the citie away, yet he found it staked down too fast for all his strength to stirre.

Meantime, the plague and famine raged in the Christians camp; which the last yeaer swept away fifty Princes and Prelates of note: Who, no doubt, went hence to a happy place; though it was before Pope Clement the sixth \* commanded the Angels (who durst not but obey him) preferently to convey all their souls into Paradise which shoud die in their Pilgrimage.

This mortalitie notwithstanding, the siege still continued. And now the Christians and Turks, like two fensers long playing together, were so well acquainted with the blows and guards each of other, that what advantage was taken betwixt them was merely casfull, never for want of skill, care, or valour on either side. It helped the Christians not a little, that a concealed Christian within the citie, with letters unsubscirbed with any name, gave them constant and faithfull intelligence of the remarkable paffages amongst the Turks.

No Prince in this siege deserved more then Leopoldus Duke of Austria; who fought so long in assaulting this citie, till his armour was all over gore bloud, save the place covered with his belt. \* Whereupon he and his successours the Dukes of Austria, renouncing the six Golden larks, their ancient arms, had affigned them by the Emperour a fesse Argent in a field Gules, as the paternall coat of their family.

By this time King Richard was arrived (taking as he came a dromond, or Saracen ship, wherein were fifteen hundred soldiers, and two hundred and fiftie \* scorpions: which were to be imployed in the poisoning of Christians) and now the siege of Ptolemais more fiercely prosecuted. But all their engines made not so wide a breach in that citie walls, as envie made betwixt the French and English Kings. Yet at last the Turks despairing of succour, their victuals wholly spent, yeelded up the citie by Saladines consent, on condition to be themselves safely guarded out of it: all Christian prisoners Saladine had were to be set free, and the Croſſe to be again restored.

The houses which were left, with the spoil and prisoners, were equally divided betwixt Philip and Richard. Whereat many Noble-men, partners in the pains, no sharers in the gains, depart-

Anno  
Dom.

1191.

June  
8.July  
13.

departed in \* discontent. Some Turks for fear embrased the Christian faith, but quickly returned to their \* vomit: as Religion died in fear never long keepeth colour, but this dayes converts will be to morrows apostates. Hereupon it was comanded, that none hereafter shoule be baptizt against their wills:

Here the English cast down the Ensignes of Leopoldus Duke of Austria, which he had advanced in a principall tower in Ptolemais; and, as some say, threw them into the jakes. The Duke, though angry at heart, forgot this injury till he could remember it with advantage; and afterwards made King Richard pay soundly for this affront. It is not good to exasperate any, though farre inferiour: for, as the fable telleth us, the beetle may annoy the eagle, and the mouse befriend the lion.

When the citie was taken, it grieved the Christians not a littel that their faithfull \* correspondent, who advised them by his letters, could no where be found: Pity it was that Rahabs red lace was not tied at his window. But indeed it was probable that he was dead before the surrendring of the citie. Greater was the grief that the Croſſe did no where appear, either carelessly lost, or enviously concealed by the Turks. Whiles the Christians stormed hereat, Saladine required a longer respite for the performance of the conditions. But King Richard would not enlarge him from the strictnesse of what was concluded; conceiving this was in effect to forfeit the victory back again. Besides, he knew he did it onely to gain time to fetch new breath: and if he yeelded to him, his bountie had not been thanked, but his fear upbraided, as if he durst not denie him. Yea, in anger King Richard commanded all the Turkish captives which were in his hands, seven \* thousand in number, to be put to death (except some choice persons) on that day whereon the articles should have been but were not performed. For which fact he suffered much in his repute, branded with rashnesse and cruelty, as the murderer of many Christians: For Saladine in revenge put as many of our captives to death. On the other side the moderation of the French King was much commended, who reserving his prisoners alive, exchanged them to ransome so many Christians.

123  
\* Roger Hoveden, in Richardo I. pag. 696.

Fox, Starkey, pag. 245.

\* Hoveden, in Richardo I. pag. 694.

\* P. Amy, in Phil. Augusto, pag. 174. But Matib. Paris faict but 2600

124

## Chap. 9.

*The unseasonable returne of the King of France.*

**M**ean time the Christians were rent a funder with faction : Philip the French King, Odo Duke of Burgundie, Leopold Duke of Austria, most of the Dutch, all the Genoans and Templars siding with King Conrade; King Richard, Henry Count of Champaine, the Hospitallers, Venetians, and Pisans taking part with King Guy. But King Conrades side was much weakened with the sudden departure of the French King ; who eighteen dayes after the taking of Ptolemais returned home, pretending want of necessaries, indisposition of bodie, distemper of the climate , though the greatest distemper was in his own passions. The true cause of his departure was, partly envie, because the sound of King Richards fame was of so deep a note that it drowned his ; partly \* covetousnesse , to seise on the dominions of the Earl of Flanders lately dead, Flanders lying fitly to make a stalle for the fair palace of France. If it be true what \* some report, that Saladin bribed him to return let him for ever forfeit the surname of Augustus, and the style of The most Christian Prince.

His own soulardis disswaded him from returning, beseeching him not to stop in so glorious a race, wherein he was newly started : Saladin was already on his knees , and would probably be brought on his face, if pursued. If he played the unthrift with this golden occasion, let him not hope for another to play the good husband with. If pouteris forced his departure , King Richard \* profered him the half of all his prouisions.

All would not do : Philip persisted in his old plea, How the life of him absent would be more advantagous to the caufe, then the death of him present; and by importunitie got leave to depart, solemnly swearing not to molest the King of Englands dominions.

Thus the King of France returned in person, but remained still behind in his instructions, which he left (with his army) to the Duke of Burgundie ; to whom he prescribed both his path and his pace , where and how he shold go. And that Duke moved slowly, having no desire to advance the work where King Richard would carry all the honour. For in those actions wherein severall undertakers are compounded together, comonly the first figure for matter of credit maketh ciphers of all the rest. As for King Philip, being returned home, such was the itch of his ambition, he must be fingering of the King

Anno  
Dom.  
1191.July  
31.

\* Matthew Paris, pag. 220.

\* Speed, out of  
Hoveden, in  
Richard the  
first.\* Matthew Paris, in Ri-  
chards I., pag.  
159.April  
27.

of Englands territories, though his hands were bound by oath to the contrary.

125

## Chap. 10.

*Conrade King of Jerusalem slain : Guy ex-  
changeth his Kingdome for the Island of  
Cyprus.*

**A**bout the time of the King of France his departure, Conrade King of Jerusalem was murdered in the \* marker-place of Tyre, and his death is variously reported. Some charged our King Richard for procuring it : And though the beams of his innocency cleared his own heart, yet could they not dispell the clouds of suspicions from other mens eyes. Some say Humphred Prince of Thoron killed him, for taking Isabella his wife away from him. But the generall voice giveth it out, that two Assassins stabbed him ; whose quarrel to him was only this, That he was a Christian. These murderers being instantly put to death , \* gloried in the meritoriousnesse of their suffering, and surely were it the punishment not the caufe made martyrdome, we should be best stored with Confessours from gaols, and Martyrs from the gallows.

Conrade reigned five yeares , and left one daughter, Maria Iole, on whom the Knight-Templars bestowed princely education. And this may serve for his Epitaph,

*The Crown I never did enjoy alone ;  
Of half a Kingdome I was half a King.  
Scarce was I on, when I was off the Throne ;  
Slain by two slaves me basely murdering.  
And thus the best mans life at mercie lies  
Of wile-wretches, that their own deprise.*

His faction survived after his death, affronting Guy the anti-King, and striving to depose him. They pleaded that the Crown was tied on Guy's head with a womans fillet , which being broken by the death of his wife Queen Sibyll (who deceased of the plague with her \* children at the siege of Ptolemais ) he had no longer right to the Kingdome; they objected he was a worthless man, and unfortunate. On the other side, it was alledged for him, that to measur a mans worth by his successe, is a square often false , always uncertain. Besides , the courtesie of the world would allow him this favour, That a King should be sermel & semper, once and ever.

\* Roger Hoveden, in Ri-  
chards I., pag.  
716, saith, on  
the Calend of  
May, but Sa-  
bellicus put-  
teth it sooner.\* Amyllia, in  
Pbil. Augusto,  
pag. 179.\* Roger Hoveden, in Ri-  
chards I., pag.  
685.

126

Whilst Guy stood on these ticklish terms, King Richard made a seasonable motion, which well reliifed to the palate of this hungrie Prince, To exchange his Kingdome of Jerusalem for the Island of Cyprus; which he had redeemed from the Templars, to whom he had pawned it: And this was done accordingly to the content of both sides. And King Richard with some of his succeeding English Kings wore the title of \* Jerusalem in their style for many years after. We then dismisse King Guy, hearing him thus taking his farewell;

*I stier'd a state warre-tost against my will :  
Blame then the storm, not th' Pilots want of skill,  
That I the Kingdome lost, whose empty style  
I sold to Englands King for Cyprus Isle.  
I paſſ'd away the land I could not hold ;  
Good ground I bought, but onely aire I sold.  
Then as a happy Merchant may I sing,  
Though I must sigh as an unhappy King.*

Soon after, Guy made a ſecond change, of this world for another. But the family of the Lusignans have enjoyed Cyprus ſome hundred years: and ſince by ſome transactions it fell to the State of Venice; and lately by conqueſt, to the Turks.

## Chap. II.

*Henry of Champaigne chosen King; The noble atchievements and victories of King Richard.*

Conrade being killed and Guy gone away, Henry Earl of Champaigne was choſen King of Jerusalem by the eſpecially procuring of King Richard his uncle. To corroborate his election by ſome right of ſucceſſion, he married Isabella, the widow of King Conrade and daughter to Almerick King of Jerusalem. A Prince (as Writers report) having a ſufficient ſtock of valour in himſelf, but little happy in exprefſing it; whether for want of opportunity, or ſhortneſſe of his reigne, being moft ſpent in a truce. He more pleafed himſelf in the ſtyle of Prince of Tyre, then King of Jerusalem; as counting it more honour to be Prince of what he had, then King of what he had not.

And now the Christians began everywhere to build: The Templars fortified Gaza; King Richard repaired and walled Ptolemais, Porphyria, Joppa, and Askelon. But alas! this ſhort proſperity, like an Autumnne ſpring, came too late and was gone too ſoon to bring any fruit to maturitie.

It

\* Isabell. Eun.  
9. lib.5. p.378.

Anno

Dom.

1191.

Sep.

Calvin.

1192.

127

It was now determined they ſhould march towards Jeruſalem: for all this while they had but hit the butt; that Holy Citie was the mark they ſhot at. Richard led the vantguard of English; Duke Odo commanded in the main battel over his French; James of Avergne brought on the Flemings and Brabanters in the rere. Saladine, ſerpent-like biting the heel, assaulted the rere, not farre from Bethlehem; when the French and English wheeling about charged the Turks moft furiously. Emulation, formerly poyſon, was here a cordiall, each Christian nation ſtriving not onely to conquer their enemies, but to overcome their friends in the honour of the conqueſt. King Richard ſeeking to put his courage out of doubt, brought his judgement into queſtion, being more prodigal of his perſon then beſeemed a General. One \* wound he received, but by loſing his bloud he found his ſpirits, and laid about him like a mad-man. The Christians got the victory, without the loſſe of any of number or note, ſave James of Avergne, who here died in the bed of honour: But moſt of the Turks were ſlain then in any battel for fourty yeareſ before.

Had the Christians preſently gone to Jeruſalem, probably they might have ſurprized it, whileſt the Turks eyes were muſſled and blindfolded in the amazement of this great overthrow. But this opportunitie was loſt by the backwardneſſe and unwillingneſſe of King Richard and the English, ſay the \* French Writers. To cry quits with them, our \* English Authours impute it to the envie of the French; who would have ſo glorious an action rather left undone, then done by the English. They complain likewife of the treachery of Odo Duke of Burgundy, who more carefull of his credit then his conſcience, was choked with the shame of the finne he had swallowed, and died for grief, when his intelligence with the Turks was made known. This cannot be denied, that Saladine ſent (term them bribeſ or preſents) both to our King and the French Duke, and they received them: no wonder then if neither of them herein had a good name, when they traded with ſuch familiars. But moft hold King Richard attempted not Jeruſalem, becauſe, as a wiſe Architect, he would build his victories ſo as they might ſtand, ſecuring the countrey as he went; it being ſenſelefſe to beſiege Jeruſalem a ſtraggling citie, whileſt the Turks as yet were in poſſeſſion of all the ſea-ports and strong forts thereabout.

About this time he intercepted many camels loaden with rich commodity, thoſe Eastern wares containing much in a little. And yet of all this, and of all the treasures of England, Sicilie, and Cyprus which he brought hither, King Richard carried home nothing but one \* gold-ring: all the reſt of his wealth

\* P. Amy. in  
Ephile Angulo,  
pag. 180.

\* P. Amy.  
ibidem.  
\* Statutes  
Par. in Ri-  
chards I.  
pag. 216.

\* P. Amy.  
pag. 181.  
Exceptio hoc  
annulo nudus  
indigne.

128

wealth melted away in this hot service. He wintered in Askelon, intending next spring to have at Jerusalem.

## Chap. 12.

*The little-honourable peace King Richard made with Saladine; Of the value of Reliques.*

**B**ut bad news out of Europe shaked his steadiest resolutions, hearing how William Bishop of Ely, his Vice-roy in England, used unfeaturable insolencies over his subjects: So hard it is for one of base parentage to personate a King without overacting his part. Also he heard how the King of France and John Earl of Morton his own brother, invaded his dominions; ambition, the Pope in their belly, dispensing with their oath to the contrary. Besidess, he saw this warre was not a subject capable of valour to any purpose; the Venetians, Genoans, Pisans, and Florentines being gone away with their fleets, wisely shrinking themselves out of the collar, when they found their necks wrung with the hard imployment. Hereupon he was forced first to make the motion of ( in plain terms to begge ) peace of Saladine.

Let Saladine now alone to winne, having all the game in his own hand. Well knew he how to shoot at his own ends, and to take aim by the exigencies wherein he knew King Richard was plunged. For he had those cunning gypsies about him, who could read in King Richards face what grieved his heart; and by his intelligencers was certified of every note-worthy passage in the English armie. Upon these terms therefore or none ( beggers of peace shall never be choosers of their conditions ) a truce for three ( some say , five ) yeares might be concluded, That the Christians should demolish all places they had walled since the taking of Ptolemais; which was in effect to undo what with much charge they had done. But such was the tyrannie of King Richards occasions, forcing him to return, that he was glad to embrace those conditions he hated at his heart.

Thus the voyage of these two Kings, begun with as great confidence of the undertakers as expectation of the beholders, continued with as much courage as interchangeable of success, baned with mutual discord and emulation, was ended with some honour to the undertakers, no \* profit either to them or the Christian cause. Some farre-setched dear-bought honour they got; especially King Richard, who eternized his memory in Aifa: whom if men forget, horses will remember; the Turks using

\* P. Amyl.  
pag. 181.  
Tanto duc-  
rum regum  
conatu nihil  
actum.

Anno  
Dom.  
1192.

using to say to their horses when they started for fear, Dost thou think King Richard is here? Profit they got none, losing both of them the hair of their heads in an acute disease; which was more faith \* one, then both of them got by the voyage.

They left the Christians in Syria in worse case then they found them: as he doth the benighted traveller a discourtesie rather then a kindnesse, who lendeth him a lantern to take it away, leaving him more masked then he was before.

And now a little to solace my self and the Reader with a mery digression, after much sorrow and sad storfes; King Richard did one thing in Palestine which was worth all the cost and pains of his journey, namely, He redeemed from the Turks a chest full of holy Reliques ( which they had gotten at the taking of Jerusalem ) so great, as \* four men could scarce carry any way. And though some know no more then Esop's cock how to prise these pearls, let them learn the true value of them from the Romane jewellers. First, they must carefully distinguish between publick and private Reliques: In private ones some forgery may be suspected, lest quid be put for quo; which made St. Augustine put in that wary parenthesis, *Si tamen Martyrum*, If so be they be the Reliques of Martyrs. But as for publick ones approved by the Pope, and kept in Churches ( such no doubt as these of King Richards were ) Oh let no Christian be such an infidel as to stagger at the truth thereof! If any object, That the head of the same Saint is shewed at severall places: the whole answer is by a \* Synecdoche, That a part is put for the whole. As for the common exception against the Croffe, That so many severall pieces thereof are shown, which put together would break the back of Simon of Cyrene to bear them; it is answere, *Disfrabitur, non diminuitur*, and like the loaves in the Gospel, it is miraculoously multiplied in the dividing. If all these fail, \* Baronius hath a rafour shaveth all scruple clear away: For, faith he, *Quicquid sit, fides purgat facinus*: So that he worshippeth the false Reliques of a true Saint, God taketh his good intention in good worth, though he adore the hand of Esau for the hand of Jacob. But enough of these fooleries.

\* Daniel,  
pag. 100.

\* Math. Pa-  
rif. in Rich. I.  
pag. 222.

\* In lib. De  
op. r. Mon.  
cap. 28.

\* Bellarm. Do-  
Reliq. cap. 4.

\* Annales Eccl.  
in anno 226.

130

## Chap. 12.

*King Richard taken prisoner in Austria; sold and sent to the Emperour; dearly ransomed, returneth home.*

**K**ing Richard setting sail from Syria, the sea and wind favoured him till he came into the Adriatick; and on the coasts of Istria he suffered shipwreck: Wherefore he intended to pierce through Germany by land, the next way home. But the nearnesse of the way is to be measured not by the shorthenesse but the safenesse of it.

He disguised himself to be one Hugo a merchant, whose only commodite was himself, whereof he made but a bad bargain. For he was discovered in an inne in Austria, because he disguised his person not his expenses; so that the very policy of an hostesse, finding his purse so far above his clothes, did detect him: Yea, faith mine Author, *Facies orbis terrarum nota, ignorari non potuit.* The rude people flocking together used him with insolencies unworthy him, worthy themselves: and they who would shake at the tail of this loole Lion, durst laugh at his face now they saw him in a grate. Yet all the weight of their cruetie did not bow him beneath a Princely carriage.

Leopoldus Duke of Austria hearing hereof, as being Lord of the foil, seised on this Royall stray; meaning now to get his peny-worts out of him, for the affront done unto him in Palestine.

Not long after the Duke sold him to Henry the Emperour, for his harsh nature surnamed *Aifer*; and it might have been *Savas*, being but one degree from a tyrant. He kept King Richard in bands, charging him with a thousand faults committed by him in Sicily, Cyprus, and Palestine. The proofs were as slender as the crimes grosse; and Richard having an eloquent tongue, innocent heart, and bold spirit, acquitted himself in the judgement of all the hearers. At last he was \* ransomed for an hundred and fourty thousand marks, Cullen weight. A summe so vast in that age, before the Indies had overflowed all Europe with their gold and silver, that to raise it in England they were forced to sell their Church-plate to their very chalices. Whereupon out of most deep Divinity it was concluded, That they should not celebrate the Sacrament in \* glasse, for the brittleness of it; nor in wood, for the spongingnesse of it, which would suck up the bloud; nor in alchymie, because that was subject to rusting; nor in copper, because that would provoke vomitting;

\* Matib. Par. in Ricb. I.

\* Lindwood, Lib. 1. De summa Tri. fol. 6.

Anno

Dom.

1192.

Oktob.

8.

Decem.

20.

Decem.

20.

131

vomiting; but in chalices of latten, which belike was a metall without exception. And such were used in England for some hundred years after: untill at last John Stafford Archibishop of Canterbury, when the land was more replenished with silver, inknotte that Priest in the greater excommunication that should consecrate *Poculum stanneum.* After this money \* Peter of Bloys (who had drunk as deep of Helicon as any of that age) sendeth this good prayer, making an apostrophe to the Emperour, or to the Duke of Austria, or to both together:

*Bibe nunc, avaritia,  
Dum putes argenteos  
Larga diffundit Anglia,  
Tua tecum pecunia  
Sit in perditionem.*

And now, thou basest avarice,  
Drink till thy belly burst,  
Whil'st England poures large silver showres  
To satiate thy thirst.  
And this we pray, Thy money may  
And thou be like accurst.

The ransome partly payed, the rest secured by hostages, King Richard much befriended by the Dutch Prelacie, after eighteen moneths imprisonment returned into England. The Archibishop of Cullen in the presence of King Richard, as he passed by, brought in these words in saying Maffe, *Now I know that God hath sent his angel, and hath delivered thee out of the hand of Herod, and from the expectation of the people, &c.* But his foul was more healthfull for this bitter physick, and he amended his manners; better loving his \* Queen Beringaria, whom he slighted before: As fouldiers too often love women better than their wives.

Leave we him now in England, where his presence fixed the loyalty of many of his unfeated subjects, whilst in Austria the Duke with his money built the walls of Vienna: So that the best stones and morter of that bulwark of Christendome are behoden to the English coin. We must not forget how Gods judgements over-took this Duke, punishing his dominions with fire and water, which two Elements cannot be Kings but they must be tyrants; by famine, the eares of wheat turned into worms; by a gangrene, seising on the Dukes body, who cut off his leg with his own hand, and died thereof: Who by his testament (if not by his will) caused some thousand crowns to be restored again to King Richard.

\* Elegium a Chronicle cited by Fox, Martyrol in Ricb. I.  
\* Epist. 57.

\* Speed, in Ricb. I.

132

## Chap. 14.

*The death of Saladine, His commendation, even with truth, but almost above belief.*

Soon after, Saladine the terror of the East ended his life, having reigned sixteen years. Consider him as a man, or a Prince, he was both wayes admirable.

Many Historians (like some painters, which rather shew their skill in drawing a curious face, then in making it like to him whom it should resemble) describe Princes rather what they should be, then what they were; not shewing so much their goodnesse, as their own wits. But finding this Saladine so generally commended of all Writers, we have no cause to distrust this his true character.

His wisdome was great, in that he was able to advise, and greater, in that he was willing to be advised: Never so wedded to his own resolues, but on good ground he would be divorced from them. His valour was not over-free, but would well answer the spurre when need required. In his victories he was much beholden to the advantage of season, place, and number; and seldom wreted the garland of honour from an arm as strong as his own. He ever marched in person into the field, remembraing that his predecessors, the Caliphs of Egypt, brake themselves by using Factours, and employing of Souldans. His temperance was great, diet sparing, sleep moderate, not to pamper nature, but keep it in repair. His greatest recreation was variety and exchange of work. Pleasures he rather sipp'd then drank off, sometimes, more to content others then please himself. Wives he might have kept sans number, but stimed himself to one or two, using them rather for posterity then wantonnesse. His justice to his own people was remarkable; his promise with his enemies generally well kept. Much he did triumph in mercy: Fierce in fighting, mild in conquering; and having his enemies in his hand, pleased himself more in the power then act of revenge. His liberalitie would have drained his treasure, had it not had a great and quick spring, those Eastern parts being very rich. Serviceable men he would purchase on any rate, and sometimes his gifts bare better proportion to his own greatness then the receivers deserts. Vast bribes he would give to have places betrayed unto him, and often effected that with his gold which he could not do with his steel. Zealous he was in his own religion, yet not violent against Christians *qua* Christians. Scholarship cannot be ex-

Anno  
Dom.  
1193.1193.  
Febr.  
16.

133

pected in him who was a Turk by his birth (amongst whom it is a finne to be learned) and a souldier by breeding. His humilitie was admirable, as being neither ignorant of his greatnessse, nor over-knowing it. He provided to have no solemnities at his funerals; and ordered that before his corife a black cloth should be carried on the top of a spear, and this proclaimed, \* *Saladine Conquerour of the East had nothing left him but this black skirt to attend him to the grave.*

Some entile him as descended from the Royall Turkish blood: Which flattering Heralds he will little thank for their pains; counting it most honour, that he being of mean parentage, was the first founder of his own Nobilitie. His stature (for one of that nation) was tall. His person rather cut out to strike fear then win love; yet could he put on amiableness when occasion required, and make it besem him. To conclude; I will not be so bold, to do with him as an Eastern Bishop doth with Plato and Plutarch, whom he commendeth in a Greek hymn to Christ, as thofe that came nearest to holinesse of all untaught Gentiles: (Belike he would be our Saviours remembrancer, and put him in mind to take more especiall notice of them at the day of Judgement.) But I will take my farewell of Saladine with that commendation I find of him, \* He wanted nothing to his eternall happinessse, but the knowledge of Christ.

\* *Sabell. Enn.*  
9 lib. 1 pag.  
378.

\* *Jean Es-  
chetonis,  
jampidem  
etonic Greec  
editus.*

\* *Sabell. Enn.*  
9 lib. 5. pag.  
378.

## Chap. 15.

*Discords amongst the Turks; The miserable death of Henry King of Jerusalem.*

1194.

Saladine left nine (some say, twelve) sonnes, making Saphradine his brother over-seer of his will: Who of a turour turned a traitour, and murdered them all excepting one, called also Saphradine, Sultan of Aleppo; who, not by his uncles pitie, but by the favour and support of his fathers good friends was preferred. Hence arose much intestine discord amongst the Turks; all which time the Christians enjoyed their truce with much quiet and security.

1195.

Not long after, Henry King of Jerusalem, as he was walking in his palace to solace himself, fell down out of a window, and brake his neck. He reigned three years. But as for the particular time he died on, I find it not specified in any Author.

\* *Continuator  
Vr. in annos  
1195. Et Al.  
Paris. in eo-  
dem.*

S 3

Chap.

134

## Chap. 16.

*Almerick the second, King of Jerusallem; The great army of the Dutch adventurers doeth little in Syria.*

After his death, Almerick Lusignan, brother to King Guy, was in the right of his wife crowned King of Jerusallem: For he married Isabella the Relict of Henry the last King. This Ladie was four times married: first, to Humphred Prince of Thorone; then to the three successive Kings of Jerusallem, Conrade, Henry, and this Almerick. He was also King of Cyprus; and the Christians in Syria promised themselves much aid from the vicinitie of that Island. But though he was neare to them, he was farre from helping them, making pleasure all his work; being an idle, lazy, worthless Prince. But I trespass on that politick rule, Of Princes we must speak the best, or the least; if that be not intended, when the truth is so late that danger is entailed upon it.

In his time, Henry Emperour of Germanie, indited by his conscience for his crueltie against King Richard, seeking to perfume his name in the nostrils of the world, which began to be unsavoury, set on foot another voyage to the Holy Land. Pope Celestine the third sent his Legates about to promote this service, shewing how God himself had founded the alarm by the disfention of the Turks: Jerusallem now might be wonne with the blows of her enemies; onely an army must be sent, not so much to conquer as to receive it. Generall of the Pilgrimes was Henry Duke of Saxonie; next him, Frederick Duke of Austria, Herman Landgrave of Thuringia, Henry Palatine of Rhene, Conrade Archbithop of Mentz, Conrade Archbithop of Wirtzburg, the Bishops of Breme, Halberstadt, and Regenpurg; with many more Prelates; so that here was an Episcopall armie, which might have served for a nationall Synode: Insomuch that one truly might here have seen the Church Militant. We have no ambition, saith one of their countrey-men, to reckon them up, for they were *plurimi & nulli*, many in number, none in their actions.

Some of these soouldiers were employed by Henry the Emperour ( who knew well to bake his cake with the Churches feuel ) to subdue his rebels in Apulia. This done, they passed through Grecia, and found there better entertainment then some of their predecessours. Hence by shipping they were conveyed into Syria: Here they brake the\* truce made by King Richard,

\* Utrp. Chro.  
in anno 1197.  
pag. 304.

\* Utrp. at  
priu.

Anno

Dom.

Civ.

1196

1197.

1197.

1198.

1199.

135

Richard, ( it seemeth by this, it was the last five years ) the Pope dispensing therewith; who can make a peace, nets to hold others, but a cobweb for himself to break through. The citie Berytus they quickly wan, and as quickly lost. For Henry the Emperour suddenly died, the root which nourished this voyage, and then the branches withered. Henry also Duke of Saxonie, Generall of this army, was slain. And Conrade Archbithop of Mentz, one of the Electours, would needs return home to the choice of a new Emperour, knowing he could more profitably use his voice in Germany then his arms in Syria. Other Captains secretly stole home, and when their soouldiers would have fough, their \* Captains ran away. And whereas in other Expeditions we find *vestigia paucia retrosum*, making such clean work that they left little or no reversions; of this voyage many safely returned home with whole bodies and wounded credirs.

\* Baron. An-  
nal. Eccl. in  
anno 1197.

\* Pastat, De  
vir. illus.  
Germ. in vita  
S. Martin.

\* Knoll, Turk.  
Hist. pag. 74.

\* Magdebur-  
gen, Lest.  
121. cap. 16.  
sub finem.

\* Knoll, ac  
priu.

Chap,

Richard, ( it seemeth by this, it was the last five years ) the Pope dispensing therewith; who can make a peace, nets to hold others, but a cobweb for himself to break through. The citie Berytus they quickly wan, and as quickly lost. For Henry the Emperour suddenly died, the root which nourished this voyage, and then the branches withered. Henry also Duke of Saxonie, Generall of this army, was slain. And Conrade Archbithop of Mentz, one of the Electours, would needs return home to the choice of a new Emperour, knowing he could more profitably use his voice in Germany then his arms in Syria. Other Captains secretly stole home, and when their soouldiers would have fough, their \* Captains ran away. And whereas in other Expeditions we find *vestigia paucia retrosum*, making such clean work that they left little or no reversions; of this voyage many safely returned home with whole bodies and wounded credirs.

The rest that remained fortified themselves in Joppa. And now the feast of S. Martin was come, the Dutch their Arch-Saint. This man being a Germane by birth, and Bishop of Tours in France, was eminent for his \* hospitality; and the Dutch badly imitating their countrey-man, turn his charity to the poore into riot on themselves, keeping the eleventh of November ( I will not say holy-day, but ) feast-day. At this time the spring-tide of their mirth so drowned their souls; that the \* Turks coming in upon them, cut every one of their throats, to the number of twentie thousand: and quickly they were stabb'd with the sword that were cup-shot before. A day which the Dutch may well write in their Kalendars in red letters died with their own bloud; when their camp was their shambles, the Turks their butchers, and themselves the Martinmasse-beeves: from which the beastly drunkards differ but a little.

The citie of Joppa the Turks rased to the ground; and of this victory they became so proud, that they had thought without stop to have driven the Christians quite out of Syria. But by the coming of \* Simond Count of Montford ( a most valiant and expert Captain, sent thither by Philip the French King with a regiment of tall soouldiers, at the instance of Innocent the third, that succeeded Celestine in the Papacie ) and by civil discord then reigning amongst the Turks themselves for sovereigntie, their fury was repressed, and a peace betwixt them and the Christians concluded for the space of ten years: During which time the Turks promised not to molest the Christians in Tyre or Ptolmais. Which peace so concluded, the worthy Count returned with his soouldiers into France.

\* Baron. An-  
nal. Eccl. in  
anno 1197.

\* Pastat, De  
vir. illus.  
Germ. in vita  
S. Martin.

\* Knoll, Turk.  
Hist. pag. 74.

\* Magdebur-  
gen, Lest.  
121. cap. 16.  
sub finem.

\* Knoll, ac  
priu.

136

## Chap. 17.

*A Crufado for the Holy Land diverted by the Pope to Constantinople; They conquer the Grecian Empire.*

**T**HIS truce notwithstanding, another army of Pilgrimes was presently provided for Syria: The Terrarchs whereof were Baldwin Earl of Flanders, Dandalo the Venetian Duke, Theobald Earl of Champaigne, Boniface Marquesse of Montferrat, with many other Nobles.

Leave we them a while taking the citie of Jadera in Istria for the Venetians. Meantime if we look over into Greece, we shall find Itaac Angelus the Emperour deposed, thrust into prison, his eyes put out (the punishment there in fashion) so that he ended his dayes before he ended his life, by the crueltie of Alexius Angelus his brother, who succeeded him.

Bur young Alexius, Isaac Angelus his sonne, with some Grecian Noble-men, came to the Courts of most Western Princes to beg assistance to free his father and expell the tyrant. He so deported himself, that each gesture was a net to catch mens good will; not seeking their favour by losing himself, but though he did bow, he would not kneel: so that in his face one might reade a pretty combat betwixt the beams of majestic and cloud of adversitie. To see a Prince in want, would move a misers charity. Our Western Princes tended his case, which they counted might be their own; their best right lying at the mercy of any stronger usurper. Young Alexius so dressed his meat, that he pleased every mans palate; promising for their succours to disingage the French from their debts to the Venetian; promising the Venetian satisfaction for the wrongs done them by the Grecians; and bearing the Pope in hand he would reduce the Eastern Churches into his subjection: things which he was little \* able to perform. But well may the statute of Bankrupt be sued out against him who cannot be rich in promises. These his fair proffers prevailed so farre, that the Pope commanded, and other Princes consented, that this armie of Pilgrimes levied for the Holy Land, should be employed against the usurping Grecian Emperour. Many taxed his Holinesse for an unjust steward of the Christian forces, to expend them against the Grecians, which were to be laid out against the Infidels: Especially now when Palestine, through the dissention of the Turks, offered it self into the Christians arms to be regained. Others thought the Pope took the right method; because

Anno  
Dom.  
1202.

1202.

1203.

July

17.

1204.

April

21.

he

he which should winne Jerusalem must begin at Constantinople: And by this warre the Grecian Empire, which was the bridge to Syria, would be made good, and secured for the passage of Pilgrimes. The soouldiers generally rejoiced at the exchange of their service: for the barren warres in Syria starved the undertakers; and a cook himself cannot lick his fingers where no meat is dressed. There nothing but naked honour was to be gotten, here honour clothed with spoile; the usurpers treasure would make brave scrambling amongst them: And it was good plowing up of that ground which had long lien fallow.

Setting sail from Jadera (which citie they had subdued to the Venetian, forcing them to pay three thousand \* cony-skins yearly for tribute to that State) like good fencers they strook at the head, and made for Constantinople: Which they quickly took after some hot skirmishes. Alexius Angelus the usurper, with his wife whores, and treasure, fled away. Blind Isaacs Angelus was fetched out of prison; he and young Alexius his sonne saluted joyned Emperours. Which brittle honour of theirs was quickly broken: For soon after the father died, being brought into an open place, kept before in a close pent dungeon; and having long fasted from good aire, he now got his death by surfeiting on it. His sonne was villainously strangled by Alexius Ducas, called from his beetle-brow Murphisplus: One of base parentage, who was tumultuously chosen Emperour by the people. This Ducas offered some affronts to the Latines which lay before Constantinople in their ships. Wherefore, and also because they were not payed for their former service, they the second time assaulted the citie, and took it by main force; killing none, but robbing all; ravishing women, and using a thousand infolencies. Some fled for their succour to the shrines of Saints: But the Sanctuaries needed sanctuaries to protect themselves; the soouldiers as little respecting place, as formerly age or sex: not standing on any reverence to the Saints, they stood upon them, making foottooles of their images and statues.

Nicetas Choniates, hitherto an historian, now a plaintiff, (writing so full of ohs and exclamations as if the while pinched by the arm) rather without measure then cause bemoneth the outrages the Latines here committed. Poore man! all the miseries our Saviour speaketh of in a siege, met in him: His flight from Constantinople was in the winter, on the \* Sabbath-day, his wife being great with child. But when the object is too neare the eye, it seemeth greater then it is: and perchance he amplifieth and aggravateth the cruelty of these Pilgrimes, being nearly interested therein himself; especially when the rhetorick

137

\* Blondt,  
lib 6. Decad.  
2 pag. 170.

\* In libello  
eius titulus,  
Status Con-  
stantinopolis,  
S. 1. pag. 637.

138

\* Servorum  
hic dies est,  
Lif. lib. 1.  
Satur. cap. 1.

rick of grief is always in the *Hyperbole*. Nor is it any news for souldiers to be so insolent when they take a citie by assault; which time is their \* *Saturnalia*, when servants themselves do command, acknowledging no other leader or captain then their own passions.

Within a twelve-moneth all Greece was subdued save only Adrianople: Baldwine Earl of Flanders chosen Emperour; Thomas Maurocenus elected first Latine Patriarch in Constantinople; Boniface Marquesse of Montferrat made King of Thessalie; Geoffrey of Troy, a Frenchman, Prince of Achaea and Duke of Athens: the Venetians got many rich Islands in the Egean and Ionian seas: So that one could not now see the Grecian Empire for Empires. It was now expected that they should have advanced hence into Palestine: But here having well feathered their nests, they were loth to fly any further. And now no wonder if the Christians affairs in Palestine were weak and lean, the Pope diverting the meat that should feed them another way.

## Chap. 18.

*The Pope sendeth an armie of Croises against the Albingenes. Three severall opinions concerning that fact.*

Pope Innocent the third having lately learned the trick of employing the army of Pilgrimes in-by-services, began now to let up a trade thereof. For two yeares after he levied a great number of them, whom he sent against the Albingenes in France. These were reputed heretics, whom his Holinesse intended to root out with all crueltie; that good shepherd knowing no other way to bring home a wandering sheep then by worrying him to death. He fully and freely promised the undertakers the self-same Pardons and Indulgences as he did to those who went to conquer the Holy Land, and very conscientiously requested their aid only for fourtie dayes, hoping to chop up these Albingenes at a bit. Though herein he was deceived, and they stuck in his and his successours teeth for fifty years together. The place being nearer, the service shorter, the work less, the wages the same with the voyage into Syria, many entred themselves in this imployment, and neglected the other.

We will trace this armie by their footsteps, and our penne must

Anno  
Dom.  
1206.

April  
24.  
crown'd  
May  
16.

1306.

139

must wair on their swords: And I hope that his Holiness, who absolved many of their vows from Palestine, and committed them into a journey into France, will also of his goodniesse dispense with my veniall digression herein, in prosecuting their actions. Yea, indeed, I need not his dispensation, being still resident on my own subject, this also being styled, *The Holy Warre, The Warre for the Crucifix, The Army of the Church;* the souldiers also bearing the badge of the Croffe on their coat-armour.

But first let us throughly examine what these Albingenes were, and what they held: a question that will quit the cost in studying it.

They were a younger house of the Waldenses, and branched from them; not different in doctrine, but later in time, and distant in place: so called from the countrey Albigeois in France, where they lived.

I find three grand different opinions of Authours concerning them:

First, Some make them to have been very monsters in life and doctrine, so that the heaviest punishment was too light for them. And this is the generall voice of most Writers in that age, and all Romanists in our dayes.

Secondly, Others clean contrary hold, That these Waldenses ( for I make them and the Albingenes *synonyma*, as \* others have done ) were only the true Church of God in that age, whilst all others being corrupted with abominable superstition, were no true Church at all. These alone were Gods Virgins, his Witneses in sackcloth, his Woman in the wildernes, his fealed ones, his seven thousand whose knees were not suppled with the Baalisme of that age. This is the expresse opinion of some strict Protestants; and of some who speak it not out, yet mutter it to themselves.

Thirdly, A third sort \* explode this opinion, as trespassing on Divine providence; that God who neither slumbereth nor sleepeth, should be in so long a lethargie as to suffer hell to eat up his heaven on earth for so many yeares together, leaving no true Church but so small a company of such simple people. They conceive that the maintainers hereof engage themselves in a labyrinth of difficulties, hanging too great a weight on so slender a string, in making such an handfull of men the only Church for so long continuance. More moderately therefore they hold, That these Albingenes were a purer part of the Church; and though guilty of some errors ( as there must be a dawning before the day ) and charged with more, yet they maintained the same \* doctrine in ore, which since Luthers time was refined: So that the main bodie of the Church visible at

\* *Jo. Paul.*  
*Verin. De Al-*  
*bing. lib. 1. c 1.*

\* *D. Field,* of  
*the church,*  
*lib. 3. cap. 8.*

We acknow-

ledge them  
( wie Wic-  
kliffe, Husse,  
Hierome  
of Prague,  
etc.) to have  
been the wor-  
thy servants  
of God, and ho-  
ly Martyrs &  
Confessours,  
suffering in  
the cause of  
Christ against  
Antichrist; yet  
do we not  
think that the  
Church of  
God was  
found only  
in them.

\* *D white,* in  
*his Reply to*  
*Fisher, pag.*  
*104, 105.*

The Walden-  
ses mainained  
ed the same  
doctrine in  
substance  
with the mo-  
dern Protes-  
tants.

140

this time was much in dilapidations, whilst the Albingenses, as an innermost chapell thereof, was best in repair.

Let the Reader choose the probablest opinion when he hath perused the evidences of all sides; which we will now produce, deducing the historie of these Albingenses from their first originall.

## Chap. 19.

*The beginning of the Albingenses; Their dispersion, persecution, increase, names, and nick-names.*

**A**bout the yeare 1160, Peter Waldo a merchant of Lyons, rich in substance and learning (for a lay-man) was walking and talking with his friends, when one of them suddenly fell down dead. Which lively spectacle of mans mortalitie so impressed the soul of this Waldo, that instantly he resolved on a strict reformation of his life: Which to his power he performed; translating some books of the Bible; instructing such as reformed to him in godliness of life; teaching without, That Purgatorie, Masses, dedication of Temples, worshipping of Saints, prayers for the dead, were inventions of the devil, and snares of avarice; That Monkerie was a stinking carrion, the Church of Rome the Whore of Babylon, the Pope that Antichrist Paramount: He sharply lanced the vitiuous ulcers of Clergie-mens lives, reproving their pride and luxury. Soon got he many followers, both because noveltie is a forcible loadstone, and because he plentifullly relieved his poore disciples; and those that use that trade shall never want custome.

The Archishop of Lyons hearing such doctrines broched as were high treason against the Triple crown, ferreted Waldo and his sectaries out of Lyons and the countrey thereabouts. But persecution is the bellows of their Gospel, to blow every spark into a flame. This their division proved their multiplication. Some fled into the Alpes, living there on so steep hills, and in so deep holes, that their enemies were afraid to climbe or dive after them. Here they had the constant companie of the snow: And as it by the height of the hills was protected from the sun-beams, so they from the scorching of persecution, even to Luthers time. Others fled into Picardy, Flanders, England, Alsatia, Bohemia, \*Bulgaria, Croatia, Hungaria, and whither not? the perfume of the Popes presence not keeping this sup-

\* Mattb. Pa-  
rif. in Hen. 3.  
in anno 1163.

Anno  
Dom.  
1206

1206

141

posed vermine out of Italy it self. Many of them were cruelly massacred, five and thirty Burgesse of Mayence burned at Bingen in one fire, eighteen at Mayence, fourtyscore at Strafsburg at the instance of the Bishop thereof. But Martyrs ashes are the best compost to manure the Church: for others were wonne to their opinion, by beholding their constancy and patience. Strange that any should fall in love with that profession, whose professours were so miserable! But truth hath always a good face, though often but bad clothes.

They were called by sundry names; Sometimes from the places where they lived: As from Albigeois, Tholose, Lyons, Picardy, Bohemia, Albingenses, Tholouians, Lyonists, Picards, Bohemians. Sometimes from their principall Paftour: As from Waldo, Joseph, Henry, Esperon, Arnold, Waldenses, Josephists, Henricians, Esperonites, Arnolids. In England they were termed Lolards, from \*Lolard their teacher; not as some Friar descanteth, *quaſi Loliū in area Domini*. It appeareth not whether they were thus called of others, or called themselves. But grant the latter: and if any object, That they seemed alledged of Christ their first godfather, who gave them the name of Christians, thus to denominate themselves from their teachers; I answer, It is the ſame the Papifts do, calling themſelves Benedictines, Dominicane, Franciscane, &c. from the founders of their Order.

They had also nick-names; called, First, Poore men of Lyons: not because they chose to be poore, but could not choose but be poore, being stripped out of all their goods: And why ſhould the Friars glory be this peoples shame? they mocking at povertie in others, which they count meritorious in themſelves. Secondly, Patarenians; that is, Sufferers, whose backs were anvils for others to beat on. Thirdly, Turlupins; that is, Dwellers with wolves, (and yet might they be Gods ſheep) being forced to flee into woods. Fourthly, likewife they were called Sicars; that is, Cut-purses. Fifthly, *Fraterculi*; that is, Shifters. Sixthly, *Insabbathæ*; that is, Observers of no Sabbath. Seventhly, Pasagene, that is, Wanderers. As also Arians, Manicheans, Adamites (how justly will appear afterwards.) Yea, ſcarce was there an arrow in all the quiver of malice which was not ſhot at them.

\* Jo. Paul.  
Perin. His.  
Waldensib. cap. 3.

T 3

Chap.

I42

Chap. 20.

*The Albingenses their answer, confessing some, denying most crimes laid to their charge; Com- mendations their adversaries give them.*

\* Reinerius,

\* Claudio  
Rubis, History  
Lyons, p. 362.

\* In his 66.  
Homily on the  
Articles.

Come we now to the full and foul indictment wherewith these Albingeneses are charged: That they gave no reverence to \* holy places; rejected the baptism of infants; held that temporal power was grounded in grace; that it was a meritorious work to persecute the Priests of Rome and their subjects: With the Adamites they went naked (an affront to nature;) with the Manicheans they made two first causes, God of good, the devil of evil; held community of all things, even of wives amongst them; were \* sorcerers and conjurers ( pretending to command the devil, when they most obeyed him) guilty of incest, buggery, and more unnatural finnes, whereby men (as it were) run backward to hell.

No whit affrighted with this terrible accusation, many late writers dare be their advocates to defend them, though confessing them guilty of some of these, but not in so high and hainous a manner as they are accused.

True it is, because most in that age ranne riot in adoring of Churches (as if some inherent sanctity was cieled to their roof, or plaistered to their walls; yea, such as might more ingratiate with God the persons and prayers of people there assembled) the Waldenses (out of that old error not yet worn out, That the best way to straighten what is crooked, is to over-bow it) denied Churches that relative holiness and fit reverence due unto them. Baptisme of infants they refused not (though \*S. Bernard, taking it rather from the rebound then first rise, chargeth them therewith) but onely deferred it till it might be administered by one of their own Ministers; their tender consciences not digesting the Popish baptisme, where clear water by Gods ordinance, was by mans additions made a salve or plaster. That dominion was founded in grace, seemeth to be their verrey opinion: Yea, it hangeth as yet in the Schools on the file, and is not taken off, as a thing disputable, finding many favourers. But grant it a great error (for wicked men shall be arraigned before God, not as usurpers, but as tyrants; not for not having right, but not right using the creatures) yet herein they proceeded not so farre as the Papists now-a-dayes, to unthrone and depose excommunicated Princes: So that they who do most, have least cause to accuse them. That they spoke too homely  
and

Ann  
Dom  
I 206

1206

1206

Book III. the *Holy Warre.* K. Almerick 2. Chap. 20.

*Anno  
Domini  
MDCCLXVI.*  
and cursely of the Romish Priests, inveighing too bitterly and uncharitably against them, condemning all for some, may perchance be proved: And no wonder if they spake ill of those from whom they felt ill. But take their speeches herein, as the words of men upon the rack, forced from them by the extremitie of cruell usage.

In these errors the Albingenses hope to find favorit, if men consider. First, the ignorance of the age they lived in: It is no news to stumble in the dark. Secondly, the frailtie (that squire of the bodie) attending on mans nature; yea, he shall be immortal: who liveth till he be stoned by one without fault. Thirdly, the errors themselves, which are rather in the out-limbes then vitals of religion. And it may be conceived they might have been reclaimed, if used with gentle means, not catechized with fire and fagot, it being a true rule, That mens consciences are more moved with leading then dragging or drawing.

But the sting of the indictment is still behind in the tail or end thereof; charging them with such hainous errors in doctrine, and vices in life: All which the patrones for the defendants <sup>do</sup> deny and desie, as coyned out of the mint of their enemies malice.

It will be objected, If denying the fact might serve the turn, we should have no malefactors: This therefore is but a poore plea, barely to denie, when that such clouds of witnessies are against them. And grant they have a few straggling writers, or some sleeping records which may seem to acquit them, what are one or two men ( though suppose them giants ) against a whole armie?

To this I find it answered for the Albingenes, That it hath been the constant practise of the Romish writers, alwayes to defame those that differ from them, especially if they handle too roughly the *Noli me tangere* of the Popes supremacie. In later times what aspersions, as false as foul, have \* Cochleus and \* Bolsecus laid on Luther and Calvyn? Now how fearless will they be to steal at midnight, who dare thus rob men of their good name at noon-day? When such Authours as these lie with a witnessse, yea, with many \* witnessses, who could disprove them; no wonder if they take libertie falsly to accuse the Albingenes, conceiving themselves out of the reach of confutation, writing in such an age when all the Counsel is on their own side, being plaintiffs, and none assigned for the defendants.

Secondly, I find they produce the authentick copies ( such as are above their enemies calumnies ) of the Catechismes, Apologies, Remonstrances of these Albingenes; wherein the distilled

14

\* *Bishop Jen-  
et, Apologeti-  
ca, 1. cap. 1;  
divisi.* Waldo  
and the rest, for  
ought we  
know, and I  
believe (scit-  
ting malice  
aside) for  
ought you  
know, were  
godly men.  
Their great-  
est error was  
that they  
complained of  
the disso-  
lute and vice-  
ous lives of  
the Clergymen.  
• *In vita  
Lutheri.*  
• *In vita  
Calvini.*  
• Solidly con-  
tuted by D.  
Whitaker.  
• *Divisus Ec-  
clesiae, cap. 15;*  
Out of Mc-  
Clellan,  
Sleidan, Gry-  
neus, Beza,  
etc., with some

144

stilled doctrine of the Protestants is delivered free from Manicheism, or any other heresie fatered upon them.

Thirdly, their enemies flanders plainly appear in some particulars; which justly shaketh the credit of the whole accusation. For whereas they are charged with the Adamites willingly to have gone naked, we find them rather *nudati then nudi*, forced thereunto by the Popes Legate: Who being about to take the citie of Carcassone in France, where these people most swarmed, he would not grant them their lives but on this condition, That both males and females should go forth and passe by his army stark-naked. Argued it not a very foul stomach in him who could feed his eyes with contentment on such a sight, which otherwise would more deeply have wounded the modestie of the beholder then of the doers, who did it by compulsion? See now how justly these innocents are charged! As well may the Israelites be blamed for cruelty to themselves, in putting out their own eyes, when they were commanded to do it by the merciflesse Ammonite.

Lastly, they are cleared by the testimonies of their very enemies; and who knoweth not, but such a witness is equivalent to a generall consent: For those, who, when bemadded with anger, most rave and rage against them, yet *per lucida intervalla*, in their cold-blood, when their words are indited from their judgements, not passions, do most sufficiently acquit them from these accusations.

Reinerius, a Jacobine Monk, and a cruel Inquisitor of the Waldenses, testified, \*That they lived justly before men, and believed all things well of God, and held all the Articles contained in the Creed; only they blasphemed the Romish Church, and hated it.

Claudius de Seissell Archbishop of Turin confesseth, As touching their life and manners they were found and unreprouable, without scandal amongst men, giving themselves (to their power) to the obseruation of the commandments of God.

King Lewis the twelfth of France being throughly informed of the faith and life of the Waldenses in his time, bound it with an oath, That they were better men then he or his people. The same King having killed many of those poore people, and having called the place where they lived, *Vallis meretricia*, for their painted and dissembled piety, upon better instructions changed the name, calling it from himself, \* *The vale of Lewis*.

William de Belai Lieutenant of Piemont gave this commendation of the Merindolites (a sprig which some hundred yeares after sprouted from the Waldenses) \* That they were a laborious people, averse from suits, bountifull to the poore, duly paying their Princes tributes and Lords dues, serving God with

\* So witnesseth Peter De valle Sartensis, being himself a Monk, and lately printed (anno 1615) in Paris. See Rivel 02 Genesis, pag. 138.

\* Gited by Fox in his Mar. 1590. pag. 232.

\* Thuanus. tom. 2. lib. 27. pag. 15.

\* I dem. tom. 10 lib. 6. pag. 188.

Anno  
Dom.  
1206.

with daily prayers, and shewing forth much innocencie in manners.

Thuanus, one that writeth truth with a steady hand, jogged neither by Romanists nor Huguenots, thus charactereth the Con-waldenses, a stemme of that stock we speak of: They used raw pelts clapped about them for their clothes, the fourfeet whereof served in stead of buttons; all equal in povertie; having no beggers amongst them; their diet on deer and milkyet was there scarce any amongst them but could reade and write handilomely, understand the Bible, and sing Psalms; scarce a boy, but could presently and by heart give an account of his faith. Tribune they payed very religiouly, &c.

More might be added, but I end all with Gamaliels words; \* If this work be of men, it will come to nought; but if it be of God, ye cannot overthrow it. It argueth the goodnesse of their cause, in that all their enemies cruely (unwise to think to spoil the growth of chamomile by trampling on it) could never supprese them; but they continued till the dayes of Luther, when this morning-starre willingly surrendered his place to him a brighter sunne. But enough of their life and manners. And if any condemne me for superfluity herein, I guard my self with \* S. Augustines shield, Non est multiloquum, quando necessaria dicuntur, quantalibet sermonum multitudine ac prolixitate dicantur.

145

\* Tom. 2. lib. 27. pag. 16.

\* Act. 5. 38,  
39.

\* In his preface to his Recreatio.

## Chap. 21.

*The Holy armie advance against the Albingenes; The cities of Besier and Carcassone taken.*

Pope Innocent the third having now gathered together an armie of one hundred thousand Pilgrimes, set forwards for the final extirpation of the poore Albingenes. The best champions for his Holiness herein, were the Duke of Burgundie, the Earls of Nevers, S-Paul, Auxerre, Geneva, Poictiers, with Simon Earl of Montfort: Of the Clergie, Milo the Popes Legate, the Archbishops of Sens, Rovani; the Bishops of Clermont, Nevers, Lyfieux, Bayeux, Chartres, with divers others; every Bishop with the Pilgrimes of his jurisdiction: To whom the Pope promised Paradise in heaven, but not one penny on earth. Their work was to destroy the Albingenes, which were in great numbers in Dauphine, Provence, Narbonne, Tholose, and other parts of France. Their Commission also extended to the rooting out of all their friends and favourers, whether detected,

146

detected, or onely suspected ; such as were Reimund Earl of Tholose, Reimund Earl of Foyx, the Vicecount of Besiers, Gafton Lord of Berne, the Earl of Bigorre, the Lady of la Vaur, with divers others. See here a new gate to heaven never opened before, for men to cut their way thither through the throats of their innocent brethren! Behold the holy Ghost, who once came down in the form of a Dove, now counterfeited in the shape of a Vulture!

But we must not forget how just before the warre began, the Pope pretended to reclaim them by reas ons to the Church of Rome : To which end he gave order for a disputacion with them. The parties, place, and time, were agreed on ; who, where, when they should dispute : but *in fine* nothing was effected. Yea, who ever knew conferencies in so great opposition to ripen kindly, and bring any fruit to perfection ? For many come rather for faction then satisfaction, resolving to carry home the same opinions they brought with them : An upright moderatour will scarce be found, who hangeth not to one side ; The place will be subject to suspiccion, and hinder libertie : Boldnesse and readinesse of speach with the most ( though not most judicious ) auditours will bear away the bell from solidity of arguments : The pessages in the disputing will be partially reported, and both sides will brag of the conquest; so that the rent will be made worse, and more spirits conjured up then allayed.

But now words ended in blows, the Pope onely entertaining them in \* conferences, that in the mean time he might prepare his great armes more suddenly to supprese them.

The first piece of service his souldiers performed, was in sack ing the citie of Besiers, and burrough of Carcassone: In which many Catholicks, stedfast in the Romish faith, did dwell, and promiscuously were slain with the Albingenses; yea, Priests themselves were cut in pieces in their priestly ornaments, and under the banner of the Crosse : So that the swallowing of their foes made their friends also go down glib through their throats, without danger of choking. As for the citie of Carcassone, which was not farre from the burrough ; to the inhabitants thereof those immodest conditions were propounded, whereof formerly: which they refused ; and God better provided for them : For whilst the citie was besieged, they escaped out by the benefit of a vault under ground, and so shifted abroad for themselves.

\* Jo. Paul  
Perin. De Al-  
bing. lib. I.  
cap. 2.

Chap.

Anno  
Dom.  
1206

Anno  
Dom.  
1206

1206

1206

1210.

Chap. 22.

*Simon Earl of Montfort chosen Captain of the Holy warre; He conquereth the King of A-ragon, prevaleth against the Albingenses, and at last is killed by a woman.*

**H**itherto this warre was managed by the Popes Legate : But now it was concluded that a secular captain should be adjoined to him, in whose person the chief command should reside over Martiell affairs, and for his pains, by the Popes donation, he was to enjoy all countreys that should be conquered from the Albingenses or their favourers. The place was offered to the Duke of Burgundie, who refused it, saying, He had lands and Lordships enow of his own, without spoyleyng others of their goods. It was waved also by the Earls of S<sup>t</sup>. Paul, and Nevers, whether out of conscience or policy, because though the Pope gave them the bears skin, they must first kill and flay him themselves. At last Simon of Montfort, nigh Paris, accepted of it, swearing to vex the Lords enemies. And for a breakfast to begin with, he was scifed of the Vicecount of Besiers, proceeding from hence to take many castles and cities.

One grand inconvenience attended on this armie of Pilgrimes : For when their quarantine, or fourty dayes service, was expired ( the term the Pope set them to merit Paradise in ) they would not stay one whit longer : Like post-horses they would runne to their set stage, but could not be spurred one foot further ; contenting themselves they had already purchased heaven, and fearing they should be put in possession thereof too soon, by losing their lives in that service. And though the Bishops perwaded some few to stay, that so the surplusage of their merits might make up the arrerages of their friends which wanted them, yet could they not prevail to any purpose. Nor could they so cast and contrive their matters, the tide of peoples devotion being uncertain, but that betwixt the going out of the old and coming in of the new store of Pilgrimes, there would be a low ebbe, wherein their armie was almost wasted to nothing : whereof the Albingenses made no small advantage.

However, the Earls of Tholose, Foyx, and Comminge, and Prince of Berne, the patrons of the Albingenses, finding they were too weak for this Holy armie, sheltered themselves under Peter King of Aragon ; whole homagers they were, receiv-

147

*See the fab-  
stance of this  
following lo-  
ry, in *Jo.  
Perin. lib. I.  
cap. 6. & de-  
inceps.**

148

ceiving investiture from him, though their dominions lay on this side of the Pyrenean hills. This King had the greatness of the Earl of Montfort in suspicion; fearing lest these severall Principalities, which now were single arrows, should be bound in one sheaf, conquered and united under Earl Simon. Wherefore he fomented a faction in them against the Holy Armie; publickly protesting against the proceedings of Earl Simon; charging him to have turned the bark of Gods Church into a Pirates ship, robbing others and enriching themselves under the pretence of Religion, seising on the lands of good Catholicks for supposed hereticks, using Gods cause as hunters do a stand, in it the more covertly to shoot at what game they please: Otherwise, why was the Vicecount of Beziers, who lived and died firm in the Romish faith, lately trained into the Legates hand, and against oathes and promises of his safe return, kept close prisoner till his death, and his lands seised on by Earl Simon?

At last the King of Aragon taking the Earl of Montfort on the advantage (shooting him as it were betwixt wind and water, the ending of the old and beginning of new Pilgrimes) forced him to a battell. The King had thirty thousand foot and seven thousand horse, but the Earl, of both foot and horse not above two thousand two hundred. They closed together neare the castle of Moret: And the King, whether out of zeal of conquest and thirst of honour, or distrust of under-officers, or desire to animate others, or a mixture of all, ran his curvets so openly, and made his turns and returns in the head of the army, that so fair a mark invited his enemies arrows to hit him; by whom he was wounded to death, and fell from his horse; to lesson all Generals to keep themselves, like the heart, in the bodie of the armie, whence they may have a virtuall omnipresence in every part thereof, and not to expose their persons (which, like crystall viols, contain the extracted spirits of their sholdiers spilt with their breaking) to places of imminent danger. With his body fell the hearts of his men: And though the Earls of Tholose, Foyx, and Comminge, perswaded, entreated, threatened them to stay, they used their oratorie so long till their audience ranne all away, and they were fain to follow them, referring themselves by flight to redeem their honour some other time.

Simon improving this victorie, pursued them to the gates of Tholose, and killed many thousands. The Friars imputed this victorie to the Bishops benediction, and adoring a piece of the Crofie, together with the seruenie of the Clergies prayers, which remaining behind in the castle of Moret, battered heaven with their impomunity. On the other side, the Albigenes

Anno

Dom.

1211.

bingenes acknowledged Gods justice in punishing the proud King of Aragon; who, as if his arm had been strong and long enough to pluck down the victory out of heaveh without Gods reaching it to him, conceived that Earl Simon came rather to cast himself down at his feet, then to fight. But such reckonings without the host are ever subject to a rete account.

Yet within few yeares the face of this warre began to alter: (With writers of short-hand we must set a prick for a letter; a letter for a word, marking only the most remarkable.) For young Relmundo Earl of Tholose, exceeding his father in valour and successse, so bestirred himself, that in few moneths he regaine what Earl Simon was many yeares in getting: And at last Earl Simon besieging Tholose, with a stonie which a woman let fly out of an engine, had his head parted from his body.

Men use not to be niggards of their censures on strange accidents: Some paralleled his life with Abimelech that tyrant-Judge; who with the bramble (fitter to make a fire then a King of) accepted of the wooden Monarchie, where the vine, olive, figge-tree declin'd it. They paired them alſo in their ends; death disdaining to send his summons by a manciline hand, but arresting them both by a woman. Some perswaded themselves they saw Gods finger in the womans hand; that because the greater part of his cruento lighted on the weaker sex (for he had buried the Ladie of la Vaur alive, respecting neither her sex nor nobilitie) a woman was chosen out to be his executioner: though of himself he was not so prone to cruelty, but had those at his elbow which prompted him to it. The time of his death was a large field for the conceits of others to walk in; because even then the Pope and three Councils, of Vau, Montpelier, and Laterane, had pronounced him sonne, serviant, favourite of the faith, the invincible defender thereof: And must he not needs break, being swoln with so many windy titles? Amongst other of his styles he was \*Earl of Leicester in England, and farther to Simon Montfort the \*Catilene of this Kingdome, who under pretense of curing this land of some grievances, had killed it with his physick, had he not been killed himself in the battell of Evesholm in the reigne of Henry the third.

And here ended the storm of open warre against the Albigenes; though some great drops fell afterwards. Yea, now the Pope grew sensible of many mischiefs in protecting this people with the Holy warre: First, the incongruite betwixt the Word and the Sword; to confute hereticks with armes in the field, opened clathorous mouths; Secondly, \*three hundred thousand of these Crested Pilgrimes lost their lives in this expedition, within the space of fifteen years; so that there was neither citie nor village in France, but by reason here-

149

\* See *Catam.*  
in Leicester-  
shire.

\* Also in Nor-  
cester-shire.

\* *Peris. Of*  
*the Albigen-  
ies, lib. 4.*

148

ceiving investiture from him, though their dominions lay on this side of the Pyrenean hills. This King had the greatnesse of the Earl of Montfort in suspicion; fearing lest these severall Principalities, which now were single arrows, should be bound in one sheaf, conquered and united under Earl Simon. Wherefore he fomented a faction in them against the Holy Armie; publickly protesting against the proceedings of Earl Simon; charging him to have turned the bark of Gods Church into a Pirates ship, robbing others and enriching themselves under the pretense of Religion, seising on the lands of good Catholicks for supposed hereticks, using Gods cause as hunters do a stand, in it the more covertly to shoot at what game they please: Otherwise, why was the Vicecount of Beziers, who lived and died firm in the Romish faith, lately trained into the Legates hand, and against oathes and promises of his safe return, kept close prisoner till his death, and his lands seised on by Earl Simon?

At last the King of Aragon taking the Earl of Montfort on the advantage (shooting him as it were betwixt wind and water, the ending of the old and beginning of new Pilgrimes) forced him to a battel. The King had thirty thousand foot and seven thousand horse, but the Earl, of both foot and horse not above two thousand two hundred. They closed together neare the castle of Moret: And the King, whether out of zeal of conquest and thirst of honour, or distrust of under-officers, or desire to animate others, or a mixture of all, ran his curvets so openly, and made his turns and returns in the head of the army, that so fair a mark invited his enemies arrows to hit him; by whom he was wounded to death, and fell from his horse; to lesson all Generals to keep themselves, like the heart, in the boodie of the armie, whence they may have a virtuall omnipresence in every part thereof; and not to expose their persons (which, like crystall viols, contain the extracted spirits of their souldiers spilt with their breaking) to places of imminent danger. With his body fell the hearts of his men: And though the Earls of Tholose, Foyx, and Comminge, perswaded, entreated, threatened them to stay, they used their oratorie so long till their audience ranne all away; and they were fain to follow them, reserving themselves by flight to redeem their honour some other time.

Simon improving this victorie, pursued them to the gates of Tholose, and killed many thousands. The Friars imputed this victorie to the Bishops benediction, and adoring a piece of the Croffe, together with the fervencie of the Clergies prayers, which remaining behind in the castle of Moret, battered heaven with their importunity. On the other side, the Albingenses

Anno  
Dom.Anno  
Dom.

1218.

1212.

bingenses acknowledged Gods justice in punishing the proud King of Aragon; who, as if his arm had been strong and long enough to pluck down the victory out of heaven without Gods reaching it to him, conceived that Earl Simon came rather to cast himself down at his feet, then to fight. But such reckonings without the host are ever subiect to a rere-account.

Yet within few years the face of this warre began to alter: (With writers of short-hand we must set a prick for a letter, a letter for a word, marking onely the most remarkable.) For young Reinfund Earl of Tholose, exceeding his father in valour and successse, so bestirred himself, that in few moneths he regained what Earl Simon was many yeares in getting: And at last Earl Simon besieging Tholose, with a stone which a woman let flie out of an engine, had his head parted from his body.

Men use not to be niggards of their censures on strange accidents: Some paralleled his life with Abimelech that tyrant-Judge, who with the bramble (fitter to make a fire then a King of) accepted of the wooden Monarchie, when the vine, olive, figge-tree declined it. They paired them also in their ends, death disdaining to send his summons by a masculine hand, but arresting them both by a woman. Some perswaded themselves they saw Gods finger in the womans hand; that because the greater part of his cruelte lighted on the weaker sex (for he had buried the Ladie of la Vaur alive, respecting neither her sex nor nobilitie) a woman was chosen out to be his executioner: though of himself he was not so prone to cruelty, but had those at his elbow which prompted him to it. The time of his death was a large field for the conceits of others to walk in; because even then the Pope and three Councils, of Vau, Montpelier, and Laterane, had pronounced him sonne, servant, favourite of the faith, the invincible defender thereof: And smit he not needs break, being swoln with so many windy titles: Amongst other of his styles he was \*Earl of Leicester in England, and father to Simon Montfort the \*Catilin of this Kingdome, who under pretense of curing this land of some grievances, had killed it with his physick, had he not been killed himself in the battel of Evesholm in the reigne of Henry the third.

And here ended the storm of open warre against the Albingenses, though some great drops fell afterwards. Yea, now the Pope grew sensible of many mischiefs in prosecuting this people with the Holy warre: First, the incongruite betwixt the Word and the Sword; to confute hereticks with armes in the field, opened clamorous mouths: Secondly, three hundred thousand of these Crofied Pilgrimes lost their lives in this expedition, within the space of fifteen years; so that there was neither citie nor village in France, but by reason here-

149

\* See Camb.  
in Leicest.  
shire.

\* Also in Wor.  
cestershire.

\* Peris. of  
the Albingen-  
ses, lib. 2.  
cap. 4.

150 of had widows and orphanes cursing this expedition. And his Holinesse, after he had made allowance for his losse of time, bloud, and credit, found his gain *de clara* very small. Besides, such was the chance of warre, and good Catholicks were so intermingled with hereticks, that in facking of cities they were slain together. Whereupon the Pope resolved of a privatuer way, which made leſſe noife in the world, attracted leſſe envie, and was more effectual; To prosecute them by way of Inquisition. Hereby he might ſingle them out by retail, rooting out the tares without hurting the corn, and overthrowing them by piece-meal whom he could never stagger in groſſe.

\* Martyrol.  
in vita Domini.

\* Psal. 9.12.

Dominick a Spaniard was firſt authour hereof. Well did his mother, being with child of him, dream that ſhe had a dog vomitting fire in her wombe. This ignivomous curre (fire of the litter of Mendicant Friars called Dominicane) did bark at, and deeply bite the poore Albingenes. After his death, Pope Horonius for his good ſervice beftowed a Saint-ſhip on him: For he dreamed he ſaw the Church of Rome falling, and Dominick holding it up with his ſhoulders; wherefore he canonized this Atlas of their religion. The proceedings of this Inquisition were the abridgement of all cruelty, turning the ſword of Justice into the butchers ax. But no doubt God, when he maketh \*inquisition for bloud, will one day remember this bloody Inquisition. And who can but admire at the continuance of the doctrine of the Albingenes to this day, maugre all their enemies? Let thole privie-counſellers of Nature, who can tell where ſwallows lie all winter, and how at the ſpring they have a reuſerrection from their ſeeming deadneſſe, let thole, I ſay, alſo inform us in what invisible ſanctuary this doctrine did lurk in ſpite of perſecution, and how it reuived out of its ashes at the coming of Luther. To conclude; it is obſerved, That in thole parts of France where the Albingenes were moſt cruelly handled, now the Protestants (heirs to moſt of their teners) flouriſh moſt: as in the countreys of Gasconge, Dauphine, and Languedoc.

### Chap. 23.

#### *King Almerick for his lazineſſe depoſed by the Pope.*

Welcomē the Holy Land, welcome Ptolemaiſ: How ſhallow and almoſt quite drie is the ſtream of Pilgrimes grown here, ſince the Pope hath drained it with ſo large a by-chanel into France!

As

Anno  
Dom.  
1206

151 As for Almerick the idle King of Jerufalem, we find him as we left him, drowning his cares conſtantly in wine: his hands beeing lazier then thoſe that are printed in the marginet of a booke, which paint what others ſhould read; whileſt he would neither do, nor order what ſhould be done: So trice was it of him, what is ſaid\* of another, *Titularis non tutularis Rex; defuit non preuiit Republica.*

\* Of Chilperick King of France.

And now the warre betwix Noradine Saladienes ſonne and Saphradine his uncle, about the ſovereignty, laſting nine yeares, ended with Saphradines death; and Noradine contented himſelf with the government of Aleppo, whilſt Saphradines two ſonnes ſhared his dominions, Coradine commanding in Damasce and Syria, and Meladine in Egypt.

The former of theſe without any reſiſtance built a fort in mount Tabor, to the great annoyancē of the Christians. To prevent farther miſchief arifing from Almericks negligence, the Pope (who would have a finger in every Crown, and a hand in this) depoſed him from the Kingdome. This Almerick, grieved to loſe what he was never carefull to keepe, ſoon after died for forrow. But how doth this agree with Marinus Sanutus, who maketh him to die of a ſurfeſt of \* gilt-heads five yeares ſooner, and ſaiſt there was five yeares *interregnum* in Palestine, wherein the Christians had no King at all?

\* A fish called Aurata, or Aurella.

Chap. 24.  
*John Bren made King of Jerufalem. A moſt promising voyage into Palestine of new Pilgrimes; which remove the ſeat of the warre into Egypt.*

1209.

1213.

In the place of Almerick the Pope appointed John de Bren, a private French Gentleman, to be King. Who, to twiſt his title with another ſtrong, married Maria Iole the ſole daughter of Conrade late King of Jerufalem. This John had behaved himſelf right valiantly amongst other Latine Princes in the voyage againſt the Greeks, and was a moſt martiaſl man, as all do witness: Only one calleth him \* *imbellem hominem*; why I know not, except he be of that humour to delight to be one of the Antipodes, treading oppofite to a world of writers' beſides. In the beginning of his reigne this accident (whether monſtrous or miraculous) fell out: In France, a boy (for his yeares) went about ſinging in his own tongue,

\* Theod. &  
Alein, De  
privilegi, im-  
per. cap. De  
Expeditio Hie-  
roſol.

Jesus

152

*Jesus Lord, repair our losse,  
Reftore to us thy holy Croffe.*

Numberlesse children ranne after him, and followed the same tune their captain and chanter did set them. No bolts, no barres, no fear of fathers or love of mothers could hold them back, but they woulde to the Holy Land to work wonders there; till their merry musick had a sad close, all either perishing on land, or drowned by sea: It was done ( faith my \* authour ) by the instinct of the devil, who, as it were, desired a cordiall of childrens bloud to comfort his weak stomach long cloyed with murdering of men.

Soon after began the Laterane Council under Innocent the third: Wherein many things were concluded for the recoverie of the Holy Land; as, That the Croffe shoulde every where be preached with zeal and earnestnesse to procure Pilgrimes; That all \* tiltings in Christendome for three yeares should be forbidden, that so the spears of Christians might onely be broken against Infidels; That Clergie-men that went this voyage might (if need were) mortgage their Church-livings for three years, to provide themselves with present necessaries; That all debtors, during their Pilgrimage (though bound by oath in conscience, the strongest specialtie) should be dispensed with to pay no use to their creditours; who if Christians, by excommunications; if Jews, were to be forced by the secular power to remit their interest; That all Priests shoulde contribute the twentieth part of their revenues for three years, to advance this designe. And last (faith his Holinesse) we should seem to lay heavy burdens on others which we will not touch with our least finger, we assigne a ship at our own cost to carry our Pilgrimes of the citie of Rome, and disburse for the present what can be spared from our necessary expences, to the summe of thirty thousand pounds, to further the project: and for three years to come, we and our brethren the Cardinals of Rome, will fully pay the tenth of our Church-profits.

Hereupon next spring a numerous armie set forward to Palestine, conducted by Pelagius the Popes Legate, Andrew King of Hungarie (who having washed himself in the river of Jordan, would stay no longer, but instantly returned home) the three Electorall Archbishops, with those of Liege, Wirtzburg, Bamberg, Strafsburg, Paris, &c. Lewis Duke of Bavaria, Leopold of Austria, a navie of our English, besides Florentines, Genoans, and many other nations. The autumnne they spent in the fruitleſſ besieging of the fort of mount Tabor; whilst King John Bren wonne from the Turks the castle of Pilgrimes, a piece of great consequence on the ſeaſide.

Then was it debated on both ſides of tranſlating the warre into

\* Matth. Pa-  
rif. in anno  
1213 pag. 324.  
Præflogio dia-  
bolico penitus  
infatuari.

\* Centuriat.  
Cent. 13. cap.  
9.

Anno  
Dom.  
1217.

1215.

Now.

1217.

into Egypt. Which many advised to be done: For that countrey afforded the Turks their victuals and munition; and the best way to draw them low, was to ſtop them in the fountain. It was also moft honour to rouse the Lion in his own denne. And Palestine was ſo forraged, that there was nothing to be gleaned in the ſtubble; whereas Egypt was ſo rich and fruitfull, it cared not for the frowns of heaven, ſo it might have the favour of Nilus; and there was no fear to want bread in that the granary of the world: That according to the rule, *Plus animi eft inferenti periculum, quam propulsanti;* the Christians would be heartened, but the Egyptians discouraged in the invasion of Egypt. The ſad ſpectacle of their countreys vaſtation would diſturb their minds, make them diſſident of their own worth, and unſufficient to maintain their cauſe. Laſtly, the Christians might leave when they liſt, reſerving at all times Ptolemais to entertain them, in case fortune ſhould croſſe their deſignes.

But the reaſons to the contrary wanted not weight but weighing. They conſidered not (what was objected) That to invade a ſtrong entire countrey without having a partie within it to ſide with them, was to endeavour to cleave a tree with a beetle without a wedge. Besides, Egypt was an exception from the rules of all other countreys, and had certain locall maximes of leading of an armie appropriated to it alone. That Valour muſt needs haue the fall, when it wrestleth with Nature it ſelf, and fighteth againſt boggs, rivers, and inundations. That it was more agreeable to reaſon, firſt to recover and defend what once was their own, before they attempted other mens poſſeſſions. That theſe their forces afforded little hope of victory in another Kingdome, which were not able to clear their own countrey, and the forts in Syria, from ſo dangerous an enemie. Laſtly, That the Egyptians fighting for their fathers, wives, and children, would raise their valour to the highest point of reſolution. These arguments notwithstanding, the watch-word was given for Egypt; whither all adreſſed themſelves.

And here began the diſcorſes betwixt King John and the Popes Legate, who challenged not onely an influence but a predominancie in every thing, and would dictate to the Generall what he ſhould do in martiall affairs: He presumed on his book-learning to controul the practice of experienced captains by his military ſpeculations. The King ſtormed hereat, ſhewing there were ſome mysteries in the Captain-craft not communicable to any which had not ſerved the trade, and which the heart of a Scholar was too narrow to contain; That though Scholarſhip was a ſtock fit to graff any profession on, yet ſome good time is requiſite thereunto; and that they muſt not think to proceed military Masters at their firſt admittance in a camp; That though

153

X

154

though the Legate might conceive himself to know the latitude of warlike principles, yet he knew not the use of distinctions, exceptions, and cautions of application; and might easily be misled by disproportion and dissimilitude of examples, the variation of circumstances, the infiniteness of punctuall occurences: Wherefore he forbade him to meddle with martiall matters, challenging them to belong to his own disposall. But Pelagius the Legate highly opinioned of his own sufficiency, as if his place made him infallible in every thing, and loth to confess himselfe besides the cushion whilst he sat in the chair, would have an oar in all actions. He held this conclusion, That the generall rules of warre were easily known; and as for the qualification of them *pro exigentia sic & nunc*, herein reason was the key of the work, which scholars having most perfected by learning, were thereby the most competent judges what should be done on all occasions. How dearly the Christians payed for this his error, and how this discord, smothered for a while, brake out, we shall see hereafter. Meantime, hoising up sails, the Pilgrimes navie safely arrived at Damietta.

## Chap. 25.

*Damiata besieged and taken; The Christians unadvisedly refuse honourable conditions.*

**D**amietta is a chief haven of Egypt, anciently Pelusium; sitteth on the Eastern-most stream of Nilus. Here the East and West world met together to exchange their wares, and grudging for trade to give the upper hand to Alexandria it self. At their landing \* the Moon was almost totally eclipsed: whence the Christians conceited (ghesse the frailnesse of the building by the unconstance of the foundation) that the overthrow of the Mahometanes (whose emprise was the \* Half-moon) was portended. But the calculourous of after-chances seldom hit right. In the siege of this citie they were to encounter with a fourfold difficultie, besides Damietta it self:

First, with a great chain crossing the harbour: which with indefatigable pains, and art mingled with labour, they brake asunder; industry in action being as importunitie in speech, by continual incitation forcing a yielding beyond the strength of reason.

Secondly, the river Nilus did much annoy them. This river (the height of whose flowing is the Egyptian Almanack, whereby they prognosticate future plenty or penurie) now out of

time

\* Matth. Pa.  
rif. in Joan.  
pag. 401.

• Muster.

Ann.

Dom.

1217

1218

1219

Febr.

July

9

Anne

Dom.

1217

1218

1219

Febr.

July

9

X 2

gerous

time and beyond measure drowned the countrey. Bold fishes swamme into the Christians' tents, who took them with their hands, \* though willingly they could have wanted such dainties, for the sauce was more then the meat. Against this mischief they fensed themselves with prayer, and a publick fast enjoyed by the Legate; whereby the water soon abated. And lest Gods mercy herein, when gotten, should be forgotten, a publick thanksgiving was proclaimed, that this favour obtained by prayer might be kept by praises.

Thirdly, they were to grapple with the fort of Pharia, a seeming-impregnable place, betwixt them and Damietta. To check this fort, the Christians built a towre on ships: which suddenly falling, brained many, bruised more of their own men, and all who fel not the blow, were stricken with the fright. King John comforted his soildiers discouraged hereat, desiring them to apprehend actions by their true causes, and as not to vaunt of blind victories, so not to be dismayed at casuall mishaps, so purely accidentall, that there was no guard against them in the schools of defente, either of wisdome or valour. By his advice a more substantiall towre was built, the rarest piece in that kind the world ever saw, by the manning whereof, after many bloody assaults, they mastered the fort of Pharia.

Fourthly, they had to do with Meladine King of Egypt, who lay besides them, constantly furnishing the citie with men and victuals, and exercising the Christians with continual skirmishes. In one, with his wild-fire he did them much harm, and King John was dangerously scorched. But seeing that the Christians hewed their way through the rocks of all difficulties, he proponed peace unto them by the mediation of Coradine his brother, King of Damascus, proffering them, if they would depart, to restore them the true Crosie, the citie of Jerusalem, and all the land of Palestine.

\* The English, French, and Italians would have embraced the conditions, pleading, That honourable peace was the centre of warre, where it should rest; That they could not satisfie their conscience to rob these Egyptians of their lands without a speciell command from God; That it was good wisdome to take so desperate a debt whensoever the payment was tendred; otherwise, if they would not be content with their arms full, they might perchance return with their hands empty.

But the Legate would no wayes consent, alledging this voyage was undertaken not only for the recovery of Palestine, but for the extirpation of the Mahometane superstition. And herein no doubt he followed the instructions of his master, whose end in this warre was, That this warre should have no end, but be alwayes in doing though never done. He knew it was dan-

155

\* Illis tamen  
delicis carere  
maluerint,  
Matth. Pa.  
rif. pag. 405.

\* P. Amyl.  
pag. 201.

136

\* Magdeburg.  
Cest. 23. cap.  
16. ca. 692.

gerous to stop an issue which had been long open; and would in no case close up this vent of people by concluding a final peace. Besides, an old Prophecie,\* That a Spaniard shoulde win Jerusalem, and work wonders in those parts, made Pelagius that countrey-man more zealous herein. Coradine, angry his proffer was refused, beat down the walls of Jerusalem and all the beautifull buildings therein, save the towre of David and the temple of the Sepulchre. Not long after, Damiata, having been besieged one year and seven moneths, was taken without resistance; plague and famine had made such a vastation therein. The Christians entred with an intent to kill all; but their anger soon melted into pitie, beholding the citie all besrawed with corpses. The sight was bad, and the sent was worse; for the dead killed the living. Yea, Gods sword had left their sword no work: Of \*three-score and ten thousand but three thousand remained, who had their lives pardoned, on condition to cleanse the citie: which employed them a quarter of a yere. Hence the Christians marched and took the citie of Tanis; and soon after the Pope substituted \*John de Columna, a Cardinall, Legate in the place of Pelagius.

Anno  
Dom.  
1220.

Nov.  
5.

\* P. Amyl.  
pag. 203.

\* Magdeburg.  
pag. 693.

## Chap. 26.

*New discords betwixt the King and the Legate;  
They march up to besiege Cairo.*

**G**reat was the spoil they found in Damiata: wherein, as in strong barred chests, the merchants of Egypt and India had locked up their treasure. A full yere the Christians stayed here, contented to make this inne their home. Here arose new discords betwixt the King and the new Legate, who by vertue of his Legation challenged Damiata for his Holinesse, which by publick agreement was formerly assignd to the King. Bren in anger returned to Ptolemais, both to puff out his discontents in private, and to teach the Christians his worth by wanting him: For prently they found themselves at a losse, neither could they stand still without disgrace, nor go on without danger. The Legate commanded them to march up; but they had too much spirit to be ruled by a Spirituall man, and swore not to stirre a step except the King was with them. Messengers therefore were sent to Ptolemais to fetch him. They found him of a steele nature; once through-hot, long in cooling: yet by promising him he should have his own desires, they over-perwaded him not to starve an army by feeding his own humours.

1220.

Scarce

Scarce after eight moneths absence was he returned to Damiata, but new divisions were betwixt them: The Legate perwaded the armie to march up and besiege Cairo, he promised, if they would obey him, they should quickly command all Egypt, by present invading it. Let defendants lie at a close guard, and offer no play. Delays are a safe shield to save, but celerite the best sword to win a countrey. Thus Alexander conquerord the world before it could bethink it selfe to make resistance. And thus God now opened them a doore of victory, except they would barre it up by their own idelesse.

But the King advised to return into Syria, That Cairo was difficult to take, and impossible to keep; That the ground whereon they went was as treacherous as the people against whom they fought; That better now to retire with honour, then hereafter sic with shame; That none but an empirick in warre will denie, but that more true valour is in an orderly well-grounded retreat, then in a furious rash invasion.

But the Legate used an iartificiall argument drawn from the authoritie of his place, thundering excommunication against those that would not march forward: And now needs must they go when he driveth them.

The crafty Egyptians (of whom it is true, what is said of the Parthians, Their flight is more to be feared then their fight) ran away, counterfeiting cowardinesse. The Christians triumphed hereat; as if the silly fish shoule rejoyce that he had caught the fisherman, when he had swallowed his bait. The Legate hugged himself in his own happinesse; that he had given so successfull advice. And now see how the garland of their victorie proved the halter to strangle them.

## Chap. 27.

*The miserable case of the drowned Christians in  
Egypt. Damiata surrendred in ransome of  
their lives.*

**E**gypt is a low level countrey, except some few advantages which the Egyptians had fortifyed for themselves. Through the midle of the land ran the river Niles, whose stream they had so bridled with banks and sluices, that they could keep it to be their own servant, and make it their enemies master at pleasure. The Christians confidently marched on; and the Turks perceiving the game was come within the toil, pierced their

X 3

banks,

137

158

banks, and unmuzzling the river, let it run open mouth upon them; yet so, that at first they drowned them up but to the middle, reserving their lives for a further purpose, thereby in exchange to recover Damietta and their countreys liberty.

See here the land of Egypt turned in an instant into the Egyptian sea! See an army of sixtie thousand, as the neck of one man stretched on the block, and waiting the fatal stroke! Many cursed the Legate, and their own rashnesse, that they should follow the counsel of a gowned man ( all whose experience was clasped in a book ) rather then the advice of experienced captains. But too late repentance, because it foweth not in season, reapeath nothing but unavoidable miserie.

Meladine King of Egypt seeing the constancie and patience of the Christians, was moved with compassion towards them. He had of himself strong inclinations to Christianitie, wearie of Mahometanisme, and willing to break that prison but for watchfull jaylers about him. He proffered the Christians their lives, on condition they would quit the countrey and restore Damietta. They accepted the conditions, and sent messengers to Damietta to prepare them for the surrendring of it. But they within the citie, being themselves saftey on shore, tyrannized on their poore brethren in shipwrack; pretending, That this armie of Pilgrimes deserved no pitie, who had invited this misfortune on themselves by their own rashnesse; That if they yielded up this citie for nothing, which cost so many lives, they should betray themselves to the derision of the whole world; That if these perished, more men might be had, but no more Damietta's; being a place of such importance, it would always be a snaffle in the mouth of the Egyptian King. On the other side, the friends of the distressed Christians confessed, That indeed their voyage was unadvised and justly to be blamed; yet worse and more inconfideate projects have armies oft undertaken, which, if crowned with successse, have been above censure, yea, have passed not onely without questioning, but with commendations: But this is the miserie of miserie, that those who are most afflicted of God, shall be most condemned of men. Wherefore, they requested them to pitie their brethren, and not to leave them in this forlorn estate. How clamorous would their innocent bloud be in the Court of Heaven, to sue for revenge on those who forsook them in this distresse! And grant Damietta a citie of great consequence; yet cities in themselves were but dead things, and men were the souls to enliven them: so that those soldierns which wonne Damietta, if preserved alive, might haply recover as strong a citie afterwards.

But finding their arguments not to prevail, they betook themselves to arms, by force to compell the adverse party to

Anno  
Dom.  
1220.Anno  
Dom.  
1220.

resigne the citie. King John also threatened, in case they denied to surrendre it, to give up to Meladine Ptolemais in Syria in exchange for Damietta. At last, according to the agreement, Damietta was restored to the Turks, and the Christian armie let out of the trap wherein it was taken. Meladine out of his princely goodnesse furnished them with \* victuals, and with horses to carrie their feble persons upon. And thus the Christians had the greatest blow given them without a blow given them, the Egyptians obtaining their victory not by bloud but by water.

159

P. Amy.  
pag. 203.

## Chap. 28.

*John Bren resigneth the Kingdome of Jerusalem to Frederick the second, Germane Emperour.*

There was also concluded a peace with the Turks for eight years. And now matters being settled as well as they might be in Syria, King John took a journey to Roime; where he was bountifully feasted, and honourably entertained by the Pope. Here it was agreed (whether at the first by his voluntary offer, or working of others, it appeareth not) that he should resigne the Kingdome of Jerusalem to Frederick the second, Germane Emperour, who was to marrie Iole the sole daughter of King John by his first wife; though by a second he had another, Martha, married to Robert Emperour of Constantinople: so that he was father in law both to Emperour of East and West.

Some condemned his resignation as an unadvised act; as if he had first parted from his wits, who would willingly part from a Kingdome, whilst others commend his discretion: For first, his wife was dead, in whose right he held his Kingdome, and thereby a doore was opened for other litigious pretenders to the Crown. Secondly, it was policie, *fugere ne fugeretur*: yea, this was no flight, but an honourable departure. Well he knew the Turks power to invade, and his own weaknesse to defend what was left in Syria: So that finding the weight too heavy for himself, he did well to lay it on stronger shoulders. Thirdly, before his resignation he had little more then a tide; and after it he had nothing lesse, men having so tuned their tonges to salute him King of Jerusalem, that he was so called to the day of his death. Lastly, what he wanted in the stakynesse of his bed, he had in the soundnesse of his sleep; and though his commons perchance were shorter, yet he bacted better on them.

He

160

He got now more in a twelve-moneth then in seven years before, going from countrey to countrey: And yet the farther this stone rolled, the more mosse he gathered. In France, besides rich gifts left to himself, he had the managing of sixty thousand crowns; the legacie which Philip Augustus the King on his death-bed<sup>x</sup> bequeathed to the Templars and the Holy Warre. In England he received from Henry the third many great presents, though afterwards he proved but <sup>\*</sup>unthankfull for them. In Spain he got a rich wife, Beringaria, the daughter of the King of Castile. In Italie he tasted very largely of the Popes liberalitie, and lived there in good esteem. But he went off the stage without an applause, because he lost himself in his last act; perfidiously raising rebellions against Frederick his sonne in law, at the instigation of his Holinesse. Nor recovered he his credit, though after he went to his sonne Robert to Constantinople, and there did many good offices. He died anno 1237.

\* P. Amyl.  
in Phil. 2.  
pag. 205.  
\* Matth. Pa.  
rij. pag. 627.

## Chap. 29.

*The true character of Frederick; How the history of his life is prejudiced by the partialitie of Autbours on both sides.*

**T**He nuptiall solemnities of Frederick with the Ladie Iole were performed at Rome, in the presence of the Pope, with all ceremonies of majestie; and Frederick promised to prosecute in person his title in Palestine within two yeares. Little hope have I to content the Reader in this Kings life, who cannot satisfie my self; Writers of that age are so possessed with <sup>\*</sup>partiality. The faction of the Guelfes and Gibellines discovereth not it self more plainly in the Camp then in the Chronicles: Yea, Historians turn Schoolmen in matters of fact, arguing them *pro & con*. And as it is in the Fable of the man that had two wives; whilst his old wife plucked out his black hairs, the evidence of his youth, his young one ungray-haired him, that no standards of antiquite might remain, they made him bald betwixt them: So amongst our late Writers, whilst Protestants cut off the authoritie from all Papized writers of that age, and Romanists cast away the witness of all Imperialized authours then living (such as Urspergenis is, and generally all Germanes) counting them *testes domesticos*, and therefore of no validitie, betwixt them they draw all historie of that time

\* Blondus,  
Farellus, &c.  
for the Pope.  
Urbano.  
Petrus de Vinea  
(still corrupted  
with bribes)  
&c. for the  
Emperour.  
Matth. Paris,  
a moderate  
man, whom  
we follow  
most.

Anno  
Dom.  
~  
1220  
1227

very flender, and make it almost quite nothing. We will not engage our selves in their quarrels; but may safely believe, that Frederick was neither saint, nor devil, but man. Many vertues in him his foes must commend, and some vices his friends must confess. He was <sup>\*</sup>very learned, according to the rate of that age, especially for a Prince, who onely baiteth at learning, and maketh it not his profession to lodge in. Wife he was in projecting; nor were his thoughts ever so scattered with any sudden accident, but he could instantly recollect himself. Valiant he was, and very fortunate; though this tendeth more to Gods praise then his: Wondrous bountifull to scholars and soldiery; whose good will he enjoyed, for he payed for it.

But this Gold had its alloy of Crueltie; though this was not so much bred in him as he broughte to it: Treasons against him were so frequent, he could not be safe but must be severall, nor feare without incurring the aspersion of cruelty. His Pride was excessive, and so was his Wantonnesse: A Nunnens veil was but a slender shield against his lust: This sinne he was given to, <sup>\*</sup>which was besides the custome of the Dutch, saith one, who thought great friends to Bacchus, are no favourites of Venus; which is strange, that they should heap up so much fewel, and have no more fire.

In a word, he was a better Emperour then a man, his vices being personall, most hurting himself; his vertues of a publick nature, and accomplishing him for government.

161

\* Pontal. De  
vitis illustr.  
Germ part. 2.  
pag. 121.

\* Peccata gen-  
tis morem  
Egnatius.

## Chap. 30.

*Mines and countermines betwixt the Emperour  
and the Pope, seeking to blow up, or at least-  
wise to stay the project each of other.*

**I**T is verily conceived that the Pope provided this match for Frederick to employ him in Palestine, whilst he at home might play his game at pleasure. For as provident Nature in marshalling the elements, assigned fire a place in the verge and border of this lower world farre from the rest, lest otherwise the activitie thereof might set the others in combustion: so the Pope disposed this hot violent-spirited Emperour farre off, and engaged him in a distant and dangerous warre out of the borders of Europe.

Frederick smelt the project of his Holiness, being also master in the art of dissembling, though he must acknowledge the Pope

Y his

162

his senior in that facultie: Wherefore he deferred the performance of his promise and his voyage into Palestine from moneth to moneth, and yeare to yeare, wifely gaining time by losing it.

The truth was, he was not yet ripe for such an expedition. The Pope was afraid of his valour, he of the Popes treacherie, and more feared him behind his back then the Turk before his face. He was loth to let go the Eagle he had in hand, to catch the little bird that was in the bush. Wherefore as yet he refused to go, pleading that the eight yeares truce which King Bren had made with the Turks was not yet expired; before which time to fight against them, was to fight against God and conscience: and that it was no way to propagate the Faith by breach of faith.

Pope Honorius continued still to put him in mind of his promise: Yea, he rubbed his memorie so roughly, he fetched off the skinne with his threats and menaces. But before Fredericks journey began, Honorius his life ended, and Gregory the ninth succeeded him; who at the first dash excommunicated the Emperour for his delay.

Know by the way, that his name-sake Gregorie the seventh (otherwise Hildebrand) first hanstelled his excommunication on Henry the fourth. Before his time the Imperiall majestie ( what is obserued of the Seal, that it is never hit with thunder ) was never fulminated against with excommunication: afterward nothing more usual, till the commonnesse of thole thunderbolts caused their contempt, and the Emperours natures were so used to this phyfick it would not work with them. Of late his Holinesse is grown more advised, very sparingly using them, especially against Protestant Princes; counting it policie to hold that weapon within the scabbard which hath no other edge but what is given <sup>x</sup> by the opinion of those against whom it is used.

Frederick at last cometh forth of Germanie with his armie, marcheth through Itaie, cometh to Brindisi, where the plague seiseth on his men, whereof died the Landtgrave of Thuringia, and others. Soon after he fell very desperately sick himself, which stayed his journey many moneths.

It went neare to the Pope, that the Emperour was so neare to him: His eafe was now worse then formerly: For he had rouzed the Lion out of his denne, but could not get him into the net. His sicknesse must either be more or lessie to do good. And the Pope, having no varietie of weapons, excommunicated him afteir, pretacing Fredericks diseafe was onely the cramp of lazynesse, and that he was sick to do good, but found to do mischief; as appeared by his unrighteasing on the goods of Lewis Landgrave of Thuringia late deceased.

The

Anno

Dom.

1228.

Aug.

11.

Mai.

19.

Sept.

13.

1229.

The Emperour protested his innocencie, accused the Popes injustice, putting himself on the triall of all Christian Princes, to whom he wrote letters. At last health came, and Frederick departed, bearing up with his navie for Palestine. The Pope hearing thereof, belibelled him more foully then ever before, because like an undutifull sonne he departed without his Fathers blessing, being not absolved and reconciled to his Mother the Church.

163

### Chap. 31. *Frederick recovereth all Palestine and Jerusalem without expence of time or bloud.*

See how Gods blessing goeth along with the Popes curses! The fame of Fredericks valour and maiden fortune, never as yet spotted with ill successe, like an harbinger hastening before, had provided victorie to entertain him at his arrivall; yea, this Emperour, swifter then Cesar himself, overcame before he came over into Palestine.

At this time the state of the Turks in Syria was very aguish, and Fredericks coming put them into a shaking fit. \* Coradine was dead, his children in minority, the Turkilh Souldans factious, boyling in enmity one against another. Whereupon the Sultan of Babylon, who was of chiefest authoritie, and governed Syria, proffered Frederick so honourable conditions as he might desire, but could never hope for: namely, To restore unto him Jerusalem and all Palestine, in as full and ample a manner as it was possessed by Baldwin the fourth, before Saladine subdued it; To set all Christian captives at libertie; provided, that the Turks might have accessse to the Sepulchre, ( though not lodging in the citie but suburbs, and that in small numbers at a time ) there to do their devotions, they also having a knowledge of, and giving an honour to Christ, though no better then ignorance and dishonour of him.

Frederick before he ratified any thing by oath, sent to have the Popes approbation: \* who ill entreated and imprisoned his messengers, denied them audience, and contemptuously tore the Emperours letters. Wherefore Frederick without, yea, against his Holinesse consent, concluded a ten yeares truce with the Sultan; and on \* Easter-day triumphantly entring Jerusalem, crowned himself King with his own hands. For Gerard Patriarch of Jerusalem, and Oliver Master of the Templars, with all the Clergie, absented themselves; neither was there any

Y 2

\* Centuriat.

\* Matib-Pa-  
rif. in anno  
1229. pag. 480.

\* Matib

164  
Matib-Pa-  
ris. in anno  
1229. pag. 479.

\* Masses sung in the citie as long as the Emperour being excommunicated remained there.

See that produced as it were in an instant which the succession of many yeares could not perform, all the Holy Land recovered! Some gallants perchance (whose curious palates count all conquests drie meat which are not joyced with blood) will dispraise this Emperours victorie for the best praise thereof, because it was so easily gotten without drawing his sword for it. But they deserve to go naked who scorn to wear good clothes if they cost not deare.

The Templars were vexed at heart that they had no partnership in the glory of this action; yea, this touched their copyhold: Had they lived lazie thus long in Palestine, sucking the sweete of Christendome to no purpose? See, Frederick with few men, little money, lesse time, as master of his craft, had finisched that whiche bunglers had so long in vain been fumbling about!

Wherefore they wanting true merit to raise themselves to the pitch of Fredericks honour, sought by false detraction to depresse him to the depth of their own basenesse; defaming him, as if he conspired with the Sultan to the ruine of all Christianity. In the meane time the Christians every where built and repaired the cities of Palestine, being now resigned into their hands. Joppa and Nazareth they strongly fortifited: the walls of Jerusalem were repaired, the Churches therein adorned, and all publick edifices either wholly cast their skin with the snake; or at leastwise renewed their bill with the eagle, having their fronts either built or beautified. But new tackling to an old rotten keel will never make serviceable ship. Short were the smiles of this citie, which groaning under Gods old curse, little joyed her self in her new bravery.

*The end of the third Book.*

Anno  
Dom.  
1229.

THE  
HISTORIE  
OF THE  
HOLY VVAR.  
BOOK IV.

Chap. 1.

*Frederick battered with the Popes force, and undermined with his fraud, leaveth Palestine, and returneth into Italy.*

Anno  
Dom.  
1229.



Hus the Christian affaires in Palestine were in good case and possiblitie of improvement. But the Pope knew he should catch no fish if the waters were thus clear: Wherefore he stirred up John Bten, Fredericks father in law, (gheesse whether his plots ran not low when he used such dreggs) to raise a rebellion in Italie against him.

His Holinesse spread a false report of purpose, that Frederick was dead. Who would think there were so much substance in a shadow! This vain rumour wrought reall effects, strengthening Fredericks foes with hopes, and staggering his friends with fear and uncertainties. Bren striking the iron whilst it was hot, wonne many places from the Emperour: And though Time soon after was delivered of her daughter Truth, yet the confutation came too late, to shut the doore when the steed was stoln; the Pope having attained his ends and served his turn already.

A jubile of liberty was proclaimed to all the Emperours subjects, and they dispensed with from the Pope for their allegiance to him. Milain, and many other cities in Italie, formerly Imperial, danced at this musick, made a foot-cloth of their Masters livery, and from this time dated themselves Free-States. Here was brave gleaning, where all ranne away with whole sheaves;

sheaves; where robbery was priviledged for lawfull purchase. And the Pope, wise enough not so to give away the pie, but to keep the best corner for himself, carved all Apulia for his own part.

Whilst hostility in Italie, treason beset Frederick in Syria; the Templars intimated to the Sultan his private project to wath himself in Jordan, that so he might be surprized. But the Sultan ( no doubt out of pitie to see a Lion catched in a Fox-trap, there being a confanguinitie of all Princes, and the royll blood which runneth in their veins causing a sympathie of Majestie betwixt them ) scorned to advantage himself by treachery, and sent their letters to Frederick: Who afterwards used the Templars, and generally all the Clergie in Palestyn ( counting them complices with the Pope ) courstly, not to say cruelly.

At last having confirmed his ten yeares truce, and having appointed Reinoldus Duke of Bavaria his Lieutenant in Syria, without noise he cometh into Europe: For to return triumphantly in state, had been but an alarm to awaken envie, and a warning-piece for his enemies to prepare against him. He out-failed fame it self, landing in Italie in person before he arrived there in report. Then the love of his loyall subjects, hitherto rather covered then quenched, appeared; and though formerly forced to a contrary motion, returned now quickly to their own Prince their proper centre.

Within fifteen dayes, assisted with the Duke of Spoleto, Frederick recovered all which was wonne from him, and unravelled the fair web of John Brens victorie, even to the very hemme thereof.

Then was all Italie ( resembled by Geographers for the fashon thereof, to a mans legge ) troubled with the incurable gout of schisme and faction: Not a city of note in it which was not dichotomized, into the sect of the Guelfes, which favoured the Pope; and Gibellines, which adhered to the Emperour.

| anno<br>Dom.<br>Dom. | Guelfes for<br>the Pope.                                                 | Gibellines for<br>the Emperour.                          | Guelfes for<br>the Pope.         | Gibellines for<br>the Emperour.     |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1229.                | Ursinus<br>Sabello } in Rome                                             | Edmунdus<br>Frangipane<br>Cesarius                       | Floccus<br>Grimaldi<br>Fregoso   | Spiro<br>Admiral<br>Doris           |
|                      | Adimari<br>Baldemontius<br>Amido<br>Cerchi<br>Ticci<br>Stedici<br>Pattii | Paxi<br>Uberti<br>Domeni<br>Abibus<br>Streeti<br>Salvati | Canduli<br>Pepoli<br>Marecosi    | Bentivoli<br>Malvezzi               |
|                      | Interminelli } in Lucca < Obici<br>& in Padua < Carrarii                 |                                                          | Eustes } in Ferrara < Saliguerri | Vicecomites } in Milan < Turregiani |
|                      |                                                                          |                                                          | Gonzage } in Mantua < Bonacurbi  |                                     |

I will nor quarrel with the tradition, \* That Elves and Goblins in our English tongue had their first originall from the depravation of the names of Guelfes and Gibellines. If so, sure I am, what now we make *terrificula menta infantum*, scarecrows to affright children, were then true Harpyes to devoure men.

I would farther prosecute these discords; and also shew how Frederick was forced to ask pardon of him who had most wronged him, and dearly to purchase his absolution from the Pope; ( For though this Emperours heart was as hard as stone, yet was it furrowed, dintered, and hollowed at last with the Popes constant dropping and incessant raining of curses upon him.). But I dare wander no farther in this subject, lest any should question my Passe; but return back to the Holy Land.

*These are collected out of Lampard, Meliſſe Hill, part. 3-pag. 303.*

\* Sir John Harrington.

## Chap. 2.

*The Tartars first appearing in the world affright both Christians and Turks; Of their name and nature; Whether Turks or Tartars be easier convertible to the true religion.*

R einoldus Duke of Bavaria being left Fredericks Lieutenant in Syria, wisely discharged his office, and preserved the peace entire which was concluded with the Sultan of Babylon. But the Templars sought by all means to bring this ten yeaers truce to an untimely end; which was as bad as a Lem to them, wherein they must fast from fighting, the meat and drink of turbulent spirits. These counting all like-warm which were not scalding hot, condemned Reinoldus for want of zeal in the Holy Warre, and gave him many a lift to heave him from his place:

168

place; but still he sat sure, poised with his own gravitie. Nor did the enmitie of Henrie King of Cyprus much trouble him, who challenged the Principalitie of Antioch, as next of kinne to the Prince deceased: For Reinold met and defeated him in battel, and bestowed Antioch on \* Frederick, base sonne to Frederick the Emperour.

\* Magdeburg.  
Cent. 13. c. 16.

But that which kept both Christians and Turks in aw, and made them willing mutually to observe the truce, was the fear of the Tartars, a fierce nation, which now had their first flight out of their own nest into the neighbouring countreys.

These Tartarians, aunciently called Scythians, inhabit the Northern part of Asia, a countrey never conquered by any of the Monarchs, privileged from their victorious arms chiefly by its own barrenesse: For except souldiers were ambitious of hunger and cold, here is nothing to countervail their pains of an invasion; yea, no meat to maintain them. It is true, rhubarb the best of drugs groweth in this the worst of countreys: But souldiers seek rather for food then physick when they invade a countrey. A greater part of their land is undiscovered, though map-makers, rather then they will have their maps naked and bald, do perwile them with false hair, and fill up the *vacuum* (especially towards the North) with imaginary places of \* Urg, and Goz, and the plains of Bargu: So true it is what one saith wittily in the Comedie, That Phantastes the servant of Geographus travelled further beyond the Arctick circle then ever his master durst.

If it be surest to follow the most, the stream of Writers make it called Tartaria from the river Tarrar: but Europe and Asia will by wofull experience justifie the etymologie, if deduced from *Tartarus*, Hell. For when the spring-tides of this nation overflowed the banks, hell might seem to have broken loose, and to have sent so many devils abroad.

As for those that count them the off-spring of the ten tribes of Israel, which Salamanasor led away captive, because *Tatari* or *Totari* signifieth in the Hebrew and Syriack tongue, a residue or remnant, \* learned men have sufficiently confuted it. And surely it seemeth a forced and overstrained deduction, to farre-fetch the name of Tartars from an Hebrew word, a language so farre distant from them. But no more hereof: because perchance herein the womans reason hath a masculine truth; and the Tartarians are called so because they are called so. It may be, curious Ety-mologists (let them lose their wages who work in difficult trifles) seek to reap what was never sown, whilst they studie to make those words speak reason, which are onely *voces ad placitum*, imposed at pleasure.

Under their new name Tartarians, they keep their old nature  
of

Ann.

Dom.

1232.

1232.

of Scythians, fierce, cruel; yea, sometimes in stead of other meat, making man their meat.\* One humour they have, much affecting the owl, a bird which other nations scorn and hate, as the uther of ill luck. The occasion was this, A King of Tartarie, fought for by his enemies, hid himself in a bush, whither his foes came to seek him; when presently an owl flew out of the place: Whereupon they desisted from further search, conceiving that that anchorite bird proclaimed nothing was there but solitude and desolation. Hence in gracie they never count themselves more gay then when their helmets are hung with owls feathers. Whereat I should strange more, but that I find this fowl dedicated to \*Minerva the Goddess of wit, and that Athens ( schoolmistress of the world ) counted it a token of victorie. The King of these Tartarians stilyeth himself, *The great Cham*, and is monarch of a great part of the world in possession, of the rest in imagination. He taketh and his subjects give him little lese then divine honour; who in other things at this time were pure Pagans and Idolaters. Now their countrey, which is like a poore man whose common is overstocked with children, swarming with more bees then hives, sent their superfluous numbers to seek their fortunes amongst the Christians. They needed no steel-armour who had iron-bodies. Only with bows, cruelle, and multitude they overranne Lituania, Podolia, Polonia, and those countreys which are the East-boundaries of Europe. Others took their way Southward into Asia, committing outrages as they went; and sensible how incomparably their own countrey was surpass'd for pleasure and profit by these new lands (blame not their judgement if they preferred a palace before a prison) they little cared to return home.

Their incursions into Europe were so farre and frequent, that Pope Innocent the fourth, about the yeare 1245, began to fear them in Italy. Wherefore he sent Askelin, a Friar much admired in that age, with three other, into Tartaria, to convert that nation to Christianitie. Where Askelin, in stead of teaching them the elements of our religion, laid this foundation, to amplusie to them the power of the Pope, setting him out in his full dimensions; How he was above all men in the Christian world. A good nurse, to feed infants, in stead of milk, with such dry bones: enough almost to affright them from entring into our Church, seeing such a giant as they painted the Pope to stand before the doore.

But Baiothnoi chief Captain of the Tartarian armie (for they were not admitted to speak with the great Cham himself) cried quits with this Friar, outvying him with the greatness and dierinitie of their Cham; and sent back by them a blunt letter:

\* See Mercator's maps.

\* See Brier-woods Enquierie, chap. 13.

169  
\* Sabell. Enn.  
9. lib. 6. pag.  
391.

\* Vide Erasm.  
Adag. in  
Noctua volat.

170  
\* Magdeburg.  
Cent 1. c 2.  
Sed ex Vinc-  
cent. lib. 31.  
cap. 52.

\* Pope, know this; Thy messengers came and brought letters to us: Thy messengers speake great words; we know not whether thou enjoydest them, or whether they speake of themselves: and in thy letters thou writeſt thus, Many men you kill, slay, and deſtroy. At laſt he thus concluded; If thou wilt ſet upon our land, water, and patrimonie, it behoveth that thou, Pope, in thy proper person come unto us; and that thou come to him who containeth the face of the whole earth; meaning their great Cham.

Never did his Holinesſe ſo meet with his match before. He durſt not meet the great Cham of the Eaſt, his competitor in the imaginary monarchie of the world, to tric whose title was trueſt. Let others tear their ſkins, he would ſleep in a whole one. And indeed that ſhepherd loved his flock of Christians better, then by his abſence in a long journey into Tartaria to expoſe them to the wolves. And ſo the conversion of Tartaria at that time was disappointed.

It is a prettie quare, Whether Turks or Tartars be eaſier converteable to Christian religion: I mean *ex parte objecti*; for otherwife all things are equally eaſie to an infinite agent. Now it ſeemeth the Tartars are reducible with moſt facilitie to our religion: For pure Paganisme and native Infidelitie, like white cloth, will take the tincture of Christianitie; whereas the Turks are foiled and ſtained with the irreligious religion of Mahometanisme, which firſt with much pains muſt be ſcoured out of them. And though they may ſeem to be in ſome forwardneſſe to conuerſion, because they have a kind of knowledge and reverencie of Christ, yet the beſt joynſt of their belief muſt be broken before it can be well ſet, and every drop of their preſent religion pumped out, before true faith be iuſtled into them. And experience, the moſt competente wiſeſſe herein, hath proved, That afterwards more Tartars, both private men and Princes, then Turks of either condition, have embracēd Christianitie. Enough at this time; we ſhall have occaſion too ſoon to ſpeak more of the Tartars.

Chap.

Anno  
Dom.  
1232.

1232.

*The Greeks recover their Empire from the Latines; The Holy Warre thereby much en-damaged.*

IT was conceiued that it would be much beneficiale to the Pilgrimes in their voyages to Palestine, that the Latines were lately poſſeſſed of the Grecian Empire: For what is faved, is gained: And grant that the Latines in Greece ſhould not actual-ly affiſt in the Holy Warre, yet it was a conſiderable advantage what all justly expected, That Pilgrimes ſhould now have ſafe and ſecure paſſage through Grecia, the pitfall which formerly had devoured ſo many.

But theſe fair hopes ſoon miſcarried. For what through the celeriteſe of Theodorus Lascaris, and the gravitie of John Ducas his ſonne in law, who reigned as Grecian Emperours in Nice, the Greeks recovered every foot of ground that the Latines had wonne from them: Only the Venetians being good at holdfaſt, kept their portion when all others had ſpent theirs, and enjoy Candie to this day. This is imputed to their diſcretione in their choice, who in the ſharing of this Empire amongst the Western Princes, refuſed the continent countreyſ (though greater in extent, and richer in cities) and choſe rather the Islands, which being as little worlds in themſelves, were moſt capable of entire fortifications, especially in their way, who were moſt power-ful at ſea.

Sixty yeares almoſt did the Latines make a hard ſhift to hold Conſtantinople, under five ſucceeding Emperours: 1. Baldwin the firſt, Earl of Flanders; 2. Henrie his brother; 3. Peter, Count of Auxerre in France, Henrie's ſonne in law; 4. Robert; 5. Baldwin the ſecond, and laſt. An example which the ob-ſervers of the ominous circulation or return of names alledge, That as Baldwin was the firſt, ſo Baldwin was the laſt La-tine Emperour in Grecia.

Of theſe, the firſt Baldwin had his hands and feet cut off, and died in a ditch; Peter invited to a feaſt, payed the ſhot with his life; the other three died without any violence, but with much miſerie. And thus their conqueſt of Grecia, like a little ſprig ſtuck into the ground, did ſprout at the firſt whileſt it had any ſap in it, but then withered for want of a root.

Indeed it was iſpoſſible long to continue: For when the ge-neration of the primitive adventurers in this action were dead, there wanted another to ſucceſſ them; and the countreyſ whence

Z 2 they

171

Chap. 3.

172

they came were so farre off that supplies of Latine people came thither very slowly: Only Venice well peopled her parts from the vicinitie of her dominions. And that number of fouldiers which is sufficient by sudden conquest to over-runne a countrey, is incōmptent without a seconde edition of new supplies, to make good, manage, and maintain it: especially being to meddle with the Greeks, farre exceeding them in number, subject onely out of fear, longing daily for their libertie and opportunitie to recover it.

Let never any Pilgrimes hereafter make Greece their inne in their journey to Palestine. Yea, also at this time the furnace of the Grecian jealousy was made seven times hotter: For besides this Civil, an Ecclesiasticall and Spirituall breach happened betwixt them and the Latines; which we come now to describe.

### Chap. 4.

#### *The uncurable breach betwixt the Eastern and Western Churches, with the occasion thereof.*

**H**itherto Grecians and Latines lived together in Palestine in some tolerable correspondencie; differing in judgement, but complying in affections; as counting themselves two severall sides, yet both making up the bodie of Christians. But now by an unhappy discord they were irreconcilably parted asunder, to the great advantage of the Turks and prejudice of the Holy Warre. We will fetch this flame from the first spark; and though we go farre about, the length of the journey will be recompensed by the goodnessse of the way.

Anciently in the Primitive time the Church of Rome was esteemed the first and chiefest of all others, but without any jurisdiction above them. Because that was the Imperiall citie and Queen of the world, therefore the Church therein was highest in account; as the candle which is in the fairest candlestick is alwayes set above the rest (though otherwise equall) [t]o it in light) at the upper end of the table.

It happened afterward that the Emperour removed his seat from Rome to Constantinople: Whereupon orphane Rome suddenly decayed (for the Emperours Court carried day with it, and left night behind it) was chief mourner at the funeralls of her own greatnessse; and from a pleafant garden turned a wildernesse overgrown with Goths, Vandals, and other barbarous weeds: whilst Constantinople tricked and tired her self,

Anno  
Dom.  
1237.

173  
started up in an instant great, rich, and stately; infomuch that John her Patriarch claimed to be Universall Bishop above all other. Gregorie the Great, Bishop of Rome, stoutly withstood him, protesting that he was the usher of Antichrist who assumed that swelling title; wherein he heated the brand to mark his successour with: For Boniface ( save one, the next ) Pope of Rome so dealt with Phocas the Emperour of Constantinople, that he got himself confirmed Universall Bishop over the whole world. A Chaplain and a Patrone well met, both usurpers, supporting one another (like stones in an arch) with their reciprocall aid; Phocas held Boniface in his chair, and Boniface kept Phocas in his throne. And thus was the Pope of Rome first possessed of his Primacie both of dignitie and authoritie, both of precedencie and of power and jurisdiction over all other Churches. As for his pretense, to challenge it by Commission from Christ and Succession from Peter, this string to his bow is so full of gauls, frets, and knots, it cannot hold, and is broken by many learned Divines.

However, Constantinople rather overborn then overcome, for want rather of strength then stomach, ever rebelled, or rather resisted ( for no rebellion against usurpation ) Romes suprēmacie (especially when she found her self befriended with any advantage) for many hundred yeares after.

It happened ( to come to the matter in hand ) that a Grecian \* Archbisshop went to Rome, there to have his confirmation. Where the Court demanded of him such unreasonabla fees, ( toll more then the grist ) that the Prelate perceived it would weaken him to be confirmed, and shake his estate to settle him in his Bishoprick. Home therefore he cometh with a loud alarm against the extortions of Rome, and mustereth together many of his countrey-men; who hereupon for ever withdrew their obedience from Rome, and threw off that heavy yoke they could not bear, hereafter owing her for their sister not mother.

It may seem strange that the Romane Court being here justly taxed for extortion, would not amend it. But how often soever she be told of her dirty face, she will never wash it: For reforming would argue a former fault; and they feared, if they yeelded themselves guilty in one point, it would shake the whole fabrick of their credit. Besides, if the Grecians had received satisfaction and redresse in this grievance, it would have given them pretense to prepare more requests, and to think that they also were due. Lastly, no strength of perswasion will draw men from those sinnes which are glued unto them by their profit. Thus the avarice of the Romish officers ( as of late the shamefull shameleſſe covetousnesse of their Indulgence mongers

\* Matth. Par-  
ij. in anno  
1237 pag. 622.

174

mongers occasioned Luthers falling from them) caused the Grecians wholly to renounce their subjection to that See : and Germanus Patriarch of Constantinople now grew absolute of himself, without any dependence on the Pope.

His Holiness despairing to reduce them by fair means, proclaimed warre against them. And as formerly against the Albingenses, so now against the Grecians, resolved to send an armie of \* Croised fouldiers : It being his custome to make the secular power little better than an hangman to execute those he shall please to condemn : Yea, he hath turned the back of the sword towards Infidels, and the edge against Christians dissenting from him in small matters. But few voluntaries were found for this service, because of a pious horrour and religious reluctance against so odious an imployment : Only in \* Cyprus ( I beleive in a private persecution rather then open warre ) some Grecians were put to death ; the Pope using the same feruite against wolves and wondring sheep , foes and prodigall children.

## Chap. 5.

*Wherein the Greeks dissent from the Latines ; What must charitably be conceived of them.*

Sir Edw.  
Sand. Relig.  
of the West,  
pag. 233. &  
234.

**B**esides their rejecting of the Popes both Ecclesiasticall and Temporall tyrannie, the Greeks differ from the Latines in other matters of moment : For they maintain the procession of the holy Spirit from the Father alone. As for their other tenets they stand in some middle terms of opinion betwixt Papists and Protestants ; yet so, that they approach nearer the Papists in more, to us in more weighty and dominative points. With Rome they concurre in Transubstantiation , in the whole sacrifice of the Mass , in praying to Saints and for the dead, in Auricular Confession , in worshipping of Pictures ( onely of Christ and our Ladie ) but all Images they detest; a kind of Purgatorie they hold, but not in hell or the skirts thereof , nor by any outward torment. With us they consent in the Sufficiencie of the Scriptures to salvation , in denying the Infallibilitie of the Church ( much more of the Pope ) the overplus of Merits, Service ununderstood , Indulgences, Liberaties out of Purgatorie, and the like.

Hereupon the Romanists condemn them all for hereticks and castawayes, killing more then a third of all Christians ( as Cain did a quarter of mankind with a blow ) with this their uncharitable

Anno  
Dom.  
1237.

Anno  
Dom.  
1237.

table censure. But heaven-gate was not so easily shut against multitudes when S. Peter himself wore the keyes at his girdle. And let us not with rash judging thrust all into the pit of hell, whom we see walking neare the brink thereof. We shall think better of them if we consider , That

First, their tenets wherein they dissent from the Romanists are found enough, save that of the holy Ghost. Concerning which it is an usefull *quare*, Whether, granting the first authours and ringleaders of that errorr in a bad condition, there be not some favour to be allowed to those who in simplicitie succeed to hereditary errorrs received from their ancestours, if they do not wilfully barre nor bolt their eyes against the beams of the truth, but be willing ( as we charitably conceive of the Greeks ) to receive and embrace better instruction.

Secondly, the Master of the Sentences ( waited on herein with other learned men ) is of opinion, That in the sence of the Greek Church, à *Filio* and *Per Filium* is no reall difference, but a question *in modo loquendi*. Sure it would have grated the foundation, if they had so denied the procession of the holy Ghost from the Sonne, as thereby to make an inequality betwixt the two Persons : But since their form of speech is, That the holy Ghost proceedeth from the Father by the Sonne, and is the Spirit of the Sonne, without making any difference in the consubstantialitie of the Persons, their doctrine may passe with a favourable interpretation.

Thirdly, our quickest sight in the matter of the Trinitie, is but one degree above blindness. Wherefore as concerning it, let our pietie lodge there, where in other disputes the deceit of Sophisters used to nestle it self, namely, *in universalibus*, in large and generall expressions, and not descend to curious particulars. To search into the manner of the Spirits procession, is neither manners nor religion, and rather falleth under an awfull adoration and belief then an exact and curious enquire.

Lastly, this their tenet doth not infect any other point in Divinitie with its poysonous inferences. Some errorrs are worse in their train then in themselves, which ( as the Dragon in the Revelation drew down a third part of the starres with his tail ) by their bad consequences pervert other points of religion : But this Grecian opinion ( as learned men propound it ) concerning the Holy Ghost, hath this happynesse, that it is barren, and begetteth no other bad tenets from it, being entire in it self.

More may be alledged for the lessening of this errorr : But grant it in its full extent, yet surely the moderate judgement of that learned \* Divine, whose memorie smelleth like a *Field* the Lord hath blessed, will abide triall, who in effect thus conclude, Their schismes are sinfull, wicked, and inexcusables; their doctrine

175

\* *Baudvent.*  
1. *Sent. dist.*  
11. *art. 1.*  
*quefl. 1.*  
*Scotus. 1.*  
*Sent. dist. 2.*  
*quefl. 1.*  
*Thos. Aquin.*  
*part. 1. quefl. 2.*  
36. *art. 2.*

\* In his third  
book of the  
Church,  
chap. 5.

176

*\* Eustas. diff.  
11. S. 2.*

doctrine dangerous, but not so damnable as excluding from all possiblitie of salvation.

As for the observation of a \* Schoolman, That afterwards the Turks wonne Constantinople on Whitsunday, the day dedicated to the memorall of the holy Spirit, as if God herein pointed at the sinne of the Grecians in dishonouring the holy Ghost; we leave it to the Readers discretion, desiring rather to be scepticall then definitive in the causes of Gods judgements.

Anno  
Dom.  
1237.

## Chap. 6.

*A comparative estimate of the extent of the Greek and Latine Church; What hope of reconciliation betwixt them; The influence this breach had on the Holy Warre.*

If that Religion were surely the best which is of the greatest latitude and extent, Surveyers of land were fitter then Divines to judge of the best Religion. Neither is it any matter of great moment to measure the greatness of either Church. But because Rome maketh her Universalsitie such a master-piece to boast of, let us see if the Greek Church may not outshoot her in her own bow.

If we begin with the Grecian Church in Africa under the Patriarch of Alexandria, thence proceeding into Asia, and fetch a compass about Syria, Armenia, Asia the lesse, with Cyprus, Candie, and other Islands in the mid-land-sea, and so come into Grecia; if hence we go into Russia and Muscovia ( who though differing in ceremonies, differ not in doctrine, as a sundry dialect maketh not a severall language ) to take only entire Kingdomes, and omit parcels : it is a larger quantitie of ground then that the Romish religion doth stretch to, since Luther cut so large a collop out of it, and withdrew North-Europe from obedience to his Holiness.

Perchance the Romanists may plead they have lately improved the patrimonie of their religion by new purchases in both Indies : But who knoweth not that those people, rather watered then baptizied, affrighted with crueltie into Christianitie, deserve not to be accounted settled and well-grounded professours of their religion ?

As for reconciliation betwixt the Grecians and Latines, it is utterly improbable, except the Greeks submit to the Popes Princacie, which they will never do. No hope then of their meeting together, when neither partie will stirre a step towards other.

True

True it is, some fourty years since ( anno 1594 ) the Bishops of little Russia(a countrey following the Eastern Church, but under the King of Poland) on condition they would accept the Popes \* supremacie, were dispensed with, and permittid in other matters to adhere to the Greek Church, and keep union with it; the Pope manifesting herein, that he aimest not so much at the reduction of the Greeks to the truth, as to his own obedience.

Besides the hatred they have against the Popes pride, another great hinderance of the union is the small intercourse the Eastern Christians have or desire to have with the Western. They live amongst the Turks, and are grown to be contented slaves ; and having long since parted with their hopes, now almost have lost their desire of libertie.

We must not forger, how some fiftie yeares ago solemn news was reported in Rome, that the \* Patriarch of Alexandria, with all the Greek Church in Africa, by their Embassadours had submitted and reconciled themselves to the Pope, and from him received Abfolution and Benediction : All which was a politick lie, perchance therefore reported, that it might make impression in the minds, and raise and confirm the spirits of the vulgar, who easilly beleeve all that their betters tell them. And though afterwards this report was controlled to be falle, yet mens spirits then being cold, were not so sensible of it as before : and the former news came to many mens eares, who never heard afterwards of the check and confutacion thereof. Nor is there any State in the world that maketh such use and advantage, as the Papall doffis of false news. To conclude, As it is a maxime in Philosophie, *Ex quibus conformati ex istem sursum.* so a great part of their religion consisting of errors and falsehoods, it is suitable that accordingly it shoulde keepe up and maintained with forgeries and deceits.

To return to Palestyn. This rent ( not in the least but whole cloth ) betwixt these Churches, was no mean hinderance to the Holy Warre. Formerly the Greeks in Syria were not so nearely cut asunder from the Latines, but that they hung together, by one great sinew in the common cause agaynst the Turk the enemie to both. But since this last breach, the Greeks notwithstanding their desires propend and incline to the Turks, being better emperced they shoulde conquer from whom they shoulde have a quiet and free exercise of their religion, and secure dwelling in any place, paying a set tribute ; then the Latines, who they feared, would force their conciences, and bring their souls in subjection to the Popes supremacie. Expect we then never hereafter, that either their hearts or hands shoulde afford any assistance to our Pilgrimes in their desiges.

\* Some conceive, that at this day if the Western Christians

A a

should

177

\* Poffevin. in  
Apparatus sac-  
ro, in Rothe-  
ni. See Brier-  
woods Enqui-  
ries, chap. 18.

\* Sir Edw.  
Sand. vesp.  
Relig. pag. 100.

178

should stoutly invade Turkie with any likelihood to prevail, the Greeks therein would runne to aid them. But others are of a contrary judgement; considering, First, the inveterate and in-laid hatred (not to be washed off) they bear the Latines: Secondly, the jealousie they have that they will never keep promise with them, who have alwayes a warrant dormant from the Pope to break all contracts prejudiciale to the Romish Church: Thirdly, that custome and long continuance in slaverie have so hardened and brawned their shoulders, the yoke doth not wring them so much: yea, they had rather suffer the Turks, being old full flies, to suck them, then to hazard their galled backs to new hungry ones; finding by experiance, That they themselves live on better terms of servitude under the Turk, lesse grated and grinded with exactions, then some of their countrey-men do under the Latines; for instance, in Zante and Candie under the Venetians.

### Chap. 7. *Theobald King of Navarre maketh an unsuccesfull voyage into Palestine.*

1237.  
T He ten yeares truce by this time was expired which Frederick made with the Turks; and Reinold Vice-roy of Palestine by instructions from him concluded another truce of the same term with them. He saw that this young Christian Kingdome of Jerusalem, like an infant, would thrive best with sleeping, with peace and quietnesse: Nor was it any policie for him to move at all, where there was more danger to hurt then hope to help their present estate.

But though this peace was honourable and profitable, having no fault but that Frederick made it; yet the Templars who did not relish the father, must needs distast the child: They complained that this peace was not used as a slumber to refresh the soldierys spirits, but as a lethargie to benumine their valour; and chiefly snarled at this indignitie, That the Turks had access to the Temple of the Sepulchre, and that Goats had free commonage in the Sheeps pasture. Wherfore Pope Gregorie, to \*despite the Emperour Frederick, caused the Dominicanes and Franciscanes his trumpeters, to incite people to the Holy Warre. These were two twin-orders, but the Dominicane the eldest, which now were no sooner hatched in the world, but presently chirped in the pulpits. In that age Sermons were news, and meat for Princes & common men: Yea, the Albingenes with their

\* Magdeburg.  
Cent. 13. cap.  
16. Decennia.  
les inducas  
super denou  
confitemaratur.

\* Idem, ibi-  
dem.

Anno

Dom.

1237.

1239.

their preaching had drowned the voices of secular Priests, if these two Orders had not helped to out-noise those supposed heretics. These amplified with their rhetorick the calamities of the Christians, tyrannie of the Turks, merit of the cause, probability of success; performing their parts with such gravite, shew of devotion, accents of passion, not glued on for the present purpose, but so naturall as from true affection, that many were woed to undertake the voyage: Principally, Theobald King of Navarre, Almerick Earl of Montfert, Henric of Champaigne, Peter Earl of Bretaigne, with many others of inferiour rank.

Ships they had none; wherefore they were fain to shape their passage by land through Grecia: where they were entertained with treacherie, faminc, and all the miseries which wait on distressed armes. These came last that way, and ( I may say ) shut the doore: For no Christian armie ever after went that tedious journey by land.

Having passed the Bosporus, they marched into Bithynia: thence through Galatia they came unto the mountain Taurus, where they were much damnified by the Turks, who fell on and off upon them, as they were aduised by their own advantages. The Christians desired no other gift but that a set battel might be given them; which the Turks would not grant, but played at distance and would never close. But with much ado the Christians recovered to Antioch, having scarce a third part of them left, their horses all dead, and themselves scarce mounted on their legs, miserably weak; as what the mercie of sword, plague, and famine had pleased to spare.

Hence the Templars conducted them to Gaza, where they fell on foraging the countrey of the Sultan, assaulting no places which were of strength, or honour to subdue, but onely spoyled poore villages, which counted themselves walled with the truce as yet in force. Abundance of wealth they got, and were now late returning home, when after their plentifull supper a deare and sharp reckoning was called for: Behold, the Turks in great numbers fell upon them neare unto Gaza, and the Christians down with their bundles of spoil, and out with their swords, bravely defending themselves till such time as the night parted the fray. Here they committed a great errour, and (as one may say) a neglect in over-diligence: for in stead of reposing themselves to rest, and appointing a set watch, they all lay in a manner *Perdus*, no one slumbering all night, but attending their enemies; contrary to the rules of an armie, which with Argus should never have all its eyes wake or sleep together. Next morning when the Turks, whose numbers were much increased, set upon them, alas! they being but few to many, faint to fresh, were not able to make any forcible resistance: Yet, what they could

180

could not pay in present, they pawned their lives for ; and their arms being too weak for their hearts, they were rather killed then conquered. Earl Henrie was slain, Almerick taken prisoner, the King of Navare escaped by the swiftnesse of his Spanish gennet; which race, for their winged speed, the Poets feign'd to be begot of the wind.

Meantime the other Christians looked on, and saw their brethren slaughtered before their eyes ; and yet though they were able to help them, were not able to help them, their hands being tied with the truce, and Reinoldus charging them no way to infringe the peace concluded with the Sultan. Hereupon many cursed him as the Christians cut-throat ; he as fast condemned the King of Navare and his armie for breaking the truce. And though the Papall faction pleaded that the former peace concluded not these late adventurers, and that it was only made with Frederick the Emperour ; yet he representing the whole bodie of Christianitie, all the bundle of their shifts could not piece out a satisfactory answer, but that they were guilty of faith-breaking.

Home hastened the King of Navare with a small retinue, clouding himself in privateneſſe, as that actour who cometh off with the diflike of the ſpectatours, stealeth as inſinually as he may into the tiring-house. Expectation, that friendly foe, did him much wrong ; and his performance fell the lower, because men heightened their looking for great matters from him.

### Chap. 8.

#### *Richard Earl of Cornwall saileth to the Holy Land, His performance there, and the censure thereof.*

\* *Matth. Parij. pag. 67a*

\* *Camden, in Cornwall.*

Fifteen dayes after the departure of Theobald, Richard Earl of Cornwall, brother to Henry the third then King of England, landed at Ptolemais. This Prince was our English Craf-fus, or Croesus. Cornwall was his Indies, where he turned time into gold and silver. So wel-moneyed he was, that for ten yeares together he might for every day expend an hundred marks : So that England never ſince had together a poorer King and a richer Subject.

Before he began his voyage he crayed a ſubſidie of prayers from the Monks of S. Albans : Yea, ſcarce was there any Convent appearing for pietie, to whose devotions he recommended

not

1240.  
Oſtib.  
II.

Anno  
Dom.  
1240.

181

not himſelf, counting that ſhip to fail the ſureſt, which is driven with the breath of godly mens prayers. Theodoricus Lord Prior of the English Hospitallers, with many other Barons and brave ſouldiers attending him, paſſed through France, and was there honourably entertained by King Lewis.

Being come to the Mediterranean ſea, the Popes Legate brought him a flat countermand, that he muſt go no further, but instantly return. Richard at firſt was aſtoniſhed hereat : but quickly his anger got the maſterie of his amazement, and he fell on fuming ; \*Was this Christs Vicar ? Unlike was he to him, who was thus unlike to himſelf, who would ſay and unsay, ſolemny ſummon, then ſuddenliy caſhier his Holy ſouldiers. This was deluding of peoples devotions with false alarms, to make them put their armour on to put it off again. As for his own ſelf, he had vowed this voyage, his honour and treasure was engaged therein, and the Pope ſhould not blaſt his ſettled reſolutions with a breath : his ſhips were manned, victualled, and ſailing forward, and in ſuch great actions the ſetting forth is more then half the journey.

All know his Holineſſe to be too wary an archer to ſhoot away his arrows at nothing. He had a mark herein, a plot in this reſtraint, but that too deep for others to fathom. It could not be this. To make this rich Earl ( a fish worth angling for ) to com-mute his voyage into money, and to buy a diſpenſation of his Holineſſe to ſtay at home, as formerly he had ſerved many meaner Pilgrimes. Surely, though the Popes covetouneſſe might have prompted, his wiſdome would have diſſuaded him from a project ſpunne with ſo courſe a thred.

On faileth Earl Richard, and ſafely arriveth at Ptolemais, where he is well welcomed, especially by the Clergie, ſolemny ſinging, \*Bleſſed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord. He proclaimed, No Christian ſhould depart for want of pay, for he would entertain any, and give them good wages that would do work in this warre. But he found the Chriftians there ſhivered into ſeverall factions, and the two great Orders, Hospitallers and Templars, two great conuincions of the Holy cauſe. Of theſe the Hospitallers were the ſeniors in ſtanding, their originaſl being dated eighteen yeares before the Templars ; and therefore challenged ſuperioritie. But that which made the younger brother ſo brisk, was, that he was his fathers darling. The Tem- plars in all their broyls had ſupport from the Pope, because the others were ſuſpected to have a ſmack of the Imperiaſl faction. This made them active, daring, offering of affronts : And what country-men ſoever the Templars were, they were alwayes Italians, that is, true to the Triple Crown. These being madded with ambition, were the more outragious for their high fare

A a 3 (their

\* *Matth. Parij. in Henr. 3. pag. 19.*

182

(their great revenues) and deserved to be dieted with a poorer pittance, except they would have used their strength better. Our Earl knew, to please one side would certainly displease the other, and to please both would probably please neither. Wherefore he managed his matters entirely to himself, without relating to either of the parties, taking no ground of their giving, but bowling at the publick good by the aim of his own eye.

The Sultans in Syria (for the Turkish power there was divided into severall Sultanies, as those of Damafus, \* Cracci, Seif-fer, but Babylon the chiefeft) hearing of Richards preparations, proffered peace unto him. But whilest as yet the conditions were in suspense, Richard fortifyed Askelon (in all the bunch there was not a better key, or harbour of more importance) not onely to strength but state, with marble pillars and statues; though the silent ruines thereof at this day confess not to the beholders that any such cost was ever bestowed there. He also caused the corpses of the Christians killed at the late battell at Gaza, and hitherto unburied, decently to be interred; and appointed an annuall salariie to a Priest to pray for their souls. Hereby he had the happiness with little cost to purchase much credit, and the living being much taken with kindness to the dead, this burying of those Christians, with pious persons wonne him as much repute as if he had killid so many Turks.

At last the truce for ten yeares was concluded with the Sultan; all Christian captives were discharged and set free, many forts of them restored, and matters for the main reduced to the same estate they were at the first peace with Frederick the Emperour: and Richard returning through Sicily and by Rome, where he visited his Holiness, safely came home to England: Where he was welcomed with bad news, that a discontented Cornish man, banished for his misdemeanours, had found out tinne-mines in \* Bohemia, which afterwards more asswaged the swelling of this Earls bags then all his voyage to Palestine: For till that time that metall was onely fetched from England, which afforded meat to some forein countreys, and dishes to all.

His voyage was variously censured: The Templars which consented not to the peace, flouted therat, as if all this while he had laboured about a difficult nothing, and as good never a whit as never the better, for the agreement would never hold long. Others thought he had abundantly satisfied any rationall expectation: For he \* compelled, saith one, the Saracens to truce, (a strange compulsion without violence, except the shewing of a scabbard) he restored many to the life of their life, their libertie; which alone was worth all his pains; the peace he con-

Ann.  
Dom.  
1240.

1240.

\* Called anciently Arabia Petrea, Tyria, &c. lib. 21. cap. 5.

\* Matth. Paris. pag. 765.

\* Camden, in  
Cornwall.

Anno  
Dom.  
1241.

cluded was honourable; and a cheap Olive-branch is better then deare Bayes.

Two of our English Richards were at Palestine; one famous for drawing his sword, the other his purse. He was also remarkable herein, that he brought all his men and ships safe home (next of kin to a miracle) and none will denie, but that in such dangerous adventures a faver is a gainer. One good he got hereby, This journey brought him into play amongst forein Princes; henceforward the beyond-sea-world took notice of him, and he of it. Never would he have had the face to have courted the Crown Imperiall, if these his travels had not put boldnesse and audacie into him, which made him afterwards a stiff riviall to bid for the Empire of Germanie.

183

### Chap. 9. *The Corasines cruelly sack the citie of Jerusallem, and kill the Christians therein.*

**A**bout this time (though we find not the punctuall date there-of) happened the death of Reinoldus Fredericks Lieutenant in Syria, who by his moderation had been a good benefactor to the Holy Warre. But the Templars counted him to want metall, because he would not be mad and causelessly break the truce with the Sultan. In his grave was buried the happiness of the Christians in Palestine: for now the lawlesse Templars observe no other rule but their own will.

And now the inundation of the Tartarians in spite of all dammes and banks overranne the North of Asia, and many nations fled from their own countreys for fear of them. Amongst other the Corasines (called by some Choermines, and Grossoms) a fierce and warlike people, were notwithstanding by the Tartarians forced to forsake their land.

Being thus uncornered, they had their recourse to the Sultan of Babylon, and petitioned him to bestow some habitation upon them. Their suit he could neither safelie grant nor denie: A deniall would edge their discontent into desperatenesse; and such sturdy dangerous vagabonds might do much harm: to admit them to be joyned-tenants in the same countrey with the Turks, was a present inconvenience, and would be a future mischief. In stead therefore of giving them a house, he sent them to a work-house; yet so, that they apprehended it a great courtesy done unto them: For he bestowed on them all the lands which the Christians held in Palestine; liberall to give away what

\* Matth. Paris. pag. 851.

184

what was none of his, and what the others must purchase before they could enjoy. The Sultan encouraged them to invade that countrey, whose people he pretended were weak and few, the land wealthy and fruitfull, so that the conquest would be easie, especially they having his assistance in the present service, and perpetuall patronage hereafter.

Animated herewith in come the Corasines with their wives and children (bringing their houſholds with them to win houses and lands for them) into Syria, and march directly to Jerusalem, which being a weak and unfortified place, was taken without resistance. Weak and unfortified! Strange! It is confefed on all ſides, that Frederick the Emperour and Reinoldus his Lieutenant ſpared no expence in ſtrengthening this citie; ſince which time we find no ſolemne taking it by the Turks: Who then can expect leſſe then an impregnablen place, where ſo much coſt was ſown? which driveth us to conceive one of theſe three things; Either that the weakeſſe of this citie was chiefly in the defenders hearts; Or elſe that formerly there happened ſome blind and ſilent diſpoiling of this place not mentioned by Authours; Or laſtly, that Jeruſalem was a Jericho, I mean, a place curſed in building; like Pharaohs lean kine, never a whit the fatter for devouring much meat; and which ſtill went in rags, though her friends beſtowed change of raiment upon her.

Thus this citie, after that it had been poſſeſſed fifteen yeare by the Christians, was wonne by this barbarous people, never ſince regained to our religion. Sleep, Jeruſalem, ſleep in thy ruines, at this day of little beautie and leſſe strength, famous onely for what thou haſt been.

The Christians flying out of Jeruſalem with their families, took their courſe towards Joppa; but looking back; beheld their own enſignes advanced on the citie-walls, fo done in policie by their enemies. Whereupon their credulitie thus commented, That their fellows had beaten the Corasines in Jeruſalem, and by theſe\* banners invited them to return: But going back, they found but cold (or rather too hot) entertainment, being ſlain every mothers child of them. Dull noſtrils! not to ſent to ſtale and rank a ſtratageme of their foes, fo often uſed, fo eaſily defeated; not to ſend ſome ſpies to taſt the bait before all swallowed it. But men marked out for deſtruclion, will runne their own heads into the halter.

\* Matth. Pa-  
ris pag. 835.

Chap.

Anno

Dom.

1244.

Chap. 10.

*Robert Patriarch of Jeruſalem, with the whole ſtrength of the Christians, conquered by the Corasines.*

**T**He desperatenesse of the disease priviledgeth the taking of any Phyſick. The Christians being now in deep diſtreſſe, reſolved on a dangerous course, but (as their caſe stood) thought neceſſary: For they made peace with the Sultan of Damafus and Sciffer, and with the Sultan of Cracci; (Theſe were Dynaſtes in Syria of ſome good ſtrength, and were at diſcord with the Sultan of Babylon) and ſwearing them to be faithfull, borrowed an armie of their forces, with them joyntly to reſiſt the Corasines; ſeeking, faſh \* Frederick the Emperour, to find *fideſem in perfida*, truſt in treacherie. Many ſuſpected theſe auxiliare forces; thinking, though the forreſt-wolves fell out with the mountain ones, they would both agree againſt the ſheep.

Robert Patriarch of Jeruſalem was a moſt active Commander over all. S. Lukes day was the time agreed upon for the fatal battel, neare Tiberias was the place. As the Christians were ordering themſelves in array, it was queſtioned in what part of their armie their new Turkilh affiſiants ſhould be diſpoſed, and concluded that they ſhould be placed in the front, where if they did no other good, they would dull the appetiſte of their enemis ſword. This iſ thought to have been a notorious errore, and caufe of their overthrow. For though thoſe ſouldiers who mean to be falſe, will never be made faithfull in what place foever they be beſtowed, yet may they be made leſſe dangerous if caſt into the bodie or main battel of the armie, whence they have no ſuch ſcope to fling out, and to take advantage of place to do miſchief, as they haue either in the front or wings thereof. Thus in Cefars time, Crafus an experienced Generall under him being to bid the Gauls battel, \* *auxiliares copias, quibus ad pugnam non multum confidebat, in medium aciem collocauit*; that ſo being hemmed in before and behind, they might be ingaged to fight manfully without ſtarting away. And to instance in later times, our Richard the third (who though he uſurped the Crown, had, as none will denie, a true title both to proweſle and martiall poliſcie) marching to Bosworth, placed \* ſuſpected persons (whos bodies were with him and hearts with Earl Henrie) in the midſt, and thoſe whom he moſt truſted, before, behind, and on every ſide.

The battel being joyned, the \* Turks ranne over to the other ſide,

\* In his letter  
to Richard of  
Cornwall.

\* Cof. lib. 3.  
De bello Galli-  
co.

\* Graft. in  
Rich. 3. fol.  
102.

\* Matth. Pa-  
ris pag. 834.

186

side; though some braved them onely with cowardlinesse nor treacherie, and that they fled from the battel but not fell to the enemies. The Christians manfully stood to it, and though overpowred in number, made a great slaughter of their enemies, till at last they were quite overthrown. Of the Teutonic Order escaped but three; of three hundred Templars, but eighteen; of two hundred Hospitallers, but nineteen: The Patriarch (to use his own words) whom God reputed unworthy of martyrdome, saved himself by flight, with a few others. And this great overthrow, to omit leſſe partner-causes, is chiefly imputed to the Templars former ſo often breaking the truce with the Sultan of Babylon.

Thus were the Christians conquered by the Corasines, and beaten by a beaten nation; Palestine being wonne by those who could not keep their own country. Improving this victorie they left nothing to the Christians but Tyre, Ptolemais, and Antioch, with ſome few forts. Soon after, theſe Corasines elated herewith fell out with the Sultan himſelf; who in anger rooted out their nation, ſo that \* none of their name remained: Yea, \* all writers are ſilent of them both before this time and ever after: as if God at this very instant had created this people to puniſh Christians; which ſervice performed, they were annihilated again.

\* Matth. Pa-  
rif. pag. 475.  
\* Except any  
make them to  
be Chorasmi,  
a people placed  
by Atheneus  
in the East of  
Parthia.

## Chap. II.

*Lewis the ninth ſetteth forward againſt the Turks;  
The occation of his journey, and his attendants.*

**S**ome two yeares after, Lewis the ninth of that name, King of France, came to affiſt the Christians. The occation of his voyage, this; He had been viſited with a desperate ſickneſſe, inſomuch that all art cried craven, as unable to help him; and the Physicians resigned him to Divines, to begin with him where they ended: They also gave him over, and for a while he lay in a trance, not the leaſt breath brought news of any life left in him. Then Blanch the Queen-mother (and Queen of mothers for her care of her ſonne and his Kingdome) \* applied a piece of the Crosse unto him. Thereat (whether thereby, let others diſpute) he revived and recovered; and thereupon was Croiſed, and in thankfulneſſe bound himſelf with a vow to ſail to the Holy Land. But his Nobilitie diſſuaded him from that deſigne: The dangers were certain, the ſuccesse would be doubtful of ſo long a journey; his own Kingdome would be left deſolate,

\* Matth. Pa-  
rif. pag. 880.  
Et Pa. Amyl.  
in D. Ludov.  
pag. 214.

1245

1246.

Anno  
Dom.  
1245.

ſolate, and many miſchiefs unſeen as yet wou'd appear in his absence: Besides, his vow was made in his fickneſſe, whiſt reaſon was ſcarce as yet in the peaceable poſſeſſion of his mind, because of the remnant-dregs of his disease: It might alſo be diſpended with by the Pope; yea, his deſerts did challenge ſo much from his Holineſſe. King Lewis, as perſwaded hereat, laid down the Crosse to the great comfort and contentment of all the beholders: But then \* altering his countenance, he required the Crosse ſhould be reſtored to him again, and vowed to eat no bread until he was recognized with the Pilgrimes badge. And because his vow ſhould ſuffer no diſminution or abatement from his disease, now no longer Lewis the fick, but Lewis the ſound undertook the Holy Warre. His Nobles ſeeing him too ſtiff to be ubent, and counting it a kind of sacrilegious counſel to diſſuade him from ſo pious a work, left him to his own reſolutions. There went along with him his two brothers, Charles Earl of Anjou, Robert Earl of Artois, his own Queen, and their Ladies, Odo the Popes Legate, Hugh Duke of Burgundie, William Earl of Flanders, Hugh Earl of S. Paul, and William Longpath Earl of Sarisburie with a band of valiant Englishmen, who went without licence from Henry King of England: For in thoſe dayes this doctrine went currant, That their Princes leave was rather of complement then eſſentiall to their voyage; as if the band of this Holy Warre was an acquaintance from all others. Our Henrie diſpleased at this Earls departure, for his diſobedience deprived him of his Earldome and castle of Sarisburie, not ſuffering that ſleep to graze in his paſture, which would not own him for his ſhepherd. William also ſonne to this Earl, ſmarring for his fathers fault, never enjoyed that honour. And though King Henrie himſelf, being a Prince of more devotion then policie, did moft affectionately tender this Holy cauſe, yet he uſed this neceſſary ſeveriteſ towards this Earl at this time; firſt, because it wou'd weaken his land thus to be diſpeopled of martiall men; ſecondly, his ſubjects forwardneſſe might be iinterpretēd a ſecret chek of his own backwardneſſe in that warre; thirdly, the ſucking in of forrein aire did wean people from their naturall Prince, and did iſenſiblly uſher into their hearts an alienation from their own Sovereigne, and a dependence on the King of France; laſtly, he had ſome thoughts on that voyage himſelf, and reſerved ſuch prime Peers to attend on his own perfon thither.

The Pope gave to this King Lewis his charges, the tenth of the Clergies revenues through France for three years; and the King implored the Popes collectours to gather it, knowing those leaches were the beſt fuckers. Hereupon the ſtates of the Clergie were shaved as bare as their crowns; and a poore Priest who

187

\* Fox, Martyr-  
rolog. pag. 293.

Camden, in  
Wiltshire.

188

<sup>\* Matth. Par.</sup> had but twentie shillings annuall pension, was forced to pay two yearly to the King: And this by my \* Authour is made the cause of his following ill successe, there being much extorsion used by his under-officers. No wonder then if the wings of that armie did quickly flag, having so heavy a weight of curses hanging upon them. And though money be the sinews of warre, yet ill-gotten money, like gouty sinews, rather paineth then strengthens. True it is, that this pious King was no way guilty thereof, but such as were under him; and oftentimes the head doth ach for the ill vapours of the stomach. He himself most Princeily caused to be proclaimed through his realm, If any Merchant or other had been at any time injured by the Kings exactours, either by oppression or borrowing of money, let him bring forth his bill, shewing how and wherein, and he should be recompensed. How this was performed we find not, but it was a good lenitive plaister to asswage the peoples pain for the present.

Haying at Lyons took his leave of the Pope, and a blessing from him, he marched towards Avignon: Where some of the citie wronged his souldiers, especially with foul language. Wherfore his Nobles desir'd him that he would besiege the citie, the rather because it was suspected that therein his father was poysoned. To whom Lewis most Christianly, I come not out of France to \* revenge my own quarrels, or thofe of my father or mother, but injuries offered to Jesus Christ. Hence he went without delay to his navie, and committed himself to the sea.

Fox. Martyrolog. pag. 292.

\* Matth. Par.

## Chap. 12.

### *Lewis arriveth in Cyprus; The conversion of the Tartarians hindered; The treacherie of the Templars.*

Sailing forward with a prosperous wind, he safely arrived in Cyprus; where Alexius Lusignan King of the Island entertained him according to the stately hospitalitie. Here the pestilence (one of the ready attendants on great armies) began to rage: And though a French \* Writer saith it was *miasma magis quam fuisse*, yet we finde others, that two hundred and fourty Gentlemen of more died by force of the infection.

Higher came the Embassadours from a great Tartarian Prince (but surely not from Cham himself) invited by the fame of King Lewis his piety, professing to him, That he had renounced

\* P. Amyl.  
in Ludov. 9.  
pag. 215.

Anno  
Dom.  
1246

1246

1248.  
Aug.  
25.

Sept.  
20.

ced his Paganisme, and embraced Christianitie, and that he intended to send messengers to Pope Innocent to be further instructed in his religion. But some Christians which were in Tartarie disswaded him from so doing, lest the Tartarians coming to Rome should behold the dissolutenesse of mens lives there, and so refuse to suck the milk of sweet doctrine from so sowle and bitter nipples, besmeared about with bad and scandalous conversation. Yea, never could the Christian religion be shewed to \* Pagans at any time on more disadvantages. Grecians and Latines were at deadly feud; amongst the Latines, Guelfes and Gibellines fought to ruine each other: Humilitie was every-where preached, and pride practiced: They perswaded others to labour for heaven, and fell out about earth themselves: Their lives were contrary to their doctrines, and their doctrines one to another.

But as for these Embassadours, King Lewis received them very courteously, dismissing them with bounteous gifts. And by them he sent to their Master a Tent, wherein the historie of the Bible was as richly as curiously depicted in needle-work; hoping thus to catch his soul in his eyes, and both in that glorious present: Pictures being then accounted lay-men's books, though since of many condemned as full of *errata's*, and never set forth by authoritie from the King of Heaven to be means or workes of faith.

Whileft Lewis stayed in Cyprus, the Templars in the Holy Land began to have his greatnesse in suspition. This Order (as both the other, of Hospitallers and Teutonicks) though mown down to the bare roots at the last unsuccesfull battel, yet now in three yeares space sprung up as populous as ever before; their other brethren which lived in their severall Covents and Commandries over all Europe, having now refurnished the houses in Palestine.

Now these Templars were loth King Lewis should come to Ptolemais, though they counterfeited he should be very welcome there. They formerly there had commanded in chief without controul, and were unwilling, having long sat in the saddle, now to dismount and hold the stirrup to another. Besides, they would not have so neat and cleanly a greate see their stuttif houses, fearing Lewis his piety would shame their dissolutenesse (being one so godly in his conversation, that by the preaching in his life he had converted many Saracens) yea, perchance he being a strict Disciplinarian would punish their vitious manners. Wherfore they wrote to him out of Syria, to accept of a peace with the Sultan of Egypt now offered, and to proceed no further in warre against him.

The French King, whose heart was ever open to any fair  
B b 3 agree-

189

\* P. Amyl.  
ut prius.

\* P. Amyl.  
pag. 216.

190

*\* Knolls, Turk.  
bif. pag. 102.*

agreement, and shut against any dishonourable suspicions, had entertained the motion, had not the King of Cyprus, being more studed in the Templars treacheries, better intrusted him: For he told him, this was but a \* trick of their great Master, who under-hand had sent to the Sultan, and procured him to profer this peace only for their own private ends, for to divert the King from coming amongst them. Lewis, though the mildest and most patient of Princes, yet not a drone which wanted the sting of anger, commanded the Master of the Templars upon the price of his head thenceforward to receive no Embassage, nor keep any intelligence with their enemie; and resolved with himself to invade Egypt.

## Chap. 13.

*The wise preparations of the Egyptians; The valour of the French at their landing; Damia-ata wonne.*

**B**ut he stood so long in aiming, that the bird saw him, and had leisure to flie away, and Meladine the Egyptian King to provide himself to make resistance. Laft time (some thirty years before) when the Christians under John Bren invaded Egypt, they were not impeached in their arrivall, but suffered to land without any opposition. But Meladine now was sensible of the diſcommoditie in permitting his foes safely to come on shore: For first, they wasted and spoiled the countrey and the provision about them: Secondly, opportunitie was given to male-contents and ill-disposed persons to flic to the enemie: Lastly, he found it most policie to keep the enemie off at arms end, and to close at the laſt, and not to adventure his Kingdome on the ſingle die of a battel, but rather to fet it on a chance, that ſo he might have the more play for it. Wherefore he refolved to strengthen his maritime places, and not ſuffer them to land; though also herein he met with many difficulties. For as nothing was more certain then that Lewis would fet on Egypt, ſo nothing more uncertain, and because it was unknowne at what time or place he would come, all times and places were provided for. This exhausted a masse of treasure to keep in pay ſo many ſouldiers for many moneths together. But it is no time to dispute about unnecessary thrift, when a whole Kingdome is brought into question to be subdued.

And because the landing-places in Egypt are of great disadvantage

Anno

Dom.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

1249.

191

vantage to the defendants, yeelding them no shelter from the furie of their enemies artillerie, being all open places and plain (the shores there being not ſhod againſt the ſea with huge high rocks, as they are in ſome other countreys, because the land is low and leuel) Meladine was forced to forteſe welnigh an hundred and eighty miles along the ſeaſide; and what Nature had left bare, Art put the more clothes on; and by uſing of great industrie (ſuch as by Tullie is fitly termed *horribilis industria*) in ſhort ſpace all that part of Egypt was fenced which reſpecteth the ſea.

Winter being paſt, Robert Duke of Burgundie and Alphonſe King Lewis his brother arrived in Cyprus with a new armie, and hereupon they concluded to ſet forward for Egypt, and attempted to land neare Damiata. But the Gouvernour thereof with a band of valiant ſouldiers stoutly reſifted them. Here was a doubtfull fight: The Egyptians ſtanding on the firm ground, were thereby enabled to improve and \* inforce their darts to the utmoſt, whilſt the French in their tickliſh boats durſt not make the beſt of their own strength. Besides, thoſe on land threw their weapons downwards from the forts they had erected, fo that the declivitie and downfall did naturally ſecond the violent imprefſion of their darts. How-ever, the Infidels at laſt were here beaten with what commonly was their own weapon, I mean multitude; ſo that they fled into the town, leaving behind them their Gouvernour and five hundred of their beſt ſouldiers dead on the ſhore.

Damiata was a strong citie, the taking whereof was accounted the good task of an armie for a yere. But now the Egyptians within were preſented afresh with the memorie of the miseries they indured in the laſt long ſiege by the Christians; and fearing leſt that tragedie ſhould be acted over again, ſet fire on their houses, and in the night ſaved themſelves by flight. The French iſſuing in quenched the fire, and rescued much corn and other rich ſpoil from the teeth of the flame.

Meladine much troubled with this loſſe, to purchafe peace \* offered the Christians all Jerusalem in as ample a manner as ever formerly they had enjoyed it, all prisoners to be reſtored, with a great ſumme of money to defray their charges, and many other good conditions: So that we may much wonder at his profulenelle in theſe profers, and more at the Christians indiſcretion in their reuſal. For though ſome aduized to make much of ſo frank a chapman, and not through covetouſneſſe to ou-ſtand their market; yet the Popes Legate and Robert Earl of Artois, heightened with pride that they could not ſee their profit, and measuring their future victories by the largeneſſe of their firſt footing in Egypt, would make no bargain except Alexandria the beſt port in Egypt were alſo caſt in for vantage, to make

*\* P. Aemy.  
pag. 216.**\* Matth. Pa-  
rū, pag. 10-17.**\* Knolls,  
Turk. His.*

192 make the conditions down-weight: And King Lewis, whose nature was onely bad because it was so good, would in no wise crosse his brother in what he desired. Whereupon the Turks seeing themselves in so desperate condition, their swords being sharpened on extremitie, provided to defend their countrey to the utmost.

## Chap. 14.

*Discords betwixt the French and English; The death & disposition of Meladine king of Egypt.*

**A**bout this time brake out the dissensions betwixt the French and English. The cause whereof (as some say) was, for that the Earl of Sarisburie in sacking a fort got more spoile than the French. But surely the foundation of their discontents lay much lower, being an old enmitie betwixt the two nations; and Robert Earl of Artois used Earl William and his men with much discourtesie.

This Robert stood much on the Royaltie of his descent, being brother to King Lewis, though nothing of kin in conditions, being as bountifull to deal injuries and affronts as the other alms and charitable deeds. The English Earl, though he stod on the lower ground in point of birth, yet conceived himself to even him in valour and martiall knowledge. And though godly King Lewis used all his holy-water to quench these heart-burnings, his successe answered not his pains, much lesse his desires; onely his cooling perswasions laid their enmities for the present fairly asleep.

Amidst these broils died Meladine the Egyptian King. A worthy Prince he was, though some write very courfely of him: as he must rise early, yea, not at all go to bed, who will have every ones good word. Let Christians speak of him as they found: whose courtesies to them when they were half-drowned in Egypt, if they will not confess, they deserve to be wholly drowned for their ingratitude. In the latter end of his age he quite lost the good will of his subjects, and lived unloved, and died unlamented, though a deserving and fortunate man, which oftentimes covereth a multitude of faults. The chief reason whereof was, because they suspected him to be unsound in his religion, and offering to Christianitie: Besides, having reigned above thirty yeares, his government became stale; and good things, if of long continuance, grow tedious, they being rather affected for their varietie then true worth: Lastly, the rising sunne

Anno  
Dom.  
1249.

sunne stole the adorers from the sunne setting; and Melechfala his sonne, being an active and promising Prince, reigned before in mens' desires over the Kingdome. To him now they all applied themselves; and having more wisdome in their generation then the Christians, instantly ceased their private dissensions. And now the Sultans of Damafus, Aleppo, and Babylon twisted themselves in a joynt agreement with Melechfala to defend their Mahometane religion.

193

## Chap. 15.

*Robert Earl of Artois fighting with the Egyptians contrary to the counsel of the Master of the Templars, is overthrown and drowned.*

1250.

From Damata the French marched up towards Cairo, the Governour whereof offended with Melechfala, promised to deliver that regall citie to the French. With some danger and more difficulty they passed an arm of Nilus, being conducted by a fugitive Saracen to a place where it was foordable. Hence Earl Robert marched forward with a third part of the armie, and suddenly assaulting the Turks in their tents (whilst Melechfala was absent in solemnizing a feast) put them to flight. Hereupon this Earl proclaimed himself in his hopes Monarch of the world: This blow made his enemies reel, the next would fell them: Now speed was more needfull then strength: This late victorie, though gotten, was lost if not used: What though they were not many: the fewer the adventurers, the greater the gain: Let them therefore forwards, and set on the whole power of the Turks, which was encamped not farre off,

But the Master of the Templars, in whom the sap of youth was well dried up, advised the Earl to stay and digest the honour he had gotten, expecting the arrivall of the rest of their armie: for the work was weighty they undertook, and needed two shoulders, the united strength of the Christians, effectually to manage it: His soldiery were weary, and must be refreshed; and it was madnesse to starve them to day, in hope of a feast to morrow: That they were to march through a strange countrey, and their best instructours were behind: let them stay for their lantern, and not go in the dark. He minded him that he over-valued his victorie, nor considering the enemies strength, whose harvest was not spoiled by losing an handfull of men.

But the Earl, full of the emptinesse of self-conceit, allowed

Cc no

\* Attrib. Par-  
ris, pag. 1049.

194

<sup>\*</sup>Matth. Par-

rii, pag. 1050.

no counsel for currant but that of his own stamp. He scorned to wait the leisure of another opportunitie, and opprobriously objected to the <sup>\*</sup> Templars the common fame, That the Holy land long since had been wonne, but for the collusion of the false Templars and Hospitallers with the Infidels.

Here the Earl of Sarisbury interposed himself to make peace, and to perswade Robert to listen to the wholesome counsel that was given him. But his good will was rewarded with Coward, Daftard, English-tail, and such like contumelious terms. Wherefore said our Earl; Well, Generall, on in Gods name; \* I beleeve this day you shall not dare to come nigh my horses tail. And now the touchstone must tell what is gold, what is braffe.

Marching on, they assaulted the castle of Mauzar, and were notably repulsed; and Melechfala, coming in with his whole strenght, hemmed them in on every side. The Christians were but the third part of the armie; and at the present, they themselves were scarce the half of themselves, being faint for want of refeshing. Yet never shall one read more valour in so little a volume: They played their parts most stoutly. As for the French Earl who went on like thunder, he went out like smoke, crying to the Earl of Sarisbury, *Flee, flee, for God fighteth against us.* To whom our Earl, *God forbid my fathers sonne should flee from the face of a Saracen.* The other seeking to save himself by the swiftnesse of his horse, and crossing the river, had there water enoughe to drown him, but too little to wash from him the stain of rashnesse and cowardise. Thus died the Earl of Artois: who had in him the parts of a good Generall, but inverted and in transposition, bold in counsele, fearfull in execution. He was one of that Princely quaternion of brothers which came hither at this voyage, and exceeded each other in some qualite; Lewis the Holiest, Alphonse the Subtillest, Charles the Stoutest, and this Robert the Proudest.

As for the Earl of Sarisbury, he resolved to sell his life at such a rate, that the buyer should little boast of his penie-worth, slaying many a Turk, and though unhorsted and wounded in his legs, stood on his honour when he could not stand on his feet; and refusing all quarter, upon his knees laid about him like a desperate man. The longer he fought, the fewer wounds he had; and there at last he breathed forth his soul in the midst of his enemies. Of all the Christians there escaped no more then two Templars, one Hospitaller, and one commoio fouldier, the messengers of this heavy news.

The French Writers, because they can say little good, say little of this battell, and lessen the overthrow as much as may be; which Authors of other nations have more fully reported.

Thus

Anno

Dom.

1250

1250

Thus sometimes unfortunate gamesters flatter themselves, belie their own purses, and dissemble their losses, whereof the standers by take more accurate notice. P. Aemylius (an Italian born at Verona; but by long writing the French Historie his pen is made free denis of France) thought with his hand he doth hide the orifice of the wound, yet it is too narrow to cover the whole sore round about: So that it plainly appeareth, that a great and grievous and most mortall blow was here given to the Christians.

195

## Chap. 16.

*King Lewis almost in the same place bath the same woffull successe, conquered and taken captiue by Melechfala.*

IT is easier to be conceived then expressed, what generall grief this dolefull news brought to the French, who followed not farre off, and who before had cause enough to sorrow for themselves: For the plague began to rage furiously amongst them, and daily swēpt away thousands. Melechfala having intelligence hereof met them by the way, and setting upon them (having neither arm to fight, nor legs to runne away) either burned or drowned them all, save one English man, Alexander Giffard (whose ancient and famous familie flourishest to this day at Chellington in Staffordshire) who wounded in five places of his bodie, escaped to the French, and reported what had happened to the rest.

And by this time Melechfala understood of the correspondence betwixt King Lewis and the Governour of Cairo, for the betraying of the citie: Whereupon he caused him suddenly to be apprehended, whereby the French King lost all hopes to obtain that place of importance. Yea, now full willingly would the Christians have accepted the terms formerly offered them; and now their hungry stomachs would make dainties of those conditions which before, when full of pride, they threw away as fragments. But the Turks now slighted them as not worth the treating with, and as knowing that these Frenchmen, who at their first landing were more then men, would at last be lesse then women.

Then began the French Lords to perswade King Lewis to provide

Cc 2

196

provide for the safetie of his own person, and to returin to Damata. They told him, That if he stayed with them, there was no hope grounde on probabilitie ( and what was any other but a wilfull self-delusion? ) of his escaping: If he were killed, his death would be a living shame to their religion; if taken prifoner, how would Mahomet insult over Christ! The captivitie of the most Christian of the most Christian Kings, would be foundation enough for the Turks thereon to build trophies of eternall triumph. But Lewis would not leave them, that they might not leave him, but resolued to be a commoner with them in weal and wo, disdaining to be such a niggard of his life as not to spend it in a good caufe in so good companie.

Forward they march, and come to the fatal place where the last battell was fought. There behold the mangled, headlesse, handlesse, feetlesse corpses of their fellow-countreymen. They knew in generall they were all their friends; none knew his particular friend. The cause of this unwonted crueltie to the dead, was a proclamation which Melechfala made, assyning a great summe of money to every one who would bring the head, hand, or foot of a Christian: And this made many of his covetous cowards ( who carried their valour in their purpos ) to be couragious. Whilst the French were here bemoning their fel lows, Melechfala came upon them with an infinite multitude, and put them all ( being few and feeble ) to the sword; taking King Lewis, with his two brethren, Alphonse and Charles, pri soners.

Instantly the Turks went up with French Ensignes to Damata, hoping so suddenly to surprise it. Which project had it took effect, then farewell King Lewis for ever. He must be sent a present to the Caliph of Babylon, from whom never any returned alive; Melechfala being but Purgatorie, whence there was redemption; but the Babylonian Caliph Hell it self, from whence no hope of releafe. But God defeated their designe; for the Turks could not French it so handsomely, but that they were discovered. The very language of their hands made them suspected afarre off, because they could not counterfeit the French idiotismes in managing their bucklers, that nation being most punctuall and criticall in their military postures: But being come neare, it was plain for any to read Turk in their beards and complexions; so that they departed without having what they desired.

Chap.

Anno  
Dom.  
1250

April  
5.

Anno  
Dom.  
1250

Chap. 17.

*The wofull impression which the ill successe of the French wrought on the Christians in Europe.*

Some made more haste then good speed ( bad news being the worst ware a ship can be fraught with ) to sail into France with the sad tidings of this overthrow. Their intelligencers Blanch, the Queen-mother and Regent of France, rewarded with the gallows: and my Authour doubteth not to pronounce them all <sup>\*</sup>Martyrs. But let them be contented with the coronet of their own innocence, though without the crown of Martyrdom; that honour belonging to such alone as suffer death for fundamental points of Religion. But so great an eclipse could not long be kept from the eyes of the world; and this dolefull and dismall news was founded and secondeon from every side. Then was there a generall lamentation over all Christendome, chiefly in France, where all were so sorrowfull, that any mirth was counted profaneness. Many bounded not themselves within the banks of grief, but brake out into blasphemie, both in France and elsewhere, taxing Justice it self of being unjust; and not content to admire what they could not conceive, condemned Gods proceedings herein to be against right, because above their reason. Fools, because they could not conquer on earth, did quarrel with heaven. This bad breath, though it came but from the teeth of some, yet proceeded from the corrupted lungs of others: some spake but out of present passion, but others even out of inbred Atheisme. Many who before were but lukewarm in religion, now turned stark-cold. In Venice and some other cities of Italy, the inhabitants whereof <sup>\*</sup>Matthew Paris calleth *semichristianos*, but half Christians ( though this his harsh appellation wanteth three parts of charite ) began wholly to tend to apostasy. And now for a crutch to stay their reeling faith, it was high time for the Clergie to ply the pulpits. They perswaded those Rachels who in this voyage had lost any children and would not be comforted, that their children were in a most blessed condition: They emptied all their boxes of their colours of rhetorick, therewith to paint out the happinesse of their estate which they enjoyed in heaven: They pieced out their Sermons with reporting of Miracles; How William Earl of Sarsburie appeared to his <sup>\*</sup>mother, and assured her that he reigned most glorious in heaven. She prelenty forgot her grief for losing her sonne, for joy that she had found a Saint, yea, a Martyr. This was their constant custome; When any in Europe wept for the losse of their friends in this warre, their tears were instantly dried

197

\* Quos Mar  
tyres credi  
mus esse ma  
riniflos,  
Mattb. Paris.  
pag. 1059.

*Hippius.*

\* Mattb. Pa  
ris, pag. 1051.

Cc 3

198

dried up with some hot miracle that was reported them; Where-with the silly people were well pleased, as babes of clouts are good enough to keep children from crying.

About this time many thousands of the English were resolved for the Holy Warre, and would needs have been gone, had not the King strictly guarded his ports, and kept his Kingdome from running away out of doores. The King promised he would go with them, and hereupon got a masse of money from them for this journey. Some say, that he never intended it; and that this onely was a trick to stroke the skittish cow to get down her milk. His stubborn subjects said, that they would tarry for his companie till midsummer, and no longer. Thus they weighed out their obedience with their own scales, and the King flood to their allowance. But hearing of this sorrowfull accident, both Prince and people altered their resolution, who had come too late to help the French in their distresse, and too soon to bring themselves into the same miserie.

## Chap. 18.

*King Lewis exchanged for Damiata, stayeth  
some yeares at Ptolemais.*

**B**ut to return to Egypt, where King Lewis was kept prisoner by Melechfala, who often felt his disposition about the resigning of Damiata, but found that to heare of death was more welcome musick unto him.

But see here a sudden alteration: One Tarqueminus a sturdie Mammaluke, with another of that societie, killed Melechfala in the very height of his victorious happynesse, and succeeded him in the Egyptian Kingdome. This Tarquemine came in with an intent to send Lewis the same way: Which poore Prince was onely armed with innocence and Majestie, and yet his bare person defended his person from that cruel attempt: such an awfull impreision did his very presence, saith my Authour, strike into him who would have stricken him. But we may rather think that the citie of Damiata was King Lewis his corlet, and that all the towres and walls of that place fensed him; Tarqueminus reserving his person as an equivalent ransome, thereby to redeem that royll citie.

Now Lewis had changed his Lord, but not his lamentable condition, continuing still a prisoner. At last he was restored to his libertie, on condition, that the Christians should surrender Damiata, and he also pay back to the Turks many thousand pounds,

Anno

Dom.

m.

1250.

pounds, both for ransome of Christian captives, and in satisfaction of the vattations they had committed in Egypt. Lewis for securite of this money, pawned to the Turk the Pyx and Halt, (that is, the bodie of Christ transubstantiated in the Eucharist) as his chiefest jewel which he should be most carefull to redeeme. Hence, in perpetuall memorie of this conquest, we may see a Water-cake and a Box alwayes wrought in the borders of that tapestry which is brought out of Egypt.

Note by the way, that the Turks were most unreasonabla in their rates of ransoming soldiery, and in all other their pecunary demands. For their own countrey being near to the fountain of gold and silver, they made as if it flowed as plentifully in other places, measuring the wealth of other lands by their own, and asking as much for a private mans ransome, as would draine a Princes purse in these Western parts.

Thus was Damiata restored again to the Turks, and the Christians punctually performed their promises; though the false Milcreant on the other side set not half the captives free, killed all the sick persons whom by promise he should relieve, and (contrary to the agreement) suffered not any Christian to transport any of his goods out of Egypt.

Hence Lewis failed to Ptolemals: where he lived in a miserable cage, being forsaken of his brothers, subjects, friends, and the Pope himself. His brothers, Alphonse and Charles, though sent into France to solicite his suit, and to advance his ransome with speed, yet being arrived forgot the affliction of Joseph; and the King was as farre from their mind as their sight: Wherefore God justly visited Alphonse with an incurable disease. His subjects, though furious at first in bementing him, yet the fit paid, complained not so much for him as on him charging him for ill managing the maters in Egypt by his royaldline, and indifference. His friends, the Pisans and Genoans, reviled him as the marrer of their mart, Damiata being formerly their most gainfull port, but now their honny was ioyoyld by destroying the hys. For the Sultan seeing the citie taken twice of the Christians in short time, to prevent further dispute about it, took away the subject of the question: And raised it to the ground. The Pope forsook him: And though many intreated his Holinesse not to prosecute the Emperour Frederick, yet further, from whom Lewis expected all the benefit of his comfort, yet he would heare of no submission from him, but foughteal-ly to ruine him. Only Blanch, King Lewis his mother, was carful for her sonne, and laboured his cause day and night. But alas! her arms were too shott to bring all ends together. And having gathered a considerable summe of money, and shippid it for Palestine, tempest in a moment cast that away, which her

\* Du Serre,  
in the life of  
Lewis the 3d.

Math. Pa-  
ris, pag. 109.

200

*\* Matth. Pa-*  
*ris pag. 109.**\* Sir Trifram*  
*a Knight*  
*long before.*  
*See Carew, in*  
*Cornwall, fol.*  
*61.*

her care and thirst was many moneths in getting. All this he bore with a foul not benummed with Stoicall sensellessenesse; but becalmed with Christian patience : \* a second Job; so that what pleased God, pleased him. It somewhat mitigated his miserie, that he had the compaine of his confort Margaret, a woman worthy so good a husband. Here she bore him a child, which because another Benoni, or Sonne of sorrow, was called Tristran. But that \* name is more ancient, nor had it its birth from the Christening of this child.

Four yeares King Lewis lived (not to say, loitered) in Syria, daily expecting in vain that some Prince of Europe should fetch him off with honour, being loth to return till he could carrie home his credit with him. And though he was out of his Kingdome, yet was he in his Kingdome, whilst surveying there the sacred monuments wherewith he was so highly affected.

## Chap. 19.

*The Common-wealth of the Mammalukes described, presenting us with many unexampled remarkablest.*

**N**ow more largely of Tarqueminus, and his killing Melech-sala; and of the common-wealth of the Mammalukes begun by him. And because great is the merit of this storie, as very memorable, we will fetch it from its first originall.

*\* Book 2.*  
*chap. 40.*

Saladine (as is touched \* before) was the first of the Turkish Kings who began the gainfull trade of the Mammalukes. These were Christian captives, brought out of Taurica Chersonesus, and instructed as in Mahometanisme so in all militarie discipline; Saladine disposing them in martiall nurseries, and continuing a constant succession of them one under another. It is above belief how much and speedily they were improved in warlike exercises : Art doubled their strength by teaching them to use it. And though they came rough out of their own countrey, they were quickly hewen and polished by education : yea, their apprehensions prevented the precepts, and their practice surpassed the presidents of those that instructed them. As it is observed in fruits and flowers, that they are much bettered by change of a fitter soil; so were these people by altering their climate. The cold countrey wherein they were bred, gave them big and robustious bodies; and the hot climate wherinto they were transplanted, ripened their wits, and bestowed upon them

*Anno  
Dom.  
1250.*

craft and activitie, the dowrie of the Southern countreys. They attained to be expert in any service; especially they were excellent horsemen: and at last they began to ride on the backs and necks of the Turkish Kings themselves.

True it is, Saladine kept his distance over them, used them kindly, yet made them not wantons; and so poised the Mammalukes with his native Egyptians, that in all actions he still reserved the casting voice for himself. But Meladine and Melech-sala his successors, entertained them without number, and instructed them beyond reaon, so that under them in a manner they monopolized all places of strength and command, till at last, the stemme of these mercenary soldiery being too great for the stock of the natives, the Turkish Kingdome in Egypt, like a top-heavy tree, became a windsfall. Indeed, the dastardnesse of the Egyptians made these Mammalukes more daring and insolent. For the Egyptians more loved profit then honour, and wealth then greatness; and though contented to abide labour, would in no wise undergo danger. Merchandise they were wholly employed in, and it seemed they used trading so long, till at last they made sale of their own spirits. Yea, one could not now know Egypt to be Egypt, but onely by the overflowiug of Nilus, not by any remaining ancient marks of valour in the peoples disposition. Thus the *genius* of old Kingdomes in time groweth weaker, and doeth at the last.

But to come to Tarqueminus; He being one of these Mammalukes, and perceiving how easie it was for those that did support to supplant the Turkish Kings, with another of his associates slew Melech-sala, as it was said. And because it was unfitting so great a Prince should go to the grave alone, he also sent his children and intimate friends thither to attend him. Tarqueminus afterwards procured of his societie to be chosen King of Egypt. He was the Solon or Lycurgus of this slavish Common-wealth, and by the consent of the rest of his companie, he enacted many laws: Whereof these are those of the Grand Charter, which admitted of no revocation:

First, That the \* Sultan, or chief of this servile Empire, should be chosen alwayes out of the Mammalukes.

Secondly, That none should be admitted to the Order of the Mammalukes, which were either Jews or Turks by birth, but onely such as being born Christians, were afterwards taken captives, and then from the time of their slaverie had been instructed in the Mahometane religion.

Thirdly, That though the sonnes of the Mammalukes might enjoy their fathers lands and wealth, yet they might not take upon them the name or honour of a Mammaluke.

Fourthly, That the native Egyptians should be permitted no

D d

201

*\* Keuls. Turk.*  
*Hist pag. 107.*

202 use of weapons; but only such as with which they fought against weeds, to till and manure the land.

In surveying this State, we can thinke no way but must meet with wonders :

First, one would think that there was such an indelible character of slaverie in these captives, and such a *laſum principium* in them, that none of them ever should make a good Prince, as knowing no more how to sway a sceptre, than a puer eloun to manage a sword; or else that they should over-reake it, turn tyrants, and only exchange their slaverie, by becoming vassals to their own passions. Yet many of them in their kinds were worthy Princes for government, no whit inferiour to those which are advantaged with roiall birth and breeding.

Secondly, it is a wonder they should be so neglective of their own children. How many make an idol of their posteritie, and sacrifice themselves unto it, stripping themselves out of necessities to provide their heirs a wardrobe! yea, it is a principle in most moderate minds to advance their posteritie, thinking hereby in a manner they overcome death, and immortalize their memorie, in leaving their names and honours to their children: Whereas as the contrary appeared in these Mammalukes.

Thirdly, it is admirable that they fell not out in the election of their Prince, being in a manner all equal amongst themselves. We see elective States in Christendome, though bound with the straitest laws, often faggé aside into schismes and factions; whereas this strange Empire in their choice had no dangerous discords, but such as were quenched in their kindling.

Lastly, whoeuer knew a wall that had no better cement to stand so sure and so long? Two hundred sixty and seven years this State endured; and yet had it to do with strong and puissant enemies. Some Kingdomes owe their greatnesse not so much to their own valour and wifdome, as to the weaknesse of their neighbours: but it fared not thus with the Mammalukes. To omit Prester John, whoe neighboured them on the south; on all other sides they were encompassed with potent opposers: From whom right valiantly they defended themselves, till in the yeare 1517, they were overcome by Selimus the great Turkish Emperor.

To conclude, As for the Amazons and their brave achievements, with much valour and no manhood; they and their State had only being in the brains of fabulous writers: As for the Assassines, or regiment of rogues; it never spread to the breadth of any great countrey, nor grew to the height of a Kingdome; but being the jakes of the world, was cast out in a place betwixt barren hills: But this Empire of vassals was every way wonderfull, stretching so farre over all Egypt and most of Syria,

Anno  
Dom.  
1250

and lasting so long. A strange State! wherein slaverie was the first step to their throne, and apostacie the first article in their religion.

203

## Chap. 20.

*The manner of the death of Frederick King of Jerusalem; His Will, and posteritie after him. An interregnum both in Germanie and the Kingdome of Jerusalem.*

IN this same yeare Frederick King of Jerusalem and Empour of Germanie ended his troublesome dayes. A Prince, who in the race of his life met with many rubs, some stumbles, no dangerous fall. Besides the Turk, he had to do with the Pope (the Pope immortall in his succession.) And though his Holinesse was unfit for warre (as being alwayes old, and never ripe for that place till almost rotten) yet he used his own head, and commanded the hands of others; whereby he kept Frederick in a continuall warre. Yet never could he have beaten him with fair play, had he not used a weapon, if not against the law of Arms, against the law of God, and against which no guard, Arming his subjects against him, and Dispensing with the oath of Allegiance.

But he gave Frederick the mortall wound, in setting himself against himself; I mean, Henrie his eldest sonne. And though Frederick easily conquered that rebellious youth, and made him fast enough, keeping him in prison in Apulia, where he died; yet he carried the grief hereof to his grave. For now he knew not where or in whom to place any confidence; as suspecting the single cord of Loyaltie would not hold in others, which brake in his own sonne though twisted with Naturall affection.

The greatnesse of his spirit was a great hastening of his death; and being of a keen, eager, and active nature, the sharpnesse of the sword cut the scabbard the sooner asunder. Bowe he could not, break he must. What-ever is reported, he died of no other poyson then sorrow (which ushered him into a wafing ague) grief being a burden wherof the strongest shoulders can bear the least. As for the fame, that Maufred his base sonne should stille him with a pillow: though I must confess he might be taken on suspition, as likely enough to play such a devilish prank; yet it is unreasonable, that he who is ac-

\* *Bezarius,*  
anno 1250.  
S. 14.

D d 2      quitted

204

\* Falsum ex  
eius temporis  
bonum re-  
flimonio esse  
convincitur.  
Pantal. in  
Fred. 2.

\* Others say,  
a falconers, or  
a physicians.  
See Munster,  
De Italia, lib.  
2. pag. 235.

Gathered out  
of Lampid.  
Meliß, hui.  
parte 3. pag.  
306.

quitted by the \* Authours of the same time, should be condemned on the evidence of the Writters of after-ages.

He died at Florence in an obscure castle on S. Lucies day, having reigned King of Jerusalem three and twenty yeares. By his Will he bequeathed many ounces of gold to the Knights Templars and Hospitallers, in recompense of the wrongs they had received by him. He left a great summe of money for the recoverie of the Holy Land, to be disposed at the discretion of the fore-said Knights. He forbud any stately funerall for himself, though in his life immoderately excessive in pomp: as if he would do penance for his pride after death. A Prince, who, had he not been hindred with domesticall discords, would have equalized Cesar himself: For if thus bravely he laid about him, his hands being tied at home with continuall dissensions, what would he have done if at libertie? A scandal is raised since his death, That he was but \* a Millers sonne, but he would have ground them to powder, who in his life-time durst have averred it. Indeed he was very happy in mechanicall matters, such as we may term Liberal handi-crafts; as casting, founding, carving in iron and brasse: Neither did this argue a low soule, to dabble in such mean imployments, but rather proved the amplitude and largeness thereof; of so generall acquaintance, that no Art was a stranger to him. But the suspicion of his birth rose from the almost miraculous manner of it; Constantia his mother bearing him when weliugh sixty yeares of age. But both in Scripture and other Writters, we may see the sonnes of long barren mothers to have been fruitfull in famous achievements.

Pitic it was that he had some faults: yea, pitie it had been if he had not had some. But his vices indeed were notorious and unexcuseable. Many wives and concubines he had, and by them many children.

*His Wives.*

- |                                                                 |                                 |                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. Constantia, Queen of Aragon.                                 | <i>His legitimate children;</i> | <i>Their preferment.</i>                |
| 2. Iole, daughter to John Bren.                                 | against him.                    | Duke of Suevia.                         |
| 3. Agnes, daughter to the Marques of Moravia, childles divorced |                                 |                                         |
| 4. Rutina.                                                      |                                 |                                         |
| 5. Isabella of Bavaria.                                         | Agnes.                          | Married to Conrade Landgrave of Hessen. |
| 6. Mawd, daughter to John K. of England.                        | Constance.                      | Wife to Lewis Landgrave of Hessen.      |

*His Concubine.*

Blanch.

*His base sonnes.*

- |               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. Henzius.   | King of Sardinia.  |
| 2. Maufred.   | Usurper of Sicily. |
| 3. Frederick. | Prince of Antioch. |

It

Anno  
Dom.  
1250.  
Decem.  
13.  
as other  
26.

It is much, that succession adventured in so many severall bottoms should miscarry: Yet these four sonnes dying, left no lasting issue; and in the third generation Fredericks stock and that whole race of Suevian Princes was extinct: Which in the judgement of some men was a judgement of God on him for his lasciviousnesse.

We must not forget a memorable passage which happened more than twenty years after Fredericks death: \* One Tylo Colupp, a notable juggler, sometime brought up at the Court, cunningly sowing together all the old shreds of his Courtship, and stretching them out with impudencie, pretended to be Frederick the Emperour, long detained in captivitie in Palestine. The difference betwixt their aspects was easily reconciled; for few Physiognomic marks are so deeply fixed in any face, but that age and miserie will alter them. The credulitie of the vulgar sort presently betrayed them to be couzened by him: yea, some Princes took this braffe for gold without touching it. But the best engine which gave this puppet his motion, was a bruit constantly buzzed, That Frederick was not dead. For Princes, the manner of whose deaths hath been private and obscure, fame commonly conjureth again out of their graves, and they walk abroad in the tongues and brains of many, who affirm and believe them to be still alive. But the world soon surfeited of this cheaters forgerie; and this glow-worm, when brought into the light, shined no more, but at Nuise was burnt to ashes by Roldulphus the Emperour.

After Fredericks death there was an *interregnum* for three and twenty yeares in the Empire of Germanie. True it is, that of some, William Earl of Holland (one without a beard, not valour) was nominated Emperour. The Spirituall electours chose Richard, brother to our King Henrie the third. And as in Cornwall he got much coin, so Germanie gave him a bottomlesse bag to put it in. A third partie named Alphonse King of Castile, an admirable Mathematician: But the ointment of his name is marred with the dead fle of his Atheisticall speech, That if he had been in Gods stead, he could have framed the world better then now it is. Notwithstanding the best Dutch Writters make an *interregnum*, as counting the Empire still a widow, and all these rather her suiters then any her husband.

In like manner also in Palestine there was not any King for fourteen yeares after Fredericks death. The right indeed lay in Conrade Duke of Suevia, Fredericks sonne by Iole daughter to John Bren King of Jerusalem: But he was so employed in defending himself in Sicily against Maufred his base brother (who soon after dispatched him out of the way) that he had no leisure to prosecute his title to the fragments of the Kingdome of Jerusalem.

D d 3

Chap.

205

\* Calvifus,  
anno 1285.  
ex Spang.  
Et Pantal. in  
Rouelpho  
Capare

206

## Chap. 21.

*The Pastorells killed in France; King Lewis returned home.*

**G**O we back to King Lewis, who all this while stayed in Palestine, busying himself partly in building and fensing of Sidon and Cesarea, partly in composing discords betwixt the Pifans and Genoans; even proceeding to threaten them into agreement: But these armed men little cared for his naked menacing. He being also an excellent religious Antiquarie and Critick on holy monuments, much employed himself in redeeming of old sacred places from the tyranny of time and oblivion.

Mean time, in his Kingdome of France happened this strange accident: \* An Hungarien peasant, who is said to have been an apostate to Mahomet and well learned, gathered together many thousands of people, pretending they had intelligence from heaven to march to the Holy Land. These took on them the nature and habit of *Pastorelli*, poore shepherds, in imitation belike (as the Devil is Gods ape) of those in the Gospel, who were warned by Angels in a vision to go to Bethlehem.

Being to shape their course into Palestine, they went into France, shewing they had a *vertigo* in their heads, mistaking the West for the East; or else, that like vagabonds they were never out of their way.

The Holy Lambe was their ensigne, but their actions neither holy nor lambe-like. They pillaged and killed the poore Jews as they went (an unhappy nation, whose heads lie pat for every ones hands to hit, and their legs so stand in mens way, that few can go by them without spurring at them:) Where they wanted Jews, they made Jews of Christians, especially if they were rich, using them with all crueltie. But at last neare Burdeaux threescore thousand of them were slain, and the rest dispersed. A rhymier of that age (or in courtesy call him a Poet) made this Epitaph on them;

\* *M semel, & bis C, L I conjungere disce;*  
*Duxit Pastorum seva Megara chibrum.*

Learn to put together well,  
What M, C, C, L, I, do spell;  
When some devillish friend in France  
Did teach the Shepherds how to dance.

By this time Lewis in Syria had stayed out the death and buriall

Anno  
Dom.  
1253.  
April  
25.

1251

1254.

all of all his hopes to receive succour from his own country. Long expecting in vain that France should come to him, he at last returned to it. The greatness of the burden he bore, made him go the faster, and being laden with debts to his Italian creditors, he secretly hasted home. Where safely arriving, besides loyaltie to their Prince, love to a stranger was enough to make him welcome.

207

## Chap. 22.

*The conversion of the Tartarians. Haalon conquereth Persia, and extinguisheth the Caliphs of Babylon.*

**L**ewis is gone, and left the Christians in Syria in a wofull condition, without hope of amendment. Now, can any good come out of Tartarie? Can the Northern wind blow a comfortable warmth? Yea, see a strange vicissitude of things! Hairo the Christian King of Armenia had travelled to Mango the Cham of Tartarie, to communicate to him the present danger of the Turks, and to consult of a remedie. He shewed, how if order were not taken with them in time, they would overrunne all Asia: Let him not count that he lay out of their rode, because of his remote situation: For what is the way wanderers will not trace? He might expect only this courtesie, to be last devoured. In conclusion, Hairo prevailed so farre with this Pagan, that he not only promised his assistance, but also was baptiz'd, and took the Christian religion on him: So also did his whole countrey by his example; and Christianitie being the Court-fashion, none would be out of it. Never since the time of Constantine the Great, did the devil at once lose a greater morsel, or was there made a more hopefull accession to the Faith.

Understand we this conversion of Tartarie (though Authors predicate it universally of that whole countrey) only of Cathaia, the Eastern and most refined part of that Empire: For Cannibals were still in the North, who needed first to be converted to reason, and to be made men before they could become Christians. Also at this time we find a swarm of Western Tartarian heathens forraging \* Poland. So it seemeth, so vast was the Empire, that it was still night in the West, though it was day in the Eastern part thereof.

Now, whether the conversion of these Tartarians was solemnly,

\* Magdeburg.  
Cent. 13. cap.  
16. col. 698.

Marius Sa-  
natus.  
Magdeburg.  
Cent. 13. cap.  
16. col. 699.

\* Calvinus,  
ex hist. Pol.  
in anno 1259.

208

leminly, deliberately, and methodically wrought by preaching, first, those things wherein the light of Nature concurreth with Faith; then, those wherein humaine reason is no foe but standeth neuter; lastly, such as are merely of Faith, leaving the issue of all to God, whose \* oratric alone can perwade soules: or whether (which is more probable) it was but tumultuously done, many on a sudden rather snatching then embracing religion, we will not dispute. Sure it is that Mango sent Haalon his brother (who is said to have married a wife an excellent Christian, and \* descended from the Wise-men who came to see our Saviour) with a great armie to suppress the Turks and assist the Christians. It smethis his armie rid post; for falling into Persia, he conquered it sooner then one can well travel it, \* in half a year. It facilitated his victorie, because that countrey had much unfurnished her self to furnish her forrein colonies and garisons in Syria: And generally active nations are strongest abroad, and weakest at home; where they are onely strong with a conceit of their strength believeth in other countreys. The citie Samarchanda onely resisted him. Haalon seeing it would not come at the first, let it stay, counting it beneath a conquerour to tempt his fortune with a long siege, which perchance might alter the whole course of the cards, and make him rise a losser. Wherefore he himself onely skimmed the cream of the conquest, and went away with what was easie and smooth, depurting an inferiour captain to hew this knotty service; who after a long siege subdued it. For in respect of the age of this siege, that of Troy was but a child, it lasting \* seven and twenty yeares; and at last not taken but yeelded up, the defendants then wanting clothes to cover their nakednesse.

From Persia Haalon marched to Babylon: The Caliph whereof called Musteazem, was so superstitious an idolater to his wealth, that he would not provide necessaries for the defense of the citie; and therefore it was quickly subdued. The covetous Caliph he \* familihed to death, and then filled his mouth with melted gold. Every where Mosques went down and Churches went up.

Hence into Mesopotamia: which he instantly conquered, with the cities of Aleppo and Edessa. He wonne and restored many places to Conrade the Christian Prince of Antioch, which the Turks formerly detained from him. Yea, this Tartarian armie so awed Melechem the Mammaluke Prince of Egypt, who succeeded Tarqueminus, that he durst not budge. And many other good offices this Haalon did to the Christians in Syria.

\* Oñor dñi  
miseris rati.  
Juxta Athanasius.

\* Magdeburg.  
Cens. 13. cap.  
2. pag. 5.

\* So Knolle,  
Turk. Hist.  
pag. 112. The  
Magdebur-  
genes say left,  
Semeltrisp-  
atio. Cens. 13.  
cap. 16. col. 699

\* Magdeburg.  
& Knolle, ut  
prius.

\* Galvius, in  
anno 1258.  
ex Bizio.

Anno  
Dom.

1235.

1236.

1238.

1260.

Chap.

Chap. 23.

209

*The discord betwixt the Genoans and Venetians,  
who burn the Genoans ships in Ptolemais.*

But they were unworthy of this happiness, who would not be at leisure to make use of it, but busied themselves in private dissensions, the Genoans against the Pifans and Venetians. These States (as many other in Italie) at this time were so proud in their Masters old clothes, they scarce knew themselves, grown brave with the feathers the Eagle had moulted, and set up by the breaking of the Emperour in Italie. The Venetians and Genoans were hardly matched: The Pifans were not so strong, but as stomachfull as either of them, and then in this point of policie superior to both; That first siding with the Genoans, they whipped the Venetians; then when they were sufficiently humbled, taking part with the Venetians, they stripped and lashed the Genoans: and the scales being even before, Pifa made that weigh down by course wherein she cast her grains.

Now not content to fall out at home within the doores of Italie, they must fight in Syria in the open street, where the Turks looked on and laughed at them; counting it in their apprehension as good sport as to see a spider poison a toad. Besides their old grudges transported hither out of Italie, this green wound was the cause of their dissencion here: In Ptolemais these three States had their severall streets, severall markets for trading, and Courts for causes both civil and criminall: but all three had one Church (that of S. Sabbas) common unto them, by the ordering of the Pope himself; who counted the same Church might serve the worshippers of the same God: But the \* Venetians by vertue of an ancient agreement betwixt them and King Baldwin for their service in winning this citie, challenged a peculiar interest therein. Here about was there old bustling, and in a tumult, the Genoans at that time surpassing for number, drove the Venetians out of the Church: Yea, Philip of Montfort, a French Gouvernor of Ptolemais in the time of the *interregnum*, wanting not onely policie for a Magistrate, but wit for a man ( Blondus \* faith he was half-mad, and his actions speak him no lesse) compelled the Venetians generally to forfeake the citie.

Implacably incensed hereat, the Venetians arm thirteen galleyes which they had at Tyre, and coming to Ptolemais forced asunder the chain which crossed the haven, and burned five and twenty ships of the Genoans which lay there. For alas! being strait-

E e ned

\* So faith  
Blondus. De-  
cada. lib. 8.  
pag. 308. But  
if we consult  
with Tyrius,  
lib. 10. cap. 28.  
the Genoans  
and not the  
Venetians  
wonne people  
mai.

\* Laco prints  
citato.

210 ned in the haven, they had no room ( being entangled ) to turn and free themselves one from another. And though united force be most forcible, yet not when so stifled and smothered that it cannot expresse and exercise it self. Many brave soldierns in these ships lost their lives in a bundle, without selling them, or ever opening their wares.

To avenge this losse, the State of Genoa sent from home a narie of fifty ships of all sorts, which came to Tyre. There meet they with Reinerius Zenus Duke of Venice, with the united power of the Venetians and Pisans, counting no fewer then seventy four vessels well provided. They would have fought in the very haven of Tyre, but the Governour of the citie forbade it: It would be scandalous to Christianitie; The roving fire balls might hurt the citie, and sinking ships hinder the harbour, Besides, the conquered partie would probably complain of the partialitie of the place, that it more favoured one side; They should not fight under his nose, if they had a mind to it, let them out and trie their fortunes in the open sea.

### Chap. 24.

#### *The Genoan armie beaten by the Venetian. Sea and Land-service compared, both in danger and honour.*

Accordingly it was performed; out they go and fall to their work. Their galleys, like Ostriches, used their leggs more then their wings, more running with oars then flying with sails. At that time, before Ordnance was found out, ships were both gunnes and bullets themselves, and furiously ranne one against another.

They began with this arrietation: Herein strength was much but not all; nimblenesse was also very advantageous to break and slent the down-right rushings of a stronger vessel. Then fell they to grapping: Here the steady ship had the better of it; and those soldierns who best kept their legges could best use their arms, the sureft stander being alwayes the soundest striker. Much valour was shewed on both sides, and at last the victorie fell to the Venetian. The Genoans loofing five and twenty of their ships, fled, and saved the rest in the haven of Tyre, after a most cruel and desperate battel.

And surely, generally sea-fights are more bloody then those on the land, especially since gunnes came up, whose shot betwixt

ANNO  
DOM.

211 twixt wind and water ( like those wounds so often mentioned in the Scripture under the fifth rib ) is commonly observed mortall. Yea, farre harder it is for a ship, when arrested and ingaged in a barrel, to clear it self, then for soldierns by land to lave themselves by flight. Here neither his own two nor his horses fourre legges can beftead any; but like accidents they must perish with their subjects, and sink with their ship.

And then why is a sea-victorie leſſe honour, being more danger, then one atchieved by land? Is it because the sea-service is not so generall, nor so full of varieties, and the mysteries thereof sooner learned? or because in sea-fights fortune may seem to be a deeper sharer, and valour not so much interested? Whatsoever it is, the laurrell purchased on land hath a more lively verdure then that which is got at sea.

We return to the Venetians: Who using or rather abusing this conquest, enter Ptolemais, cast out all Genoans thence, throw down their buildings both publick and private, demolish their fort which they had builded at S. Saba, riffe and spoil their shops, ware-houses and store-houses: onely the Pope prevailed to farre with them, that they set at libertie the prisoners they had taken.

Ten yeares did this warre last betwixt these two States in Syria, composed at last ( saith my Authour ) by the authoritie of Pope Clement the fourth, and by famine ( the bad caufe of a good effect ) which in Palestine starved them into agreement. Longer theſe warres laſted between them in Italie: their ſucceſſe like the ſea, they fought on ebbing and flowing. In this costly warre Pifa was first beggered; and for all her politick partaking, Genoa at laſt trode fo heavy upon her, that ever ſince ſhe hath drooped and hung the wing, and at this day is maid to Florence, who formerly was miſtrefſe of a good part of Italie. But I have no calling and leſſe comfort to proſecute theſe bloudy diſſentions: For warres of Christians againſt Infidels, are like the heat of exerciſe which ſerveth to keep the bodie of Christianitie in health; but theſe ciuill warres amongſt themſelves, like the heat of a feaver, dangerous and deſtructive of Religion.

212

## Chap. 25.

*Charles made King of Sicily and Jerusalme by the Pope; Hugh King of Cyprus pretendeth also to go to Jerusalme.*

\* Platina, in  
Urbane, I V.

WE have now gorten Pantaleon, a Frenchman, who succeeded Robert in the titular \* Patriarchship of Jerusalem, to be Pope, by the name of Urbane the fourth. To advance the Holy caufe, after fourteen yeares *interregnum* in Syria, he appointed Charles Duke of Anjou, younger brother to King Lewis of France, King of Sicily and Jerusalem; and it was ratified by Clement the fourth his succellour.

This honour was first offered to Lewis himself; but pietie had dried up in him all ambitious humours: then to our Henrie of England; but his warre-wasted purse could not stretch to the Popes price: At laſt, this Charles accepted it. But it is not for any ſpeciall favour to the buſh, if a man run under it in a ſtorm: it was no love to Charles, but to himſelf, to be ſheltered from Maufred, that the Pope conuerred this honour upon him. And the wife of Charles, that ſhe might go in equipage with her three ſisters, being Queens, fold all her \* jewells to furnish her buſband with money to purcufe theſe Kingdomeſ: that ſex loving bra-very well, but greatneſſe better.

Now the Pope ( whose well-grounded and bounded bountie will never undo him; for where he giveth away the meat he ſel-leth the ſauce ) \* conditioned with Charles on theſe terms: First, that he ſhould conquer Maufred then King of Sicily, who moleſted the Pope; and that he ſhould finally ſubdue all the re-maining race of Frederick the ſecond, Emperour, who claimed that Kingdome. Secondly, in acknowledgement that he held theſe Kingdomeſ from the Pope, he ſhould pay him an annuall penſion of four ( ſome ſay, fourty ) thouſand pounds. Provided, if this Charles ſhould chance to be choſen Emperour of Germanie, that then he ſhould either refigne Sicily back again into the hands of his Holineſſe, \* or not accept the Empire. For he knew that all Emperours would be poſſeſſed with an anti-pa-pall ſpirit; and that they would hold Sicily, not in homage from the Church, but as a member of the Empire: Besides, the Pope would not diſpene that Princes ſhould hold pluriaty of temporall Dominiſ in Italię; eſpecially, he was fo tickliſh he could not endure the ſame Prince ſhould embracē him on both ſides.

Ever ſince, the twinne-titles of Sicily and Jerusalme have gone

Ann.  
Dom.Ann.  
Dom.

~~~

1269.
Sept.
27.

gone together; and fit it is that the shadow ſhould follow the ſub-ſtance. Charles subdued Maufred and Conradine his nephew (the laſt of the Suevian race, and grandchild to Emperour Fre-derick) and was poſſeſſed of Sicilie, and lived there; but as for the gaining of Jeruſalem, he little regarded it, nor came thither at all: A watchfull King, who never ſlept in his Kingdome.

His abſence gave occaſion to * Hugh King of Cyprus to fur-biſh up new his old title to the Kingdome, as lineally deſcen-ded from Almerick the ſecond. And coming to Ptolemaiſ, he there was crownd King of Jeruſalem: But the extremitie of the fa-mine (all things being excefſive deare) much abated the ſolemnitie and ſtate of his Coronation.

1269.

Chap. 26.

The Tartarians alienated from the Christians; Bendocdar tyrranizeth over them, and Lewis King of France ſetteth forth again for to ſuc-cour them.

1261.

But betwixt two Kings the Kingdome went to the ground: For * Haalon the Tartarian Prince, and late Christian con-vert, was returned home to ſucceed his brother Mango in the Em-pire, leaving Abaga his ſonne with competent forces in the ci-tie of Damafus, which he had wonne from the Turks. Soon after, Abaga followed his father, and ſubstituted Guirboca his Lieutenant in Damafus.

This Guirboca, upon the occaſion of his nephew raiſhly ſlain by the Christians in a broil, fell off wholly from Christianitie, with all the Tartarians his country-men. The occaſion thiſ: The Dutch Christians return with great bootie they had taken from the Turks: * Guirboca's nephew meeteth them, demandeth it for himſelf, the Christians denie him (as ſouldiers are very ten-der-conciſened in that point, counting it a great ſinre to part with the ſpoil they are poſſeſſed of:) hence brawls, then blows; Guirboca's nephew is ſlain: Hereat the Tartarians (who were very humourous in their friendſhip; if not obſerved to an inch, loſt for ever) in diſcontent, all either reel aſide to Mahomet, or fall back to Paganisme.

Herein the Christians cannot be excused: Infant converts muſt be well tended. It had been diſcretion in them, even againſt diſcretion to haue yeelded a little to theſe Tartarians, and ſo to continue their amitie, which was fo advantageous to the Holy

E c 3 warre.

* Refoldius, De
rig. Sicil pag.
645, & 646.* See theſe
condiſions at
large (five
and twenty in
number) out
of Jo. Anton.
Summons. ci-
ted in Beſol-
dus, pag. 647.* Platina, in
Clem. I V.
Nve Imperi-
um Romani-
num, etiam
ultra obla-
tum, accipe-
ret.

213

* Calvifius, in
anno 1269.
ex Marino
Sanuto.

1262.

* Calvifius, ex
Marino Sanu-
to, in anno
1269.* Magdeburg,
cen. 12. cap.
16. col. 699.

214 warre. How-ever, one may question the truth of their converſion, whether reall at first: This spring was too forward to hold, and the speedy withering of their religion argueth it wanted root. And as tame foxes, if they break loose and returne wild, do ten times more mischief then those which were wild from the beginning, so these renegadoes raged more furiously then any Pagans against religion. Guirboea sacrificed many Christians to the ghost of his nephew, destroyed Cesarea and burnt it, using all crueltie against the inhabitants.

Nor leſſe were the Christians plagued at the ſame time with Bendocdar the Mammaluke Prince in Egypt; who ſucceeded Melechem, and every where raging againſt them, either killed or forced them to forſwear their religion. The citie of Joppa he took and burned; and then wonne Antioch, flaying there in twenty thouſand, and carrying away captive an hundred thouſand Christians. But it may justly be ſuspected that these numbers were written firſt in figures, and therefore at too much length, when the adding of nothing may increase many thouſands.

These wofull tidings brought into Europe, ſo wrought on the good diſpoſition of Lewis King of France, that he reſolved to make a ſecond voyage into Palestine to ſuccour the Christians.

He ſo fixed his mind on the journeys end, that he ſaw not the dangers in the way. His Counſel could not diſſuade, though they did diſſuade him. First, they urged that he was old; let younger men take their turns: They recounted to him his former ill ſucceſſe; How lately had that hot countrey ſcorched the lilies of France, not onely to the blaſting of the leaves, but almost withering of the roor? Besides, the ſinews of the Christians in Syria were ſo shrunk, that though lifted up, they could not ſtand; That Nature decayed, but not thus wholly deſtroyed, was the ſubject of phyſick; That the Turks had got a habit of conqueſting, and riveted themſelves into the poſſeſſion of the countrey; ſo that this voyage would but fleet the cream of the Kingdome to cast it into the fire.

But as a vehement flame maketh fewel of whatſoever it meeteth; ſo this Kings earnest resolution turned bridles into ſpurrers, and hinderances into motives to his journey. Was he old? let him make the more ſpeed, leſt envious death ſhould prevent him of this occaſion of honour. Had he ſped ill formerly? he would ſeek his credit where he lost it: Surely, Fortunes lotterie had not all blanks, but that after long drawing he ſhould light on a prize at laſt. Were the Christians in ſo low a caſe? the greater need they had of ſpeedy help.

Thus was this good Kings judgement over-zealed. And ſurely

Anno
Dom.

1268.

1270.

surely though Devotion be the naturall heat, Discretion (which wanted in him) is the radicall moisture of an action, keeping it healthfull, propreſous, and long-lived.

Well, King Lewis will go, and to this end provideth his navie; and is accompanied with Philip and Trifram his ſonnes, Theobald King of Navarre his ſonne in law, Alphonſe his brother, and Guido Earl of Flanders. There went alſo Edward eldeſt ſonne to Henrie King of England. It was a wonder he would now adventure his head when he was to receive a Crown, his faſher being full-ripe to drop down without gathering, having reigned longer then moſt men live, fifty and five yeares. But thirſty was this Edward of honour: Long-shanks was he called; and as his ſtrides were large, ſo vast and wide was the extent of his deſire. As for his good faſher, he was content to let go the ſtaff of his age for to be a prop to the Church. And though King Lewis was undiſcreet in going this journey, he was wife in chooſing this his companion, to have this active Prince along with him; it being good to eye a ſuspicioſe perſon, and not to leave him behind.

With Edward went his brother Edmund Earl of Lancaster, ſurnamed Crouch-back; not that he was crook-ſhoulder'd, or camel-backed: (From which our English Poet moſt zealouslē doth vindicate him,

* Edmund like him the comeliest Prince alive,
Not crook-back'd, ne in no wife diſfigured,
As ſome men write, the right line to deprive,
Though great falſhood made it to be ſcriptured.)

but from the Croſſe, anciellently called a Crouch (whence Crouched Friars) which now he wore in his voyage to Jeruſalem. And yet it maketh it ſomewhat ſuspicioſe, that in Latine * records he is never read with any other epithet then Gibbosus. But be he crooked or not, let us on ſtraight with our ſtorie.

215

* Harding,
chap. 147.* Vincents
Diſcoveryes
of
Brooke errours.
Tit. Lancaster.

Chap. 27.

King Lewis besiegeth the citie of Tunis; His
death and commendation.

Lewis now having hoisted up ſail, it was concluded by the generall confeſſion of his Counſel, That to ſecure and clear the Christians paſſage to Palestine from pirates, they ſhould firſt take the citie of Carthage in Africa by the way.

This Carthage long wrestled with Rome for the ſovereigntie, E c 4 and

216

and gave as many foils as she took, till Scipio at last crushed out her bowels with one deadly fall. Yet long after the citie stood before wholly demolished, to be a spurre to put metall into the Romanes, and to be a forrein mark for their arrows, lest otherwise they shold shoot against themselves. At last by the counsel of Cato it was quite destroyed: who alledged, that it was not safe to have a knife so neare their throats, and though good use might be made of an enemie at arms end, yet it was dangerous to have him too close to ones side; as Carthage was within a dayes sail from Rome.

Out of the ruines of this famous citie Tunis arose; as often a stinking elder groweth out of the place where an oak hath been felled. Thieving was their trading: but then as yet they were Apprentices to piracie, whereof at this day they are grown Masters. Yea, not considerable was Tunis then in bignesse, great only in mischief. But as a small scratch just upon the turning of a joynit is more troublesome then a bigger sore in another place, so this paltrie town (the refuge of rogues, and wanderers home) seated in the paſſage betwixt Europe, Asia, and Africa, was a worse annoyance to Christian traffick then a whole countrey of Saracens elsewhere. Wherefore both to revenge the bloud of many Christians, who paſſing this way to Palestine were either killed or taken captive, as also to ſecure the way for the time to come, Lewis with his whole fleet (augmented with the navie of Charles King of Sicilie and Jerusalem, his brother) bent his course to beſiege it.

It was concluded both unnecessary and unsifting, firſt in a fair way to ſummon the citie; because like pernicious vermine they were to be rooted out of the world by any means: nor was it meet to lauish the ſolemne ceremonies of warre on a compagnie of thieves and murderers.

The ſiege was no ſooner begun but the plague ſeized on the Christian armie: whereof thousands died; amongst others, Trifram King Lewis his ſonne: And he himſelf of a flux followed after. This Lewis was the French Joffah, both for the piety of his life and wofulneſſe of his death, ingaging himſelf in a needleſſe warre. Many good laws he made for his Kingdome: that not the worſt, He firſt retrenched his Barons power to ſuffer parties to tie their intricate titles to land by duells. He ſeverely puniſhed blaſphemers, * fearing their lips with an hot iron. And because by his command it was executed upon a great rich citizen of Paris, ſome ſaid he was a tyrant: He hearing it ſaid before many, I would to God that with fearing my own lips I could baniſh out of my realm all abuſe of oathes. He loved more to hear Sermons then to be preſent at Maffe: whereas on the contrary, our Henrie the third ſaid, he had rather ſee his

Anno
Dom.
1270.

God

217

God, then heare another ſpeak of him though never ſo well. His bodie was carried into France there to be buried, and was moft miserably roſſed; it being obſerved, that the ſea cannot diſtē the crudite of a dead corپſe, being a due debt to be interred where it dieth; and a ſhip cannot abide to be made a bier of. He was Sainted after his death by Boniface the eighth, and the five and twentieth day of Auguft (on which day in his firſt voyage to Palestine he went on ſhipboard) is confeſcated to his memorie. Herein he had better luck then as good a man, I mean our Henrie the ſixth, who could not be canonized without a mighty ſumme of money, belike Angels making Saints at Rome.

Chap. 28.

Tunis taken; The French return home, whileſt our Edward valiantly ſetteth forward for Palestine.

1271.

BY this time Tunis was brought to great diſtreſſe, and at laſt on these conditions ſurrendereſt: That it ſhould pay yearly to Charles King of Sicily and Jerusalem fourty thouſand crowns; That it ſhould receive Christian Ministers, freely to exerciſe their religion; If any Saracen would be baptiſted, he ſhould be ſuffered; That all Christian captives ſhould be ſet free; That they ſhould pay back ſo much money as ſhould defray the Christians charges in this voyage. Our Edward would needs have had the town beaten down, and all put to the ſword, thinking the fouleſt quarter too fair for them. Their goods (because got by robbery) he would have ſacrificed as an *anathema* to God, and burnt to aſhes: His own ſhare he excretaſed, and cauſed it to be burnt, forbidding the English to ſave any thing of it, because that coals stolen out of that fire, would ſooner burn their houses, then warm their hands. It troubled not the conſciences of other Princes to enrich themſelves herewith, but they glutted themſelves with the ſtolen hony which they found in this hive of drones: And which was worſe, now their bellies were full they would go to bed, return home, and go no further. Yea, the young King of France, called Philip the Bold, was fearfull to prosecute his journey to Palestine; whereas Prince Edward ſtruk his breast, and ſwore, That though all his friends forſook him, yet he would enter Ptolemais, though but onely with Fowin his horſe-keeper. By which ſpeech he incenſed the English to go on with him.

* Sir Walter Ralegh, bift. part. 1. lib. 5. cap. 1.
* Alfonſo V illeg. in the life of S. Lewis.

* Continuat. Matth. Paris. in anno 1273.

The

218

The rest pleading the distemperature of the weather, went to Sicilie, in hope with change of aire to recover their health: ^{Anno} Where many of them found what they sought to avoid, death: ^{Dom.} amongst other, Theobald King of Navarre, and Isabell his wife, ^{1271.} and William Earl of Flanders, who ended their dayes at Drepnum. Besides their navie was pursuivanted after with a horrible tempest, and a curse (entailed either on their ill-gotten goods, or deserting Gods cause, or both) arrested them in their return: so that of this great wealth little was landed in Europe, their ships being wracked, and the goods therein cast into the sea; with which the waves played a little, and then chopped them up at a morfel. Whilst the weather frowning on them, smiled on the English, Prince Edward no whit damned either in his men or ships, with Elenor his tender confort then young with child, safely arrived at Ptolemais, to the great solace and comfort of the Christians there being in great distresse.

Chap. 29.

Prince Edwards performance in Palestine: He is dangerously wounded; yet recovereth, and returneth home safe.

At his arrivall the last stake of the Christians was on losing: For Bendocdar the Mammaluke Prince of Egypt and Syria, had brought Ptolemais to so low an ebbe, that they therein refolved (if some unexpected succour reversed not their intentions) within three dayes to resigne the citie unto him. Edward landing stayed this precipitation, who arrived with his armie there in the very *interim*, in opportunitie it self, which is the very quintessence of time; so that all concluded his coming (thus hitting the mark) was guided by the hand of an especiall Providence.

And now those who before in despair would have thrown up their cards, hope at least to make a saving game; and the Christians taking comfort and courage, both defie their enemies, and their own thoughts of surrendring the citie. Prince Edward having sufficiently manned and victualled Ptolemais, taking six or seven thousand souldiers, marched to Nazareth; which he took, and slew those he found there. After this, about Midsummer, understanding the Turks were gathered together at Cakhew forty miles off, very early in the morning he set upon them, slew a thousand, and put the rest to flight. In

Anno

Dom.

In these skirmishes he gave evident testimonies of his personall valour: Yea, in cold blood he would boldly challenge any Infidel to a duell. To speak truth, this his conceived perfection was his greatest imperfection: For the world was abundantly satisfied in the point of his valour; yet such was his confidence of his strength, and eagernesse of honour, that having merited the esteem of a most stout man, he would still supererogate: yea, he would profer to fight with any mean person, if cried up by the *volge* for a tall man: this daring being a great fault in great spirits, and a great fault in a Generall, who staketh a pearl against a piece of glasse. The best was, in that age a man fighting with sword and buckler, had in a manner many lives to lose; and duells were not dangerous.

Whilst he stayed at Ptolemais, Elenor his Ladie was delivered of a fair daughter, called from her birth-place Joan of Acres: But fear of her husbands death abated her joy at her daughters birth. The Turks not matching him in valour thought to master him with treacherie, which was thus contrived: The Admirall of Joppa, a Turk, pretended he would turn Christian, and employed one Anzazim an Assasine in the busynesse betwixt him and Prince Edward; who carried himself so cunningly, that by often repairing to our Prince he got much credit and esteem with him.

* Some write, this Anzazim was before alwayes bred under ground (as men keep hawks and warre-horses in the dark to make them more fierce) that so coming abroad he should fear to venture on no man. But sure, so cunning a companion had long conversed with light, and been acquainted with men; yea, Christians and Princes, as appeareth by his complying carriage; else if he had not been well read in their companie, he could not have been so perfect in his lesson. But let him be bred any-where, or in hell it self: For this was his religion, To kill any he was commanded, or on the non-performance willingly to forfeit his life.

1272.

The fifth time of his coming he brought Prince Edward letters from his Master, which whilst he was reading alone and lying on his bed, he struck him into the arm with an invenomed knife. Being about to fetch another stroke, the Prince with his foot gave him such a blow that he felled him to the ground; and wresting the knife from him, ranne the Turk into the belly, and slew him; yet so, that in strugling he hurt himself therewith in the forehead. At this noise in sprang his servants, and one of them with a stool beat the brains out of the dead Turks head, shewing little wit in his own; and the Prince was highly displeased, that the monument of his valour

* Continuat.
Statib. Parif.
in anno 1272.
pag. 1345.

219

220
* Speed, in
Edward the
first.* See Fox,
Martyrolog.
p. 337.

Iour should be stained with another's crueltie.

It is storied, how * Elenor his Ladie sucked all the poison out of his wounds, without doing any harm to her self: So soveraigne a medicine is a woman's tongue, anointed with the vertue of loving affection. Pitie it is so pretty a storie should not be true (with all the miracles in Loves Legends) and sure he shall get himself no credit, who undertaketh to confute a passage so sounding to the honour of the sex: Yet can it not stand with what * others have written; How the Physician who was to dresse his wounds, spake to the Lord Edmund and the Lord John Voysie to take away Ladie Elenor out of the Princes presence, left her pitie should be cruel towards him, in not suffering his sores to be searched to the quick. And though she cried out and wrung her hands, Madame, said they, be contented; it is better that one woman should weep a little while, then that all the realm of England should lament a great seafon: And so they conducted her out of the place. And the Prince, by the benefit of Physick, good attendance, and an antidote the Maister of the Templars gave him, shewed himself on horfe-back whole and well within fifteen dayes after.

The Admirall of Joppa hearing of his recoverie, utterly dis-avowed that he had any hand in the treacherie: as none will willingly father unsucceeding villanie. True it is, he was truly sorrowfull, whether because Edward was so bad, or no worse wounded, he knoweth that knoweth hearts. * Some wholly acquit him herein, and conceive this mischief proceeded from Guy Earl of Montforts hatred to our Prince, who bearing him and all his kindred an old grudge for doing some conceived wrong to his father (in very deed, nothing but justice to a rebell) hired, as they think, this Assasine to murder him; as a little before for the same quarrel he had served Henrie sonne to Richard King of the Romanes, and our Edwards cousin-germane, at Viterbo in Italie. It is much this Guy living in France, should contrive this Princes death in Palestine: but malice hath long arms, and can take men off at great distance. Yea, this addeth to the cunning of the engineer, to work unseen, and the further from him the blow is given, the lesse is he himself suspected.

Whosoever plotted, God prevented it, and the Christians there would have revenged it, but Edward would not suffer them. In all haste they would have marched and fallen on the Turks. had not he * dissuaded them, because then many Christians unarmed, and in small companies, were gone to visit the Sepulchre, all whose throats had then probably been cut before their return.

* P. Amyl. in
D. Ludovice,
pag. 327.* Continuat.
Matth. Paris.
in anno 1272,
pag. 1347.

Eigh-

Anno
Dom.
1272.

221

Eighteen moneths he stayed at Ptolemais, and then came back through Italie, without doing any extraordinary matter in Palestyn. What musick can one string make when all the rest are broken? what could Edward do alone, when those Princes fell back on whom the project most relied? Lewis and Charles were the main undertakers: Edward entertained but as an adventurer and sharer, and so he furnished himself accordingly, with competent forces to succour others, but not to subist of themselves. But as too often, where the principall miscarrieth, the second and sureties must lie at the stake to make the debt good: so in their default he valiantly went forward, though having in all but thirteen ships and some thousands of men (too many for a plain Prince to visit with, and too few for a great one to warre with) and performed what lay within the compass of his power. In a word, his coming to Ptolemais and assisting them there, was like a cordiall given to a dying man, which doth piece out his life (or death rather) a few grones and as many gafps the longer.

By this time Henrie his aged father being dead (his lamp not quenched but going out for want of oil) the English Nobilitie came as farre as the Alpes in Savoy to wait on Edward in his return. Leave we him then to be attended home by them to receive the Crown, to which no lesse his vertues then birth entitled him. Since the Conquest he was the first King of his name, and the first that settled the Law and State (deriving the style of * Englands Justinian) and that freed this Kingdome from the wardship of the Peers, shewing himself in all his actions after, capable to command not the realm only but the whole world.

* Sir Robert
Cicut, in his
Henrie III.

Chap. 30.

*Rodulphus the Emperours voyage to Palestine
hindered. The Duke of Mechlenburg his
captivitie and enlargement.*

* Marinus
Sanctus.

Before Edwards departure, Hugh King of Jerusalem and Cyprus concluded a peace (to our * Princes small liking) with the Mammaluke Sultan of Egypt, to hold only in and neare Ptolemais; whereby the Christians had some breathing-time. But that which now possessed all mens thoughts and talk in Syria, was the expectation of Rodulphus to come thither with a great armie, who after two and twenty yeares (*interregnum*) was chosen Emperour of Germany.

This Rodulphus was a mean Earl of Haspurg (Frederick the last Emperour was his * godfather; who little thought, that ha-

F f ving

* Pantel. De
illust. Germ.
partz. in vita
Rodulphi.

222 ving so many sonnes of his own, his godsonne should next succeed him) and lived in a private way. But now the Empire, refusing her rich suiters, married this Earl without any portion, onely for pure love. A preferment beyond his expectation, not above his deserts. For Germanie had many bigger lights, none brighter. Pope Gregorie the tenth would not ratifie his election, but, on this condition, That he shoulde in perfour march with an armie to Palestine. And though this was but an old policie, To send the Emperours farre away, that so he might command in chief in their absence; yet his Holinesse did so turne and dresse this thredbare plot with specious pretences of pietie, that it passed for new and fresh, especially to those that beheld it at distance. But Roldulphus could not be spared out of Germanie, being there imployed in civil discords: The knees of the Dutch Princes were too stiff to do him homage, till he softened them by degrees. And indeede he was not provided for the Holy warre, and wanted a stocke of his own to drive so costly a trade, having no paternall lands considerable, no bottome to begin on; though through his thrifte and providence he first laid the foundation of the Austrian familie.

Yet somewhat to answer expectation, he sent Henrie Duke of Mechlenburg with competent forces into Palestine: Who coming to Ptolemais, made many notable incursions into the country about Damasco, with fire and sword destroying all as he went, and carrying thence many rich booties; till at last he was circumvented and taken prisoner by the Mammalukes. Twenty six yeares he lived in captivitie, keeping his conscience free all the while: At last the Sultan of Egypt (a renegado Germane, who formerly had been engineer to this Dukes father) set him at libertie, together with Martine his servant; that he who so long had shared of his miserie, might also partake of his happynesse. No sooner had this Duke put to sea, but he was again taken by pirates; and the Sultan out of pitie to this distressed Prince, and our of scorn that fortune should frustrate and defeat his reall courtesie, set him free again. At last he came safely home, and was there welcomed with as much wonder as joy; his subjects conceyving his returne a resurrecccion, having buried him in their thought long before.

Here he found * two counterfeits, who pretended themselves to be this Duke, and on that title challenged lodging with Anastasia his Ladie. But the one of them had a softer bedfellow provided him, a pool of water, wherein he was drowned; the other was made a bonfire of, to solemnize the joy of the Dukes return.

* Pantal. De
illust. Germ.
part. 2. pag.
245.

Anno
Dom.

127,

1282.

1284.

Chap. 31.

223

Charles King of Jerusalen; His intentions in Syria stopped by the Sicilian Vespers; His death, and sonnes succession.

BY this time Charles King of Jerusalen and Sicilie had made great preparations for the Holy Warre. And to make his claim to the Kingdome of Jerusalen the stronger, he bought also the title of Maria Domicella Princesse of Antioch, which pretended a right to the same. He sent also Roger the Count of S. Severine as his Vice-roy to Ptolemais: where he was honourably received in despite of Hugh King of Cyprus, by the especiall favour of Albertine Morisine the Venetian Consul there. And now his navie was reported to be ready, and that by the way he had a project upon Michael Paleologus the Emperour of Greece: when all his intentions were suddenly blasted; it so happening, that on Easter day, as the bell tolled to Even-fong, all the throats of the Frenchmen in Sicily were cut in a moment by the natives thereof, and that Island wonne by Peter King of Aragon. The grand contriver of this massacre was one Jacobus Prochyta a Physician, & I dare say he killed more in an houre then he cured all his life-time.

Those that condemn the Sicilians herein, cannot excuse the French, such formerly had been their pride, lust, covetousnesse, and crueltie to the people of that Island, putting them causelesly to exquisite torture; so that an ordinary hanging was counted an extraordinary favour. But the secrecie of contriving this slaughter of the French was little lesse then miraculos; that so many knowing it, none should discover it, like cunning dogs, barking in triumph after they had bitten, not before, to give any warning. Hence grew the Proverb of the *Sicilian Vespers*; though their Even-fong was nothing to the English Mattens intended in the Gunpowder-treason. Mean time King Charles was at Rome, beholding the making of Cardinals, when this dolefull news was brought unto him, and struck him to the heart. He survived a yare or two longer, but dull and melancholick, living as it were without life, and died at last, having reigned King of Jerusalen twenty yeares. A Prince which had tasted of various successe, fortune for a while smiling on him, and at last laughing at him.

His sonne Charles succeeded him in the Kingdome of Naples and in the title of Jerusalen. He was surname Cunctator, Delayer; not in the same sense as Fabius the Shield of Rome was so called: he onely stayed till opportunitie was come; our Charles, till it was passed. I find nothing memoriable of him except this, That

224

offended with the Templars in Palestine for taking part against him with the King of Cyprus, he seised on their lands, and confiscated all their goods they had in Naples or any other part of his dominions. How-ever, let him have room in the catalogue of our Kings of Jerusalem. For as high hills, neare the sea-side, though otherwise never so base and barren ground, yet will serve to be sea-marks for the direction of mariners: so this Charles, together with Hugh, John, and Henric, Kings of Cyprus, pretending also to Jerusalem, though we reade nothing remarkable of them, will become the front of a page, and serve to divide and distinguish times, and to parcel the historie the better to our apprehension. As for the bare anatomie of their reigne (for we find it not fleshed with any historie) with the dates of their beginnings and endings, we shall present it to the Reader hereafter in our Chronologie.

Chap. 32.

The succession of the Mammaluke Princes in Egypt. Alphir taketh Tripoli and Tyre; The wofull estate of Ptolemais.

But whilst these titular Kings slept, the Mammaluke Princes were vigilant to infect the reliques of the Christians in Palestine: Which Princes succession we will adventure to set down; nor are we discouraged with the difficulties which encounter us herein. The hardness in the storie of the Mammalukes proceedeth (as we conceive) from one of these causes: First, the State is not written directly, but by reflexion; not storied by any constant writer of their own, but in snaps and parcels, as the Chroniclers of neighbouring Christian countrey's have catched at them. Secondly, out of a popular error, their chief Captains by reason of their large authoritie passe for absolute Kings. Thirdly, the same King hath many names, and the same name by translation in sundry languages is strangely disguised. How-ever, we will use our best conjectures in these uncertainties: and a dimme candle is better then no light.

Bendocdar or Bandodacar, otherwise Melechdaer, was the last Egyptian Prince we mentioned. A dangerous man to the Christians, but that Abaga the Tartarian took him to task, and kept him in continual imprisonment. This Abaga had a prettie trick to make cowards valiant, causing them that ran away from the battle, ever after to wear women's clothes. Bendocdar died at Damascus of a wound he received in Armenia; or, as some say, by cold in swimming over Euphrates.

Elpis

* Vide Calvij.
sum in anno
1277. &
Magdeburg.
Cent. 13.

Anno
Dom.
1281Anno
Dom.
1285

1285.

1289.

Elpis succeeded him, his * sonne (say some,) but the Mammalukes laws forbid that, except his extraordinarie worth was his facultie, and dispensed with him *ad succendum patri.* But who knoweth not that the Eastern tongue speaketh nephews and kinsmen to be sonnes? Some wholly omit him; enough to make us suspect that he was only some Deputie clapped in to stop up the vacancie till Melechsaies was chosen.

Melechsaies (called by Marinus, Melechmessor) wonne the strong castle of Mergath from the Hospitallers. He much loved and was very bountifull to the Carmelites, who lived dispersed in Syria: but afterwards he banished them out of his countrey, because they altered their habit, and wore white coats at the appointment of Pope Honoriush; the Turks being generally enemies to innovations, and loving constancie in old customes. Nor was this any mishap but an advantage to the Carmelites, to lose their dwellings in Syria, and gain better in Europe, where they planted themselves in the farest places: So that he who knoweth not to choose good ground, let him find out an house of the Carmelites (a mark that faileth not) for his direction.

Alphir was next to Melechsaies, otherwise called Elsi. He perceiving that now or never was the time finally to expell the Christians out of Palestine, whilst the Princes in Europe were in civil warres, besieged and wonne Tripoli, Sidon, Berythus, and Tyre, beating them down to the ground, but suffering the inhabitants on some conditions to depart. Nothing now was left but Ptolemais: which Alphir would not presently besiege, lest he should draw the Christians in Europe upon him; but concluded a peace for five yeares with the Venetians, as not willing wholly to exasperate them by winning all from them at once, and thinking this bitter potion would be better swallowed by them at two severall draughts.

Meantime Ptolemais was in a woful condition. In it were some of all countrey's, so that he who had lost his nation, might find it here. Most of them had severall courts to decide their causes in; and the plentie of Judges caused the scarcite of justice, malefactors appealing to a triall in the courts of their own countrey. It was sufficient innocencie for any offender in the Venetian court, that he was a Venetian. Personall acts were entituled nationall, and made the cause of the countrey. Outrages were every-where practised, no-where punished; as if to spare Divine revenge the pains of overtaking them, they would go forth and meet it. At the same time, they were in fitters about prosecuting their titles to this citie, no fewer then the Venetians, Genoans, Pisans, Florentines, the Kings of Cyprus and Siclie, the Agents for the Kings of France and England, the Princes of Tripoli and Antioch, the Patriarch of Jerusalem, the Masters of the Templars

F f 3

225.
* Magdeburg,
Cent. 13. cap.
16. col. 701.

and

226

and Hospitalers, and (whom I should have named first) the Legate of his Holinesse, all at once with much violence contending about the right of right nothing, the title to the Kingdome of Jerusalem, and command of this citie; like bees, making the greatest hummung and buzzing in the hive when now ready to leave it.

Anno
Dom.

Chap. 33. *Ptolemais besieged, and taken by Sultan Serapha.*

Within the citie were many voluntaries lately come over, five hundred whereof were of the Popes furnishing. But belike he failed afterwards in his payment to them, the golden tide flowing not so fast out as into his Holinesse coffers. The souldiers being not payed, according to their blunt manneres, would pay themselves, and marching out, pillaged the countrey contrary to the truce: Sultan Serapha (who succeeded Alphir) demanding restitution, is denied, and his Embassadours ill treated.

Hereupon he sitteth down before the citie with six hundred thousand men. But we are not bound to beleieve that Alexanders souldiers were so big as their shields speak them which they left in India, nor Asian armies so numerous as they are reported. Allow the Turks dominions spacious and populous, and that they rather drained then chose souldiers; yet we had best credit the most niggardly writers, which make them an hundred and fifty thousand. Serapha resolveth to take it, conceiving so convenient a purchase could not be over-bought: The place, though not great, yet was a mote in the eye of the Turkish Empire, and therefore pained them.

Peter Belvise Master of the Templars, a valiant Captain, had the command of the citie assigned him by generall consent. He encouraged the Christians to be valiant, not like prodigall heirs to lose this citie for nothing, which cost their grandfathers so much bloud; at least let them give one blaze of valour ere their candle went out. How shoulde they shew their friends their faces, if they shewed their foes their backs! Let them fight it out manfully; that so, if forced at last to surrender it, they might rather be pitied for want of fortune, then justly blamed for lack of valour.

And now Ptolemais being to wrestle her last fall, stripped her self of all cumbersome clothes: women, children, aged persons, weak folks (all such hindering help, and mouthes without arms) were sent away, and twelve thousand remained, conceived competent to make good the place.

Serapha marcheth up furiously; his men assault the citie, with open jaws ready to devour it, had not their mouthes been stopped with the artillerie the Christians shot at them. Back they were

1290

1291

Anno
Dom.

were beaten, and many a Turk slain. But Serapha was no whit sensible thereof: who willingly would lose a thousand men in a morning for a breakfast, double so many at a dinner, and continue this costly ordinary for some dayes together; yea, in spite he would spend an ounce of Turkish bloud to draw a drop of Christian.

227

In this conflict Peter Belvise was slain with a poisoned arrow: A losse above grieving for. Many were strong in desiring the honour, who were weak to discharge the office. But the worst mischife was, the Christians were divided amongst themselves, and neglected to defend the citie, conceiving that though that was taken, yet every particular nation could defend it self, having their buildings severally fortified: And this dangerous phantise took off their thoughts from the publick good, and fixed them on their private ends. Meantime, the Patriarch of Jerusalem, and others (some name with them Henrie King of Jerusalem and Cyprus) more seeking their safetie then honour, secretly fled (with their bodies after their hearts) out of the citie, and some of them shunning a noble death, fell on a base end, being drowned in the sea. Their cowardinesse is imputed by some Authours to all the rest; whereas it appeareth on the contrary, they most valiantly behaved themselves.

At last, the Turks entred the citie by undermining the walls, and conceived their work now done, when it was new begun. For they found Ptolemais not a citie, but a heap of cities thrown together: wherein the people of every countrey so fensed themselves in their severall forts, that they powdered the Turks with their shot when they entred the streets. It is hardly to be parallelled in any siege, that a taken citie was so long before it was taken: for it held out fiftie dayes, and the Knights-Hospitallers made good their castle for * two whole moneths together. But alas! as the severall parts of *Infestia* being cut asunder, may wriggle and stirre a while, not live long; so these divided limbes could not long subsist, and at last most of them were slain.

* Lamped.
Mellif. hist.
part. 3. pag.
3 13.

Yet was it a bloody victorie to the Turks; most of them that entred the citie being either burned with fire, or killed with arrows, or smothered with the fall of towres, the very ruines (as thristie of revenge) killing those that ruined them.

Serapha evened all to the ground, and (lest the Christians should ever after land here) demolished all buildings; the Turks holding this position, That the best way to be rid of such vermine, is to shave the hair clean off, and to destroy all places wherein they may nestle themselves.

Some say, he plowed the ground whereon the citie stood, and sowed it with corn: but an *eye-witnesse affirmeth, that still there remain magnificent ruines, seeming rather wholly to consist of

* Sand. Trav.
pag. 204.

228

of divers conjoyned castles, then any way intermingled with private dwellings.

No fewer then an hundred thousand Latine Christians (all that were left in Syria) fled at this time into Cyprus. It is strange what is reported, * That above five hundred matrones and virgins of noble bloud, standing upon the shore of Ptolemais, and having all their richest jewels with them, cried out with lamentable voice, and proffered to any mariner that would undertake safely to land them any-where, all their wealth for his hire, and also that he should choose any one of them for his wife. Then a certain mariner came, and transporting them all freely, safely landed them in Cyprus, nor by any enquirie could it after be known (when he was sought for to receive his hire) who this mariner was, nor whither he went.

The Hospitallers for haste were fain to leave their treasure behind them, and hide it in a vault ; which being made known from time to time to their successours, was fetched from thence by the * galleys of Malta about three hundred yeares afterwards.

Henric King of Cyprus to his great cost and greater commendation, gave free entertainment to all Pilgrims that fled hither, till such time as they could be transported to their own countreys; and thanks was all the shot expected of these guests at their departure.

Thus after an hundred ninetie and four yeares ended the Holy Warre, for continuance the longest, for money spent the costliest, for bloudshed the cruellest, for pretences the most pious, for the true intent the most politick the world ever saw. And at this day, the Turks to spare the Christians their pains of coming so long a journey to Palestyn, have done them the unwelcome courtesie, to come more then half the way to give them a meeting.

The end of the fourth Book.

* Lampad.
pag. 311.

* Sand. Trav.
pag. 204.

Anno
Dom.
1291.

Anno
Dom.
~

1310.

A
S U P P L E M E N T
 O F T H E H I S T O R I E
 O F T H E
H O L Y V V A R
 B O O K V.

Chap. 1.

The executing of the Templars in France.



Y task is done. Whatsoever remaineth is voluntary and over-measure, onely to hemme the end of our Historie that it ravel not out : As to shew, What became of the Templars, the Teutonick Order, and the Hospitallers ; What were the hinderances of this Warre ; What Nation best deserved in it ; What offers were afterwards made to recover Jerusalēm ; By how many challengers that title at this day is claimed ; What is the present strength of Jerusalēm ; What hope to regain it, with some other passages which offer attendance on these principall heads.

Know then, Some nineteen years after the Christians had lost all in Palestyn, the Templars, by the cruell deed of Pope Clement the fifth, and foul fact of Philip the Fair King of France, were finally * extirpated out of all Christendome. The historie thereof is but in twilight, not clearly delivered, but darkened with many doubts and difficulties: We must pick out letters and syllables here and there as well as we may ; all which put together spell thus much.

Pope Clement having long sojourned in France, had received many reall courtesies from Philip the King ; yea, he owed little lesse then himself to him. At last, Philip requested of him a boon, great enough for a King to ask and a Pope to grant ; namely, all the lands of the Knights Templars through France.

* Sabellius,
Enn. 9. lib 7.
Platina, in
vita Clem. V.

G g

230

France, forfeited by reason of their horrible heresies and licentious living. The Pope was willing to gratifie him in some good proportion for his favours received (as thankfulness is alwayes the badge of a good nature) and therefore being thus long the Kings guest, he gave him the Templars lands and goods to pay for his entertainment.

On a sudden all the Templars in France they clapt into prison, wifely catching those Lions in a net, which had they been fairly hunted to death, would have made their part good with all the dogs in France. Damnable sinnes were laid to their charge; as, sacrificing of men to an idle they worshipped, rosting of a Templars bastard and drinking his blood, spitting upon the crosse of Christ, conspiring with Turks and Saracens against Christianitie, Sodomie, beastialitie, with many other villanies out of the rōde of humane corruption, and as farre from mans nature as Gods law.

Well, the Templars thus shut in prison, their crimes were half proved. The sole witnesse against them was one of their own Order, a notorious malefactour; who at the same time being in prisyon and to suffer for his own offenes, condemned by the Master of their Order, sought to prove his own innocencie by charging all his own Order to be guiltie. And his case standing thus, he must either kill or be killed, die or put others to death, he would be sure to provide water enough to drive the mill, and swore most heartily to whatsoeuer was objected against the Order. Besidies, the Templars being brought upon the rack confessed the accusations to be true wherewith they were charged. Hereupon all the Templars through France were most cruelly burned to death at a stake, with James the grand Master of their Order.

Chap. 2.

Arguments produced on either side, both for the innocencie and guiltiness of the Templars.

There is scarce a harder question in later historie than this, Whether the Templars justly or unjustly were condemned to suffer. On the one side, It is dangerous to affirm they were innocent, because condemned by the Pope, infallible in matters of such consequence. This bugbear affrighteth many, and maketh their hands shake when they write hereof. If they should say the Templars were burned wrongfully, they may be fetched over the coals themselves for charging his Holiness

Anno
Dom.
Cccc
1310.

neffe so deeply; yea, hereby they bring so much innocent bloud on the Popes head as is enough to drown him: Some therefore in this matter know little, and dare speak lesse, for fear of after-claps. Secondly, some who suspect that one eye of the Church may be dimme, yet hold that both the eyes, the Pope and general Council together, cannot be deceived.

Now the Council of Vienne countenanced the extirpation of the Templars, determined the dissolution of their Order, and adjudged their lands to be conferred on the Knights-Hospitallers. Men ought then to be well advised how they condemn a general Council to be accessorie *post factum* to the murder of so many men.

For all this, those who dare not hollow, do whisper on the other side, accounting the Templars not malefactours but martyrs: First, because the witnesse was unsufficient, a malefactour against his Judge; and secondly, they bring tortured men against themselves. Yea, there want not those that maintain that a confession extorted on the rack is of no validitie. If they be weak men and unable to endure torment, they will speak any thing; and in this case their words are extorted not from their heart but outward limbes that are in pain: and a poore conquest it is, to make either the hand of a child to beat, or the tongue of the tortured man to accuse himself. If they be sturdy and stubborn, whose backs are paved against torments, such as bring brazen sides against steely whips, they will confess nothing. And though these Templars were stout and valiant men, yet it is to be commended to ones consideration, whether flavish and servile souls will not better bear torment, then generous spirits, who are for the enduring of honourable danger and speedy death, but not provided for torment, which they are not acquainted with, neither is it the proper object of valour.

Again, it is produced in their behalf, that being burned at the stake, they denied it at their death, though formerly they had confessed it; and whose charitie, if not stark-blind, will not be so tender-eyed as to beleieve that they would not breathe out their soul with lie, and wilfully contract a new guilt in that very instant wherein they were to be arraigned before the Judge of heaven. A Templar being to be burned at Burdeaux, and seeing the Pope and King Philip looking out at a window, cryed unto them, * *Clement thou cruel tyrant, seeing there is no higher amongst mortall men to whom I should appeal for my unjust death, I cite thee together with King Philip to the Tribunal of Christ the just Judge who redeemed me, there both to appear within one yeare and a day; where I will lay open my cause, and justice shall be done without any respect.*

* *Hospit. de orig. Man. cap. 18. fol. 193.*

232
* P. Amyl.
in Philippo
Putchro.

respect. In like manner, * James grand Master of the Templars, though by piecemeal he was tortured to death, craved pardon of God, and those of his Order, That forced by extremite of pain on the rack, and allured with hope of life, he had accused them of such damnable sinnes, whereof they were innocent.

Moreover, the people with their suffrage acquitted them: Happy was he that could get an handful of their ashes into his bosome, as the Relique of pious Martyrs, to preserve. Indeed little heed is to be given to peoples humours, whose judgement is nothing but prejudice and passion, and commonly envie all in prosperitie, pitie all in aduersitie, though often both undeservedly: And we may beleeve that the beholding of the Templars torment when they were burned, wrought in the people first a commiserating of their persons, and so by degrees a justifying of their cause. However *vulgar non semper errat, aliquando eligit*: and though it matters little for the gales of a private mans phansie, yet it is something when the wind bloweth from all corners: And true it is, they were generally cried up for innocents.

Lastly, Pope Clement and King Philip were within the time prefixed summoned by death to answier to God for what they had done. And though it is bad to be busie with Gods secrets; yet an argument drawn from the event, especially when it goeth in companie with others, as it is not much to be depended on, so it is not wholly to be neglected. Besides, King Philip missed of his expectation, and the morsell fell besidess his mouth; for the lands of the Templars, which were first granted to him as a portion for his youngest sonne, were afterwards by the Councell of Vienne bestowed on the Knights-Hospitallers.

Chap. 3.

A moderate way what is to be conceived of the suppression of the Templars.

BETWIXT the two extremities of those that count these Templars either Malefactours or Martyrs, some find a middle way, whose verdict we will parcel into these severall particulars.

1. No doubt there were many novices and punies amongst them, newly admitted into their Order; which, if at all, were little guilty; for none can be fledge in wickednesse at their first hatching: To these much mercie belonged: The punishing

Anno
Dom.
1310.

of others might have been an admonition to them; and crueltie it was, where there were degrees of offenses, to inflict the same punishment, and to put all of them to death.

233

2. Surely many of them were most hainous offenders. Not to speak what they deserved from God (who needeth not pick a quarrel with man, but always hath a just controveſie with him) they are accounted notorious transgrefſours of humane laws: yet perchance if the same candle had been lighted to ſearch, as much dust and dirt might have been found in other Orders.

3. They are * conceived in generall to be guiltieſſe and innocent from thofe damnable ſinnes wherewith they were charged: Which hainous offenses were laid againſt them, either because men out of modeſte and holy horrore ſhould be afhamed and afraid to dive deep in ſearching the ground-work and bottom of thofe accuſations, but rather take them to be true on the credit of the accuſers; or that the world might the more eaſily be inducēd to beleieve the crimes objec̄ed to be true, as conceiving otherwife none would be ſo devilifh as to lay ſuch devilifh offenses to their charge; or laſtly, if the crimes were not beleieve in the totall ſumme, yet if credited in ſome competent portion, the leaſt particular ſhould be enough to do the deed, and to make them odious in the world.

* Virbergenſ.
Paralip. fol.
368.
Antoninus,
tit. 21. cap. 1.
§ 3.

4. The chief cauſe of their ruine was their extraordinařie wealth: They were feared of many, envided of more, loved of none. As Naboths vineyard was the chiefeſt ground for his blaſphemie, and as in England, * S. John Cornwall Lord Fanhop ſaid merrily, That not he, but his ſtately house at Ampthill in Bedfordshire, was guilty of high treaſon: ſo certainly their wealth was the principall evidence againſt them, and cauſe of their overthrow. It is quarrel and cauſe enough, to bring a ſheep that is fat to the ſhambles. We may beleieve King Philip would never have took away their lives if he miſt have took their lands without putting them to death: but the miſchief was, he could not get the hony unleſſe he burnt the bees.

* Cambdens
Brit. in Bed-
fordshire.

Some will ſay, The Hospitallers had great, yea, greater revenues, nineteen thouſand Mannors to the Templars nine thouſand; yet none envided their wealth. It is true: but then they buſied themſelves in defending of Christendome, main-taining the Iſland of Rhodes againſt the Turks, as the Teu-ro-nick Order defended Pruſſia againſt the Tartarian; the world therefore never grudged them great wages who did good work. These were accounted neceſſary members of Christendome, the Templars eſteemed but a ſuperfluouſ wenne; they lay at rack and manger and did nothing: who had they betook themſelves to any honourable employmēt, to take the

G g 3

Turks

234

Turks to task either in Europe or Asia, their happiness had been leſſe repined at, and their overthrow more lamented. And certain it is, that this their illenesſe disposed them for other vices; as ſtanding waters are moſt ſubject to putrifie.

* *Fozch. Stephanus, De jurisdictione, lib. 4. cap. 10. S. 18.*

I heare one* bird ſing a different note from all the rest in the wood; namely, that what ſpecious ſhews foever were pretended, the true caufe of their ruine was, that they began to defert the Pope and adhere to the Emperor. If this was true, no doubt they were deeply guiltie, and deserved the hard measure they ſuffered. Sure I am, how-ever at this time they might turn edge, they had formerly been true blades for his Holineſſe.

All Europe followed the copie that France had ſet them. Here in England King Edward the ſecond of that name, ſup-preſſed the Order, and put them to death; So by vertue of a Writ ſent from him to Sir John Wogan, Lord Chief Juſtice in Ireland, were they ſerved there; and ſuch was the ſecrecie of the contrivance of that buſineſſe, that the ſtorm fell upon them before they ſaw it, and all crannies were ſo cloſely ſtopped, that none could ſteal a glimpreſe of the miſchief intended againſt them.

* *Hofpin. De orig. Mon. cap. 18. fol. 193.*

* *Hieronimo Romano, De la Republica Christi, lib. 7. cap. 6. Et Pe-ro Mexia, De la ſilva de varis literis, lib. 2. cap. 5.*

In Germanie they found ſome mercie and milder dealing: for * Hugh Wildgrave coming with twenty of his Order all in armour into a Councel of Dutch Bifhops, who intended to execute the ſentence of the Pope upon them, there pro-ferred his innocence, and appealed to the next Pope who ſhould ſucceed Clement, as to his competent judge. Hereupon their lives were ſpared; onely they were forced to renounce the name of Templars, and to enter themſelves into other Orders; chiefly of Hoſpitallers and Teutonicks, on whom their lands were beſtowed. We will conclude all with that reſolution of a* brace of Spanish Writers, who make this epi-logue to this woſfull tragedie; Concerning these Templars, whether they were guiltie or not, let us ſuspend our censure till the day of judgement; and then and no ſooner ſhall we certainly be informed therein.

Chap. 4.

Of the Teutonick Order; When they left Palestine, & on what condition they were entertain-ed in Prussia; Their Order at laſt diſſolved.

Frequent mention hath been formerly made of the Teuto-nick Order, or that of Dutch Knights, who behaved them-selves

Anno
Dom.
~

1311

235

ſelves right valiantly clean through the Holy Warre: And, which ſoundeth much to their honour, they cannot be touched either for treaſon or faction, but were both loyall and peaceable in the whole ſervice.

But at laſt they perceived, that by the course of the cards they muſt needs riſe loſers if they conuinued the warre in the Holy Land, and even refolved to abandon it. It happened at the ſame time, that Conrade Duke of Mazovia offered them moft honourable conditions; namely, the enjoying of Prufſia, on condition they would defend it againſt the Infidels which annoyed it. Indeed the *fratres gladiſeri*, or ſword-bearing brothers, brave flaiſhing lads, undertook that task: but finding either their arms too weak, or ſwords too blunt to ſtrike through their enemies, they employed the aid of, and conjoined themſelves to this Teutonick Order. Hereupon, in the yeare of our Lord 1239, Hermannus de Salza, fourth Maſter of theſe Dutch Knights, came with moft of his Order into Prufſia; yet ſo that he left a competent number of them ſtill in Palestine, which conuinued and did good ſervice there even to the taking of Ptolemais.

But the greater number of theſe Dutch Knights, in Prufſia diſ Knight-service againſt the Tartarians, and were Chriſtendomes beſt bank againſt the inundations of thoſe barbarous people. By their endeavours the Pruffians, which before were but heathen-Chriſtians, were wholly converted; many a brave citie buiſled, ſpecially Marienburg, where formerly a great oak stood; (who would think ſo many beauteuſ buildings would ſpring out of the root of one tree?) and thoſe countreyſ of Prufſia and Li-vonia, which formerly were the courfe liſt, are now become the rich fringe of Europe.

At laſt the Pruffians grew weary of the tyrannoſ oppreſſion of thoſe Dutch Knights (as appeareth by the grievances they preſented) and applied themſelves to Casimire King of Poland. He took to task Lewis Erlinsuſe the Maſter of their Order; and ſo ordered him, that whereas before he pleaded himſelf to be a free Prince of the Empire, hereafter he ſhould acknowledge the King of Poland for his Lord and Maſter. The ſuccellours to this Lewis fretted againſt this agreement, as prejudiciale to them: They could do no leſſe then complain, and could do little more; for the King of Poland in ſpite of their reſiſtance held them to their agreements.

Albert of the house of Brandenburg was the laſt grand Maſter of this Order, and firſt Duke of Prufſia. He brake the vow of their Order, loſing his virginitie to keep his chauſtie, and married Dorothee daughter to the King of Denmark. The other Teutonicks protested againſt him, and chose Gualther

236

ther Croneberg in his room: Yea, Albert was proscribed in a Diet in Germanie, and his goods confiscated, but the proscription never executed, the Emperour of Germanie being the same time employed in matters of greater moment which more nearly concerned himself. And thus in this Albert, for ought we can find to the contrary, the Teutonick Order had its end, and was quite dissolved.

Chap. 5.

The severall flittings of the Knights-Hospitallers, from Cyprus, by Rhodes, Nice, Syracuse, to Malta.

WE must now wait on the Hospitallers to their lodgings, and we have done. We left them driven from Ptolemais, and landed at Cyprus, where King Henrie courteously entertained them. But a friends house is no home: Hence therefore they were conveyed to their severall Alberges in Europe.

But such active spirits could not long be idle; such running streams would not end in a standing pond. Wherefore they used all their own strength, and improved their interest with all their benefactors, to furnish out a fleet: Which done, under Fulx de Vilderer their grand Master they wonne the Island of Rhodes from the Turks, eighteen yeares after Ptolemais was lost, and there seated themselves.

Besides Rhodes, they also enjoyed these five adjacent Islands, saith my Authour, Nicoria, Episcopia, Iolli, Limonia, and Sirana; places so small, that consulting with maps will not find them out: enough almost to make us think with Tertullian of Delos, that once there were such Islands, which at this day are quite vanished away.

Two hundred and fourteen yeares, to the terror of the Turks, comfort of the Christians, and their own immortall fame, they maintained this Island, and secured the seas for the passage of Pilgrimes to Jerusalem: till at last in the year 1523, after six moneths siege they surrendered the citie to their own honour, and shame of other Christians who sent them no succour in season.

Yet changing their place they kept their resolution to be honourably employed. Hence they failed to Nice in Piemont, a citie lying opposite to Africa, from whence the Moores and Saracens much infested Christendome. Wherefore Charles Duke of Savoy bestowed that citie upon them to defend it;

counting

1310.

Anno
Dom.
~~

counting the courtesie rather done to him then by him, that they would accept it.

Afterwards, they perceived it was more needfull to stop the Turks invasions then their pillagings: They had lately wonne Buda, and (as it was thought) would quickly stride over the Adriatick sea, and have at Italie. Wherefore the Hospitallers left Nice, and planted themselves at Syracuse in Sicilie: Where they right valiantly behaved themselves in defending that country.

But Charles the fifth, a politick Prince, though he saw their help was usefull, yet desired not much to have them live in his own countrey. He liked their neighbourhood better then their presence, to have them rather neare then in his Kingdome. Wherefore he appointed them the Island of Malta to keep for themselves, their grand Master onely paying yearly to the King of Spain a Falcon in acknowledgement they held it from him. Loth were the Hospitallers to leave Sicilie, that Paradise of pleasure, and went very unwillingly from it.

Malta is an Island in the mid-land-sea, seated betwixt Europe and Africa, as if it meant to escape out of both as being in neither. Here S. Paul suffered shipwrack, when the viper stung him not, but the men did, * condemning him for a murderer. And here the Hospitallers seated themselves, and are the bulwark of Christendome to this day, giving daily evident proof of their courage. But their master-piece was in the year 1565, when they courageously defended the citie of Malta besieged by Soliman: When he discharged seventeen eight thousand bullets (some of them seven spans in compass) against it, big enough not onely to overthrow walls but overturn mountains; yet notwithstanding they held out valiantly five moneths, and at last forced the Turk to depart.

These Knights of Malta are at this day a good bridle to Tunis and Algiers. I am informed by a good * friend (who hath spent much yet lost no time in those parts) that these Knights are bound by vow not to flee from the Turks, though one man or one galley to four (half which ods Hercules himself durst not venture on;) but if there be five to one, it is interpreted widdome not cowardinesse, to make away from them: Also if a Christian ship wherein there is a Knight of Malta také a Turkish ship, that Knight is bound by his Order first to go aboard to enter it: The grand Master of this Order hath a great command, and is highly esteemed of; insomuch that the * Authour of the Catalogue of the glorie of the world, believeth he is to take place nexte to absolute Kings, above all other temporall Princes, even above Kings subject to the Empire. Sure he meaneth, if they will give it him; otherwise it seemeth

H h

237

* Hoplin. De orig. Mon. cap. 17. fol. 19^o.

* Act. 28.4.

* Mr. Gr. Gibs. of S. Perrot, Duxell.

* Caffauus, pars. 9. confiderat. 4.

238 seemeth improper that the alms-man should take place of his benefactours. Yet the Lord Prior of the Hospitallers in England was chief Baron of the Realm, and had precedencie of all other Lords: and here his Order flourished with great pomp till their finall period; which I now come to relate.

Chap. 6.

The Hospitallers in England stoutly withstand three severall assaults, which overthrew all other Religious foundations.

THe suppression of the Hospitallers in England deserueth especiall notice, because the manner thereof was different from the dissolving of other Religious houses; for manfully they stood it out to the last, in despite of severall assaults.

1. Cardinall Wolsey, by leave from the Pope, suppressed certain small houses of little value, therewithall to endow his Colledges in Oxford and Ipswich. He first shewed Religious places were mortall, which hitherto had flourished in a seeming eternitie. This leading case of Wolseys did pick the morter out of all the Abbey walls in England, and made a breach in their strongest gate-houes, teaching covetousnesse (an apt scholar) a ready way to assault them: (For it is the dedication, not the value of the thing dedicated, stampeth a character of sacrednesse upon it.) And King Henrie the eighth concluded, If the Cardinall might eat up the lean Covents, he himself might feed on the fat ones, without danger of a facrilegious surfeit. True it is, Wolsey nor wholly but in part alienated the lands of these petty houses, reserving them still to the generall end of pious uses: But the King followed this pattern so farre as it was for his purpose, and neglected the rest.

2. For not long after, the *Parliament granted him all Religious houses of and under the value of two hundred pounds yearly: and it was thought, that above ten thousand persons, masters and servants, lost their livelihoods by the demolishing of them. And for an introduction to the suppression of all the residue, he had a strait watch set upon them, and the Regulars therein tied to a strait and punctuall observation of their Orders without any relaxation of the least libertie; insomuch that many did quickly un-Nunne and dis-Friar themselves, whose fides

* Statut. in
27. Henr. viii.

Anno
Dom.
~ ~

sides formerly used to go loose, were soon galled with strait lacing.

3. Then followed the grand dissolution or judgement-day on the world of Abbeys remaining; which of what value soever were seised into the Kings hands. The Lord Cromwell, one of excellent parts but mean parentage, came from the forge to be the hammer to maul all Abbeys. Whose magnificent ruines may lesson the beholders. That it is not the firmenesse of the stone nor fastnesse of the morter maketh strong walls, but the integraties of the inhabitants. For indeed foul matters were proved against some of them, as Sodome and much uncleanness: Whereupon unwillingly willing, they resigned their goods and persons to the Kings mercie. But the Knights-Hospitallers (whose chief mansion was at St. Johns, nigh London) being Gentlemen and souldiers of ancient families and high spirits, would not be brought to present the King such pulling petitions and publick recognitions of their errors as other Orders had done. They complained it was a false consequence, as farre from charitie as logick, from the induction of some particular delinquents to inferre the guiltinesse of all Religious persons. Wherefore like stout fellows they opposed any that thought to enrich themselves with their ample revenues, and stood on their own defense and justification.

239

Chap. 7.

The Hospitallers at last got on an advantage and suppressed.

But Barnabe's day it self hath a night; and this long-lived Order, which in England went over the graves of all others, came at last to its own.

They were suffered to have rope enough, till they had haltered themselves in a *Premunire*: For they still continued their obedience to the *Pope, contrary to their allegiance, whose usurped authoritie was banished out of the land; and so (though their lives otherwise could not be impeached for any vitiounesse) they were brought within the compassie of the law. The case thus standing, their dear friends perswaded them to submit to the Kings mercie, and not to capitulate with him on conditions, nor to stop his favour by their own obstinacie, but yield whilste as yet terms honest and honourable would be freely given them: That such was the irrefistiblenesse of

* Parlam.
Anno 32.
Henr. viii.

240

the Kings spirit, that like a torrent it would bear down any thing which stood betwixt him and his desires; If his anger were once inflamed, nothing but their bloud could quench it: Let them not flatter themselves into their own ruine, by relying on the aid of their friends at home, who would not substitute their own necks to save theirs from the ax; nor by hoping for help from forrein parts, who could send them no seasonable succour.

This counsel harsh at first, grew tunable in the ears of the Hospitallers; so that contented rather to exchange their clothes for worse then to be quite stript, they resigned all into the Kings hands. He allowed to S^r. William Welfton Lord Prior of the Order, an annuell pension of one thousand pounds: But he received never a pennie thereof, but died * instantly, struck to the heart when he first heard of the dissolution of his Prioic: and lieth buried in the Chancell of Clarkenwell, with the portraiture of a dead man lying on his shroud, the most artificially cut in stome (faith my * Authour) that ever man beheld. Others had rent assigned them of 200^l, 100^l, 80^l, 60^l, 50^l, 20^l, 10^l, according to their severall qualities and deserts.

At the same time juts and tornaments were held at Westminister: Wherein the challengers against all comers were, S^r. John Dudley, S^r. Thomas Seymore, S^r. Thomas Poynings, S^r. George Carew, Knights; Antonie Kingstone, and Richard Cromwell, Esquires: To each of whom for reward of their valour, the King gave a hundred marks of yearlye revenues, and a house to dwell in, to them and to their heirs, out of the lands belonging to these Hospitallers. And at this time, many had Dame's happiness, to have golden showres rained into their bosomes.

These Abbey-lands, though skittish mares to some, have given good milk to others: Which is produced as an argument, That if they prove unsuccessfull to any, it is the users default, no inheritance of a curse in the things themselves. But let one keep an exact Register of lands, and mark their motions, how they ebbe and flow betwixt buyers and sellers, and surely he will say with the Poet, 'Outvards & inwards. And this is most sure; Let land be held in never so good a tenure, it will never be held by an unthrift.

The Hospitallers Prioic-Church was preserved from down-pulling all the dayes of King Henrie the eighth: but in the third yeare of King Edward the sixth, with the bell-towre (a piece of curious workmanship, graven, gilt, and enamelled) it was undermined and blown up with gunpowder, and the stone employed in building the Lord Protectours house in the Strand.

Thus

* Weaver,
non pag. 14* Idem, pag.
430.

Sion.

Anno

Dom.

~~~

1540.

May

7.

Anno

Dom.

~~~

Thus as Chirurgeons in cutting off a gangrened leg, alwayes cut it off above the joyst, even where the flesh is whole and found: so (belike for fear of further infection) to banish Monkeie for ever, they rased the structures and harmlesse buildings of Prioices, which otherwise in themselves were void of any offense. They feared if Abbeys were onely left in a swound, the Pope would soon get hot water to recover them: To prevent which, they killed them and killed them again, overturning the very foundations of the houses, infringing, altering and transferring the lands, that they might never be reduced to their old propertie. Some outrages were committed in the manner of these dissolutions: Many manuscripts, guilty of no other superstition then red letters in the front, were condemned to the fire: and here a principall key of Antiquitie was lost, to the great prejudice of posteritie. But in sudden alterations it is not to be expected that all things be done by the square and compasse.

241

Chap. 8.

*Queen Marie setteth up the Hospitallers again;
They are again deposed by Queen Elisabeth.*

Queen Marie (a Princess more zealous then politick) attempted to restore Abbeys to their pristine estate and former glorie: And though certain of her Counsellers objected, That the state of her Kingdome and dignitie thereof and her Crown Imperiall could not honourably be furnished and maintained without the possession of Abbey-land; yet she * frankly restored, resigned, and confirmed by Parliament all Ecclesiastical revenues which by the authoritie of that high Court in the dayes of her Father were annexed to the Crown, protesting she set more by her salvation then by ten Kingdomes.

But the Nobilitie followed not her example: They had eaten up the Abbey-lands, and now after twenty yeares possession digested and turned them into good bloud in their estates: they were loth therefore to emptie their veins again; and the forwardest Romanist was backward enough in this costly piece of devotion.

How-ever, out of her own liberalitie, she set up two or three bankrupt Coventys, as Sion and Welfminster, and gave them stock to trade with. The Knights also of S. John of Jerusalem she reseated in their place; and S^r. Thomas Tresham of Rushton

* Parliam.
Anno 2 & 3
Phil. & Mar.

H h 3

242
 * *Mulium à
 prijina pietate
 religiose
 persone apud
 nos degenera-
 verunt, quod
 vel subsequens
 statim horren-
 da vixit &
 totius statis
 monastici in
 Anglia desla-
 tatio sat's ofte-
 dit, Stapleton.
 in vita Tho.
 Mori, pag.
 942.*

Rushton in Northamptonshire was the first and last Lord Prior after their restitution: For their nests were plucked down before they were warm in them, by the coming in of Queen Elizabeth.

*Anno
 Dom.
 ~ ~*
 To conclude; In the Founders of Religious houses were some good intents mixt with superstitious ends; amongst the Religious persons themselves, some pietie, more loofnesse and laziness (by the confession of their most rigid ^{*} Writers) in the confounders of those houses, some detestation of the vices of Friars, more desire of the wealth of Friaries; in God, all just, all righteous, in permitting the badnesse and causing the destruction of these numerous Fraternities.

Chap. 9.

Observations on the Holy Warre; The horrible superstition therein.

WE have finished the storie of the Holy Warre: And now I conceive my indentures are cancelled, and I discharged from the strict service and ties of an Historian; so that it may be lawfull for me to take more libertie, and to make some Observations on what hath been past.

Before I go further, I must deplore the worlds losse of that worthy work which the Lord Verulam left unfinished, concerning the Holy warre; an excellent piece, and alas! it is but a piece: so that in a pardnable discontent we may almost wish that either it had been more, wholly to have satisfied our hunger; or lesse, not at all to have raised our appetite. It was begun not in an historiall but in a politick way, not reporting the Holy warre past with the Turks, but advising how to manage it in the future. And no doubt if he had perfected the work, it would have proved worthy the Authour: But since, any have been deterred from finishing the same; as ashamed to adde mud-walls and a thatched roof to so fair a foundation of hewen and polished stone.

From that Authour we may borrow this distinction, That three things are necessarie to make an invasive warre lawfull; the lawfulness of the jurisdiction, the merit of the cause, and the orderly and lawfull prosecution of the cause. Let us apply to our present purpose in this Holy warre: For the first two, Whether the jurisdiction the Christians pretended over the Turks dominions was lawfull or not; and, Whether this Warre was not only *opera* but *vita premium*, worth

the losing of so many lives; we referre the Reader to what hath been said in the ^{*} first Book. Only it will not be amisse, to adde a storie or two out of an ^{*} Authour of good account. When Charles the sixth was King of France, the Duke of Burbon sailed over into Africa with a great armie, there to fight against the Saracens. The Saracen Prince sent an Herald to know of him the cause of his coming: The Duke answered, It was to revenge the death of Christ the Sonne of God, and true Prophet, whom they had unjustly crucified. The Saracens sent back their messengers again to demonstrate their innocencie, how they were not Saracens but Jews which put Christ to death, and therefore that the Christians (if posterite should be punished for their predecessors fault) should rather revenge themselves on the Jews which lived amongst them.

^{*} Another relateth, that in the yeare of our Lord 1453, the great Turk sent a letter to the Pope, advertising him how he and his Turkish nation were not descended from the Jews, but from the Trojans, from whom also the Italians derive their pedigree, and so would prove himself a-kinne to his Holiness. Moreover he added, That it was both his and their dutie to repair the ruines of Troy, and to revenge the death of their great grand-father Hector upon the Grecians; to which end the Turk said he had alreadie conquered a great part of Greece. As for Christ, he acknowledged him to have been a noble Prophet, and to have been crucified of the Jews, against whom the Christians might seek their remedie. These two stories I thought good to insert, because though of later date, and since the Holy Warre in Palestine was ended, yet they have some reference thereto, because some make that our quarrel to the Turks.

But grant the Christians right to the Turks lands to be lawfull, and the cause in it self enough deserving to ground a warre upon: yet in the prosecuting and managing thereof, many not onely veniall errors but inexcusable faults were committed; no doubt, the cause of the ill successse.

To omit the book called *The Office of our Ladie*, made at the beginning of this Warre to procure her favourable assistance in it (a little manual, but full of blasphemies in folio, thrusting her with impudent superstitions into Gods throne, and forcing on her the glorie of her Maker:) superstition not onely tainted the rind, but rotted the core of this whole action. Indeed most of the porrage of that age tasted of that wild gourd. Yet farre be it from us to condemn all their works to be drossie, because debated and alloyed with superstitious intents: No doubt there was a mixture of much good metall in them,

243
 * Chap. 9,
 and 10.
 * Froissard,
 lib.4, cap.18,
 19.

^{*} Monstrell.
 lib.3, cap.68.

244

them, which God the good refiner knoweth how to sever, and then will crown and reward. But here we must distinguish betwixt those deeds which have some superstition in them, and those which in their nature are wholly superstitious, such as this Voyage of people to Palestine was. For what opinion had they of themselves herein, who thought that by dying in this Warre, they did make Christ amends for his death? as * one saith: Which if but rhetorical flourish, yet doth hyperbolize into blasphemie. Yea, it was their very judgement, that hereby they did both merit and supererogate; and by dying for the Crosse, crosse the score of their own finnes and score up God for their debtour. But this flieth high, and therefore we leave it for others to follow. Let us look upon Pilgrimages in generall, and we shall find Pilgrimes wandring not so farre from their own countrey as from the judgement of the ancient Fathers.

We will leave our Armie at home, and onely bring forth our Champion: Heare what * Gregorie Nysene saith, who lived in the fourth Centurie, in which time voluntary Pilgrimages first began; though before there were necessary Pilgrimes, forced to wander from their countrey by persecution. Where, saith he, our Lord pronounceth men blessed, he reckoneth not going to Ferusalem to be amongst those goods deeds which direct to happynesse. And afterwards, speaking of the going of single-women in those long travells; A woman, saith he, cannot go such long journeys without a man to conduct her; and then whatsoever we may suppose, whether she bireth a stranger or hath a friend to wait on her, on neither side can she escape reproof, and keep the law of continencie. Moreover, If there were more Divine grace in the places of Ferusalem, sinne would not be so frequent and customarie amongst those that live there: Now there is no kind of uncleanesse which there they dare not commit; malicie, adulterie, thefts, idolatrie, poisonings, envies and slaughters. But you will say unto me, if it be not worth the pains, why then did you go to Ferusalem? Let them heare therefore how I defend my self: I was appoyned to go into Arabia to an holy Council, held for the reforming of that Church: and Arabia being neare to Ferusalem, I promised those that went with me, that I would go to Ferusalem to discourse with them which were Presidents of the Churches there, where matters were in a very troubled state, and they wanted one to be a Mediator in their discords. We knew that Christ was a man born of a Virgin, before we saw Bethlehem; we beleaved his resurrection from death, before we saw his Sepulchre, we confessed his ascension into heaven, before we saw Mount Olivet: But we got so much profit by our journey, that by comparing them

* Baronius, in
anno 1.87.
Quandam
morti Salvatoris
vixem
cum multa de-
votione reperi-
dunt.

* Epist. seu
Orat. de his
qui adeantur
Hierosol. Edit.
Gr. Lat. Parisiis,
1615.

Anno

Dom.

them, we found* our own more holy then those outward things. Wherefore you that fear God, praise him in what place you are. Change of place maketh not God nearer unto us: wherefore thou art, God will come to thee, if the Inne of thy soul be found such, as the Lord may dwell and walk in thee, &c.

* T. Justice
ad eccl. et
doctores.

A Patrone of Pilgrimages not able to avoid the blow, yet willing to break the stroke of so pregnant and plain a testimonie, thus feeketh to ward it; That indeed Pilgrimages are unfiting for women, yet fitting for men. But sure God never appointed such means to heighten devotion necessary thereunto, whereof the half of mankind (all women) are by their very creation made uncapable.

Secondly, he pleadeth, That it is lawfull for secular and laymen to go on Pilgrimages, but not for Friars, who lived recluse in their cells, out of which they were not to come: and against such (faith he) is Nyssens speech directed. But then, I pray, what was Peter the leader of this long dance, but an Hermite: and (if I mistake not) his profession was the very dungeon of the Monastical prison, the strictest and severest of all other Orders. And though there were not so many cowls as helmets in this warre, yet alwayes was the Holy armie well stocked with such catel: So that on all sides it is confessed that the Pilgrimages of such persons were utterly unlawfull.

Chap. 10.

Of superstition in miracles in the Holy Warre, ranked into four sorts.

Besides superstition inherent in this Holy Warre, there was also superstition appendant or annexed thereunto, in that it was the fruitfull mother of many feigned miracles. Hitherto we have refrained to scatter over the storie with them; it will not be amisse now to shovell up some of them in a heap.

* One Peter (not the Hermite) found out the lance wherewith Christ was pierced: and to approve the truth thereof against some who questioned him herein, on Palm-sunday taking the lance in his hand, he walked through a mighty fire without any harm: but it seemeth he was not his crafts-master, for he died soon after.

* M. Paris, in
anno 1099.

* An image of our Ladie brought from Jerusalem, but set

* Idem:

Ti up

246

up neare Damascus, began by degrees to be clothed with flesh; and to put forth breasts of flesh, out of which a liquour did constantly flow: Which liquour the Templars carried home to their houses, and distributed it to the Pilgrimes which came to them, that they might report the honour thereof through the whole world.

* M. Paris.

^{"Roger Hove-}
don. in anno
1187.

* Nauclerus,
Gen. 43.

* Byron. Pru-
ter.

* Spondanus,
in anno 1291.

* A Sultan of Damascus who had lost one eye, chanced to lose the other, and so became stark-blind; when coming devoutly to this image, though he was a Pagan, having faith in God, and confidence therein, he perfectly was restored to his sight.

Infinite are the sholes of miracles done by Christ's Crofse in Jerusalem; insomuch that my* Author blameth the Bishop of Acon, who carried the Crofse in that batel wherein it was lost to the Turks, for wearing a corslet; and therefore (faith he) he was justly slain: because his weak faith relied on means, not on the miraculouse protection thereof.

When Conrade Landgrave of Thuringia was inrolled in the Teutonick Order to go to the * Holy Warre, and received his benediction (as the fathion was,) the * Holy Ghost visibly descended upon him in the shape of fire. The said Conrade received of God as a boon for his valour in this service, the rare facul-
ty, * That by looking on a man he could tell whether or no he had committed a mortall finne; yea, at first sight descrei their secret finnes.

But the last miracle of our Ladie in Palestine is the Ladie of all miracles; which was this: In the yeare 1291, when the Holy Land was finally subdued by the Turks, the chamber at Nazareth wherein the Angel Gabriel saluted her with joyfull tidings, was wonderfully transported into Sclavonia. That countrey being unworthy of her divine presence, it was by the Angels carried over into Italy, anno 1294.. That place also being infested with thieves and pirates, the Angels removed it to the little vil-
lage of Loreto; where this Pilgrime-Chappel resteth it self at this day, and likewch her entertainment so well, it will travell no further.

But enough: for fools meat is unsavoury to the tast of the wife. I have transgrefsed alreadie: two instances had been sufficient (as Noah preferred but two of all unclean creatures) the rest might be lost without losse, and safely drowned in oblivion. How ever, we may obserue these millions of miracles are reducible to one of these four ranks.

I. Falsely reported, never somuch as seemingly done. Asia, the theatre wheron they were acted is at a great distance, and the miracles as farre from Truth as the place from us. And who knoweth not, when a lie is once set on foot, besides the

Anno
Dom.

first

fift founders, is meeteth with many benefactours, who contribute their charitic thereunto.

2. Falsely done, insomuch as at this day they are * sented amongst the Romanists. Who would not laugh to see the picture of a Saint weep? Where one devout Catholick lifteth up his eyes, ten of the wifer fort wag their heads.

3. Truly done, but by the strength of nature. Suppose one desperately sick, a piece of the Crofse is applied to him, he recovereth; is this a miracle? Nothing lesse; how many thousands have made an escape after Death in a manner hath arrested them? As therefore it is facriledge, to father Gods immediate works on naturall causes; so it is superstition, to intitle naturall events to be miraculouse.

4. Many miracles were ascribed to Saints which were done by Satan. I know it will *non-plus* his power to work a true miracle; but I take the word at large: and indeed vulgar (not to say, humane) eyes are too dimme to discern betwixt things wonderfull and truly miraculouse. Now Satan, the master-juggler, needeth no wires or ginnes to work with, being all ginnes himself; so transcendent is the activite of a spirit. Nay, may not God give the Devil leave to go beyond himself; it being just with him, that those who will not have Truth their king and willingly obey it, should have Falshood their tyrant to whom their judgement should be captivated and in-
slaved?

247

* Miracula, si
più utilitate
aut necessitate
careant, de
facto suspecta
sunt & rejici-
enda, Gerón.

Chap. II.

*The second grand error in prosecuting the Ho-
ly Warre, being the Christians notorious break-
ing their faith with Infidels.*

Next unto Superstition which was deeply inlayed in the Ho-
ly Warre, we may make the Christians Truce-breaking
with the Infidels the second cause of their ill successse. Yet never
but once did they break promise with the Turks; which was
(as I may say) a constant and continued faith-breaking, ne-
ver keeping their word. To omit severall straining of the si-
news and unjoyning the bones of many a solemn peace, we
will onely instance where the neck thereof was clearly broken
asunder.

I. When Godfrey first won Jerusalem, pardon was proclaim-
ed to all the Turks which yeelded themselves; yet three dayes
after

Ii 2

248

after in cold bloud, they were all, without difference of age or sex, put to the sword.

2. Almerick the first swore, effectually to assist the Saracens in driving the Turks out of Egypt; and soon after invaded Egypt, and warred upon the Turks against his promise. I know something he pretended herein to defend himself, but of no validitie; and such plausible and curious witty evasions to avoid perjurie, are but the tying of a most artificial knot in the halter, therewith to strangle ones own conscience.

3. There was a peace concluded for some time betwixt King Guy and Saladine; which *non obstante* Reinold of Castile robbed Saladines own mother: Whereupon followed the miserable overthrow of the Christians, and taking of Jerusalem.

4. Our Richard at his departure from Palestine, made a firm peace for five years with Saladine, and it stood yet in force when Henrie Duke of Saxonie coming with a great armie of new adventurers invaded the Turkish dominions.

5. Frederick the second, Emperour, made a truce of ten years with the Sultan of Babylon; and yet in despite thereof, Theobald King of Navarre forraged the countrey of Gaza, to the just overthrow of him and his armie.

6. Reinold Vice-roy of Palestine, in the name of Frederick the Emperour, and after him our Richard Earl of Cornwall, drew up a firm peace with the said Sultan; which was instantly disturbed and interrupted by the turbulent Templars.

7. Lastly, the Venetians in the name of all Christian Princes, concluded a five years peace with Alphir the Mammaluke Prince of Egypt; yet some voluntaries in Ptolemais pillaged and robbed many Saracen merchants about the citie. But pardon them this last fault, we will promise they shall never do so any more in Palestine, hereupon losing all they had left there.

And how could Safetie it self save this people, and blesse this project so blackly blasted with perjurie! As it is observed of tyrants, Where one goeth, ten are sent to the grave; so where one truce concluded with the Turks did naturally expire and determine, many were violently broken off. A sinne so repugnant to all moral honestie, so injurious to the quiet and peace of the world, so odious in it self, so scandalous to all men, To dissolve a league when confirmed by Oath (the strongest bond of conscience, the end of particular strife, the soulder of publick peace, the sole assurance of amitie betwixt divers nations, made here below, but inrolled in his High Court whose glorious name doth signe it;) a sinne, I say, so hainous, that God cannot but most severally punish it. David asketh, *Who shall dwell upon thy holy hill?* and answereth himself, *He that sweareth to his neighbour,*

Psal. 15.

Anno
Dom.

249

boun, and disappointeth him not, though it were to his own hindrance. No wonder then, though the Christians had no longer abidance in the Holy hill of Palestine (though this, I confess, is but the bark of the text) driving that trade wherewith none ever thrived, the breaking of promises: Wherewith one may for a while fairly spread his train, but he will moult his feathers soon after.

Chap. 12.

Of the hinderances of the good successe in the Holy Warre; whereof the Popes and Emperours of Greece, were the two principall.

SO much concerning those *lesa principia* in this Holy Warre; Superstition and Perjurie, which struck at the root of it. Come we now to consider many other hinderances, which abated the good successe thereof. Amongst these we will not be so heretical as to denie the Popes Primacie, but account him the first cause of their ill successe. Such wounds as we find in his credit, we will neither widen nor close up; but even present them to the Reader as we found them. In four respects he baned the Christians good speed in this Warre:

1. He caused most of their truce-breaking with the Turks, urging men thereunto. Thus Pope Celestine drove on the Christians against the Turks, whilst as yet the peace our Richard concluded with them was not expired, and so many other times also. For alas! this was nothing with his Holiness, who sitting in the temple of God, so farre advanceth himself above God, as to dispense with oathes made sacred by the most holy and high name of God, and professing himself the sole Umpire and Peace-maker of the world, doth cut asunder those only fi-news which hold peace together.

2. In that twice the Kingdome of Jerusalem was offered to the Christians, and the Popes Legates would not suffer them to accept it: (No doubt, by instructions from their Master; this being to be presumed on, That those his absolute creatures altered not a title, but went according to the copie that was set them) Once anno 1219, when Pelagius the Legate refused the free offer of Melechfala: And the secondd time some thirtie years after; when the same bountifull profer was refused by Odo the Popes Legate: For when the same Melechfala again offered the free resignation of the whole Kingdome of Jerusalem,

Ii 3

250

salem, whereby the same day great quierneſſe had entred into all Christendome, with the end of much bloudshed and miserie, the Legate ** frontoſe contradicens*, would in no wife receive the conditions offered.

* M. Paris.
pag. 147.
Huic pacis
forma ex Pa-
pa mandato
rebellis erat
Legatus, &
frontoſe con-
tradicens, &c.

3. Frederick the second, Emperour, was possessed of it; when the Pope moleſted him, and ſtirred up the Templaſ against him, as ſo many needles to prick him when he was to ſit down on the throne.

4. By diverting the Pilgrimes, and over-titling his own quarrels to be Gods caufe; nothing being more common with him, then to imploſ those armes which were levied for the Holy Warre, in ſubduing the Albingenes and many others of his private enemies.

By all theſe it plainly appeareth, That what fair ſhews foever his Holineſſe made, calling Councils, appointing Le-gates, providing Preachers, proclaiming Pardons, to advance this Warre; yet in very deed, he neither intended nor deſired that the Christians ſhould make a finall conqueſt of Palestine, but be employed in continuall conqueſting it. He would have this Warre go on *cum decente paſſa*, fair and ſoftly: let the Christians now beat the Turks, and then the Turks beat the Christians; and ſo let them take their turns, whilſt his pri-uate profit went on. For (as we touched before) to this Warre the Pope condemned all dangerous perſons (eſpecially the Emperours of Germanie) to be there employed. As little children are often ſet to ſchool, not ſo much to learn, as to keep them out of Harms way at home: ſo this carefull Father ſent many of his children to the Holy Warre, not for any good he knew they would either do or get there, but it would keep them from worſe doing; which otherwife would have been paddling in this puddle, raking in that channel, ſtirring up queſtions and controverſies unfavourie in the noſtrils of his Holineſſe, and perhaſe falling into the fire of diſcord and diſſenſion againſt their own Father. Indeed at laſt this Warre ended it ſelf in diſpite of the Pope: Who no doubt would have driven this web (weaving and unweaving it, Penelope-like) muſh longer if he could: yet he digeſted more patiently the ending thereof, because the net might be taken away when the fish was already caught, and the Warre ſpared now the Germane Emperour ſtrength thereby was ſufficiently abated in Italie.

Much also this Warre increased the *intrado* of the Popes revenues. Some ſay Purgatory-fire heateth his kitchin: they may adde, the Holy Warre filled his pot, if not paid for all his ſecond courſe. It is land enough, to have the office of collecting the contributions of all Christendome given to this Warre.

Anno
Dom.
~

Warre. So much for his great receiſs hereby. And as for what he expended, not too farre in the point. If the Pope (faith *their law) thrifteſ thousands of ſouls into Hell, none may ſay to him, Why doſt thou ſo? It is presumption then to make him anſwer for money, who is not accountable for men.

With the Pope let the Emperours of Grece their Jealousie go, as the ſecond bane of the Christians ſucceſſe in this Warre. These Emperours tormented themſelves in ſeeking that they would have been loth to find, the treacherie of the Latines; and therefore to begin ſirſt, uſed them with all treacherie: Where-of, largely* formerly. And ſurely, though a cauious circumſpection be commendable in Princes; yet in ſuch over-fear, they were no leſſe injurious to themſelves then to the western Pilgrimes. Yea generally, ſuſpicioneſſe is as great an enemie to wiſdom, as too muſch credulite; i it doing oftentimes as hurfull wrong to friends, as the other doth receive wrongfull hurt from diſſemblers.

251
* Diff. 40 can-
Si Papa ſue
& fraterna
ſalutis negli-
genſia.

* Book 2.
chap. 9, 27.

Chap. 13.

*The third hinderance, the Equalitie of the un-
dertakers; the fourth, the Length of the jour-
ney.*

THe next cauſe of their ill ſucceſſe was the diſcord arising from the parite of the Princes which undertook this voy-age. Many of them could abide no equal; all, no ſuperior: fo that they had no chief, or rather were all chiefs: The ſwarm wanted a maſter-Bee, a ſupreme Commander, who ſhould aw them all into obedience. The Germane Emperour (though above all) came but ſeldome, and was not conſtant amongst them: The King of Jeruſalem (eſpecially in the declining of the State) was rather ſleighted then feared: The Popes Legate uſurped a ſuperiorite, but was never willingly nor ge-neraly obeyed. Surely ſmaller forces being united under one command would have been more effectual in proof (though not ſo promising in opinion and fame) then theſe great armes variouſly compounding by affiſcations and leagues, and of the confluence of Princes otherwife uncoincuring in their ſeverall courses.

Livie writing of that great battel (the critiſall day of the worlds Empire) betwixt Hannibal and Scipio, * It is ſmall, faith he, to ſpeak of, yet of muſch moment in the matter it ſelf, that when

* Lib. 30.

252 the armies joyned, the shouring of the Rômanes was farre more great and terrible, as being all of one voice from the same nation; whileft Hannibals fouldiers voices were different and disagreeing, as consisting of severall languages. If such a toy be considerable, and differing in tongues lessenneth the terriblenesse in an armie, how doth dissenting in hearts and affections abate the force thereof? and what advantage had the united Turks against divided Christian Princes which managed this warre? Had the emulation betwixt those equall Princes onely been such as is the spurre of vertue, farre from ennitie and hatefull contention, striving with good deserts to outstrip those who by the same means sought to attain to the like end; had it been mixed with love in regard of the affinitie of their affections and sympathie of their desires, not seeking the ruine of their competitor, but succouring him in danger; then such *similitates* had been both honourable and usefull to the advancing of the Holy cause: But on the other side, their affections were so violent and dispositions so crooked, that emulation in them boyled to hatred, that to malice, which rested better satisfied with the miserable end of their opposite partner, then with any trophies deservedly erected to their own honour. And herein the warres betwixt the Venetians and Gencians in Syria, are too pregnant an instance.

The length of the journey succeedeth as the fourth impediment. There needed no other hinderance to this voyage then the voyadge; the way was so long. In sensation, the object must not be over-distant from the sene; otherwise Lynceus eyes may fee nothing: So it is requisite in warlike adventures, that the work be not too faire from the undertakers. Indeed the Romanes conqueréed countreys farre from home: but the lands betwixt them were their own, wherein they refreshed themselves; and well may one lift a great weight at arms end, if he hath a rest to stay his elbow on. So though Spain hath subdued much in the Indies, yet there they met with none or naked resistance. It fared not thus with the Christians in this warre: By the tediousnesse of the journey their strength was exhausted; they ranne dreggs when first they were broched in Syria, and as it were scattered their powder in presenting, before they came to discharge.

Frederick Barbarossa wrote a braving letter to Saladine, reckoning up the severall nations in Europe under his command, and boasting what a armie of them he would bring into Syria. * Saladine answered him, That he also ruled over as many peoples; and told him, that there was no sea which hindred his men from coming quickly together; whereas, saith he, you have a great sea, over which with pains and dan-

Anno
Dom.
253

ger you must passe before you can bring your men hither. Besides, if the Christians shaped their journey by land, then their miseries in Hungarie, Grecia, and Asia the leſſe, made the land-journey more tedious and troublesome then if they had gone by ſea.

Chap. 14.

The fifth impediment, Clergie-men being Captains.

THAT Prelates and Clergie-men were often Generalls in this action (as Peter the Hermite, Pelagius the Cardinall, and many others) was another caufe of their ill ſuccesse: For allow them able in their own way, for matter of learning, yet were they unſufficient to manage martiall affairs. Many who in England have learned the French toſſage, and afterwards have gone over into France, have found themſelves both deaf and dumbe in effect, neither hearing to understand nor ſpeaking to be understood: They in like manner who frame to themſelves lit their ſtudies a model of leading an armie, find it as full of erroures as rules when it cometh to be applied; and a meaſure of warre taken by book, falleth out either too long or too ſhort, when brought into the field to be uſed.

I have heard a ſtorie of a great map-monger, who undertook to travel over England by help of his maps, without asking the leaſt direction of any he met. Long he had not ridden but he met with a *non plus ultra*, a deep unpaſſable gullet of water, without bridge, ford, or ferrie. This water was as unknowne to his Camdens or Speeds maps as to himſelf, because it was neither bodie nor branch of any conſtant river or brook (ſuch as onely are viſible in maps) but an *aer-tempore*-water, flowing from the ſnow which melted on hills. Worse unexpected accidents ſurprise thoſe who conceive themſelves to have conned all martiall maximes out of Authors, and warrant their ſkil in warre againſt all events out of their great reading: when on the ſudden ſome unwoide occurrent taketh them unprovided, ſtanding amazed till deſtruſion ſeteth on them.

Indeed, ſometimes ſuch unlooked-for chances arreſt even the beſt and moſt experienced Generalls, which haue long been acquainted with warre; nor are they priviledged by all their experience from ſuch caſualties, nor are they to omnisci-ent but that their ſkil may be poſed therewith, a minute ſhewing ſometimes what an age hath not ſeen before: But

254

then such aged Commanders have this advantage, that finding themselves at a fault, they can soonest know where to beat about and recover it.

Add to the inabilitie, the incongruitie of Prelates going to fight. True, in defensive warres necessarie is their sufficient dispensation; but otherwise it is improper. In the battel against Amalek, Joshua fought; Moses prayed; the Levites bare the ark, no office of command in the Camp. And better it had been that Cardinall Columna had been at his beads, or in his bed, or anywhere else, then in the camp of Egypt; where by his indiscreet counsel he brought all the lives of the Christians into danger.

Chap. 15.

The sixth hinderance, the Diversitie of the climate disagreeing with the bodies of Europe; And what weakeneth Northern men going Southward.

Now followeth the Diversitie of the climate, which caused the death of many thousands of the Christians, sweeping them away with horrible plagues and other diseases. For even as men when they come into a new Corporation, must pay their fees before they can be freemen thereof, and set up trading therein; so it alwayes cost the Christians of Europe a dangerous sicknesse at least, before they could be well acquainted with the aire and climate of Palestine.

Amongst other diseases the Leprosie was one epidemicall infection which tainted the Pilgrimes coming thither. This (though most rife in our Saviours time, God so ordering it that Judea was sickest while her Physician was nearest) at this time of the Holy Warre was very dangerous. Hence was it brought over into England (never before known in this Island) and many Lazar-houses erected for the relief of those infected therewith. Their chief house was at Burton-lazars in Leicestershire. I say not, as this disease began with the Holy Warre in England, so it ended with it: Sure such hath been Gods goodness, that few at this day are afflicted therewith; and the leprosie of Leprofie, I mean the contagion thereof, in this cold country is much abated.

Many other sicknesses seised on the Pilgrimes there, especially in summer. The Turks like Salamanders, could live in that fiery

Anno

Dom.

~

fiery country, whose scorching our Northern bodies could not endure. Yea, long before I find it observed by Vitruvius, that they who come cold into hot countreys, cannot long subsist, but are dissolved; whilst those that change out of hot into cold, find not only no distemper and sicknesse by the alteration, but also grow more healthfull, solid, and compacted: But this perchance is easilier said then maintained.

But let us not hereupon be disheartened to set on our Southern foes for fear to be impaired, nor they invited to invade us by hope to be improved. Know, it is not so much the climate, as bad and unwholefome diet irraging the climate against us, which unsneweth those Northern nations when they come into the South: Which bad diet, though sometimes necessary for want of better food, yet is most-times voluntarie through mens wilfull intemperance. In the Portugall action anno 1589, more English owed their Calenture to the heat of wine then weather. Why do our English merchants bodies fadge well enough in Southern aire? why cannot our valour thrive as well there as our profit; but chiefly for this, That merchants are carefull of themselves, whilst soldiers count it basenesse to be thrifty of their own healths?

Befides, the sinnes of the South unmasculate Northern bodies. In hot countreys the Sirens of pleasure sing the sweetest, which quickly ravish our cares unused to such musick. But should we marching Southwards observe our health in some proportion of temperance, and by degrees habituate our selves to the climate; and should we keep our souls from their sinnes, no doubt the North might pierce the South as farre, and therein erect as high and long-lasting trophies, as ever the South did in the North.

Nor must it have admittance without examination into a judicious breast, what some have obserued; That Northern people never enjoyed any durable settled government in the South. Experience avoweth they are more happy in speedy conquering then in long enjoying of countreys.

But the first Monarch the world ever knew (I mean, the Assyrian) came from the North: Whence he is so often styled in Scripture, The King of the North; conquering, and for many years enjoying those countreys which lie betwixt him and the sunne; as Chaldea, Mesopotamia, Babylonia, Syria, Egypt: To speak nothing of the Turks, who in the dichotomizing of the world fall under the Northern part, and coming out of Scythia at first subdued most Southern countreys.

Chap. 16.

The seventh impediment, the Vitiousnesse of the undertakers.

Hus are we fallen on the next hinderance of successe in this Holy Warre, the Vitousnesse of the Undertakers. But here first we must make an honourable reservation for many adventurers herein, whom we confess most pious and religious persons. Let us not raise the opinion of our own pietie by trampling on our predecessours, as if this age had monopolized all goodnesse to it self. Some no doubt most religious and truly valiant (as fearing nothing but sinne) engaged themselves in this action; of whom I could only wish, that their zeal herein had either had more light or lesse heat. But with these, I say not how many, but too many went most wicked people, the causers of the ill successe.

It will be objected, *Sanctitas morum* hath been made of some a note of the true Church, never the signe of a fortunate armie: Look on all armies generally, we shall find them of the souldiers religion, not troubled with over-much precisenesse: As our King John said, (whether wittily or wickedly, let others judge) That the Buck he opened was fat, yet never heard Mass: so many souldiers have been successfull without the least smack of pietie; some such desperate villains, that fortune (to erroneous judgements) may seem to have favoured them for fear.

True: but we must not consider these adventurers as plain and mere souldiers, but as Pilgrimes and Gods armie, in whom was required, and from whom was expected more pietie and puritie of life and manners then in ordinary men: whereas on the contrary, we shall make it appear, that they were more vitious then the common sort of men. Nor do we this out of crueltie or wantonnesse, to wound and mangle the memorie of the dead; but to anatomize and open their ulcerous insides, that the dead may teach the living, and lesson posterite.

Besides those that went, many were either driven or fled to the Holy Land. Thoſe were driven, who having committed some * horrible finne in Europe, had this penance impos'd on them, To travel to Jerusalem to expiate their faults. Many a whore was ſent thither to find her virginitie: Many a murderer was enjouyed to fight in the Holy Warre, to walle off the guilt of Christian blood by ſhedding blood of Turks. The like was in all other offences; malefactours were ſent hither to ſatisfie for their former wickednesse. Now God forbid we ſhould condemn

* Totum vul-
gus, tam cali-
quam inceſti,
adulteri, ho-
miceria, per-
jurii, praedo-
nes, *Albertus*
Aquensis, lib.
Hierogol. lib.
1 cap. 2.

Befoldias, pag.
tot. ex Bro-
chardis, Male-
factor depre-
henſus, homi-
cida, latro,
fur, inceſti-
fus, adulteri,
ſemicator, ti-
met a juſcie
condignam
penam, &
transfretam in
terram San-
ctam.

demn them, if truly penitents, for impious. May he who speaketh against penitents, never have the honour to be one; ſince Repentance is the younger brother to Innocence it ſelf. But we find that many of them reverted to their former wickednesse: they loſt none of their old faults and got many new, mending in this hot countrey as fowre ale in ſummer. Others fled hither, who having ſupererogated the gallows in their own countrys by their ſeverall midemeanours, theft, rapes, inceſt, murders, to avoid the ſtroke of Justice, protected themſelves under this voyage; and coming to Palestine, ſo profited in thoſe Eastern schools of vices, that they learned to be more artificially wicked. This plainly appeareth, as in ſundry other Authours, ſo chiefly in Tyrius, a witneſſe beyond exception, who * often complaineth hereof. And if we value teſtimonies rather by the weight then number, we muſt credit ſo grave a man, who writheth it with grief, and had no doubt as much water in his eyes as ink in his pen, and ſurely would be thankfull to him that herein would prove him a liar.

* Especially in
the end of
King Alme-
rick's life.

Chap. 17.

*The eighth hinderance, the Treacherie of the Templars; Of Sacrifedge alledged by Baroni-
us, the cause of the ill successe.*

Obert Earl of Artois upbraided the Maſter of the Tem-
plars, That it was the common ſpeech, that the Holy Land
long ſince had been wonne, but for the falſe colluſion of the
Templars and Hospitallers with the Infidels: Which words,
though proceeding from paſſion in him, yet from premedita-
tion in others, not made by him but related, deferue to be
obſerved the rather, becauſe common reports (like ſmoke, ſel-
dom due from ſome fire, neuer but from much heat) are
generally true. It is not to be denied, but that both theſe Or-
ders were guilty herein, as appeareth by the whole current of
the ſtorie. Yea, King Almerick fairly truſſed up twelve Tem-
plars at once, * hanging them for delivering up an impregnable
fort to Syracon. Theſe like a deceitfull chirurgeon, who hath
more corruption in himſelf then the ſore he drefſeth, prolonged
the cure for their private profit; and this Holy Warre being the
trade whereby they got their gains, they lengthened it out to
the utmoſt: So that their treacherie may paſſe for the eighth im-
pediment.

* Tyrius, lib.
19. cap. xi.

258

* Anno Eccl. 1100, &
in anno 1101, &
1104.

Baronius^{*} concludeth this one principall cause of the Christians ill successe, That the Kings of Jerusalēm took away that citie from the Patriarchs thereof, herein committing sacrilegē, a sinne so hainous, that malice it self cannot wisi an enemic guiltye of a worse. But whether or no this was sacrilegē, we refiere the Reader to what hath been largely discusſed.

And here I could wisi to be an auditour at the learned and unpartiall arguing of this question, Whether over-great donations to the Church may not afterwards be revoked? On the one side it would be pleaded, who shoulde be judge of the over-greatnesse, seeing too many are so narrow-hearted to the Church, they count any thing too large for it; yea, some would cut off the flesh of the Churches necessary maintenance, under pretense to cure her of a tympanie of superfluities. Besides, it would be alledged, What once hath been bestowed on pious uses, must ever remain thereto: To give a thing and take a thing, is a play too childish for children; much lesse must God be mocked therewith, in resuming what hath been conferred upon him. It would be argued on the other side, That when Kings do perceive the Church ready to devoure the Commonwealth by vast and unlimited donations unto it, and Clergie-men grown to suspicioſe greatness, armed with hurtfull and dangerous priviledges derogatorie to the royaltie of Princes; then, then it is high time for Princes to pare their overgrown greatness. But this high pitch we leave to stronger wings: Sure I am in another kind, this Holy Warre was guilty of sacrilegē, and for which it thrived no whit the better; in that the Pope exempted ſix and twentie thousand manours in Europe, belonging to the Templars and Hospitallers, from paying any tithes to the Priest of the parish; ſo that many a Minister in England smarteth at this day for the Holy Warre. And if this be not sacrilegē, to take away the dowrie of the Church without affuring her any joynure in lieu of it, I report my ſelf to any that have not the pearl of prejudice in the eye of their judgement.

Anno
Dom.
~

Chap.

Anno
Dom.
~

Chap. 18.

Three grand faults in the Kingdome of Jerusalēm, bindering the strength & puissance thereof.

259

Come we now to ſurvey the Kingdome of Jerusalēm in it ſelf: We will take it in its verticall point, in the begining of Baldwin the third, when grown to the best strength and beautie; yet even then had it ſome faults, whereby it was impossible ever long to ſubſift.

1. It lay farre from any true friend. On the West it was bounded with the mid-land-sea, but on all other ſides it was environed with an Ocean of foes, and was a country continually besieged with enemies. One being to ſell his house, amongst other commendations thereof proclaimed, That his house had a very good neighbour; a thing indeed conſiderable in the purchafe, and might advance the ſale thereof a years value: Sure I am, the Kingdome of Jerusalēm had no ſuch conveniencie, having bad neighbours round about: Cyprus indeed their friend lay within a dayes ſail; but alas! the Kings thereof had their hands full to defend themſelves, and could ſcarce ſpare a finger to help any other.

2. The Kingdome was farre extended, but not well compacted: all the bodie thereof ran out in arms and legs. Besides that ground inhabited formerly by the twelve tribes, and properly called the Holy Land; the Kingdome of Jerusalēm ranged Northward over all Celyosyria and Cilicia in the leſſer Asia: North-eastward, it roved over the Principalities of Antioch and Edeffa, even unto Carræ beyond Euphrates: Eastward, it poſſefed farre beyond Jordan the ſtrong fort of Cracci, with a great part of Arabia Perrea: Southward, it ſtretched to the entrance of Egypt. But as he is a ſtrong man, whose joyns are well ſet and knit together, nor whom nature hath ſpunne out all in length and never thickened him; ſo it is the united and well compacted Kingdome entire in it ſelf which is strong, not that which reacheth and ſtrideþ the fartheſt. For in the midst of the Kingdome of Jerusalēm lay the Kingdome of Damascus, like a canker feeding on the breast thereof: and clean through the Holy Land, though the Christians had many cities ſprinkled here and there, the Turks in other ſtrong holds continued mingled amongst them.

3. Lastly, (what we have touched once before) ſome ſubjects to the Kings of Jerusalēm, namely, the Princes of Antioch, Edeffa and Tripoli, had too large and abſolute power and

260

and authoritie : They would do whatsoeuer the King would command them, if they thought good themselves. Now subjects should be Adjectives, not able to stand without (much leſſe against) their Prince, or they will make but bad construction otherwife.

These three hinderances in the Kingdome of Jerufalem added to the nine former, will complete a Jurie. Now if any one chance to censure one or two of them, let him not triumph therein; for we produce not these impediments severally but joynly, nor to fight ſingle duells but all in an armie: *Non aduent quoniam singula, juncti a nocent.*

Chap. 19.

What is to be conſerv'd of the incredible numerouſneſſe of many armieſ mentioned in this ſtorie.

Frequent mention hath been made through this Holy Warre of many armieſ, as well Christian as Turkish, whose number of ſouldiers ſwell very great; ſo as it will not be amiffe once for all to diſcufe the point concerning the numerouſneſſe of armieſ anciently. And herein we branch our opinion into theſe feverallſ.

1. Asian armieſ are generally obſerved greater then those of Europe: There is but a ſucking and infant compagnie to haue ten thouſand; yea, under fiftie thouſand no number. The reaſon of their multitude is, not that Asia is more populous, but more ſpatious then Europe. Christendome is enclosed into many ſmall Kingdomeſ and free ſtateſ, which ſeverally can ſend forth no vayl numbers, and ſeldome agree ſo well as to make a joynl collection of their forceſ: Asia lieth in common, in large countrieſ, and many of them united under one head. Besides, it is probable (eſpecially in ancient times, as may be proved out of Scripture) that thofe Eastern countrieſ often ſpend their whole ſtock of men, and imploj all their arms-bearing people in their martiall ſervice, not picking or culing them out, as we in Europe uſe to do.

2. Modern armieſ are farre leſſe then thofe in former ageſ. The warre-*genius* of the world is altered now-a-dayeſ, and ſupplieſ number with policieſ; the foxes ſkinne pieceth out the lions hide. Eſpecially armieſ have been printed in a ſmalſer letter ſince guns came up: One well-mounted cannon will ſpare

Anno

Dom.

ſpare the preſence and play the part of a whole band in a battel.

3. Armieſ both of Europe, and chiefly in Afia (as farther off) are reported farre greater then truthe. Even as many old men use to ſet the clock of their age too fast when once paſt ſeventie, and growing ten yeares in a twelve-moneth, are preſently fourefcore, yea, within a yeaſ or two after, climbe up to an hundred: So it is in relating the number of ſouldiers; if they exceed threescore and ten thouſand, then *ad rotundatatem numeri*, they are hoifeſ up to an hundred; and then fifty thouſand more caſt in for advantage. Nor to ſpeak of the facil miſtake in figures; One telleth, at the firſt voyage of Pilgrimes there went forth * ſix hundred thouſand; another counteth three hundred thouſand ſlain at the laſt taking of Ptolemais: their glib pennes making no more reckoning of men then of pinnes. We perchance may do justly in imitating the unjust steward, ſetting down in the bill of our belief but fifty for every hundred.

Nor is it any Paradox, but what will abide the touch, That competent forces of able and well-appointed and well-diciplined ſouldiers under an experienced Generall, are farre more uſefull then ſuch an unweldie multitude. Little loadſtones will in proportion attract a greater quantitiſ of ſteel then thoſe which be farre greater, because their poles are nearer together, and ſo their vertue more united: So shall we find braver achiuevements by moderate armieſ, then by ſuch portentous and extravagant numbers. I never read of any miracle done by the ſtatue of S. Christopher in Paris, though he be rather of a mountainlike then manlike bignesse: Yea, ſuch immoderate great armieſ are ſubject to great inconveniences.

1. They are not ſo eaſily manageable, and the commands of their Generall cool and loſe ſome vertue in paſſing ſo long a journey through ſo many. 2. It is improbable that ſo many thouſands can be heaped together, but the armie will be very heterogeneous, patched up of diſferent people unsuiting in their manners, which muſt needs occaſion much combrance. 3. These crowds of ſouldiers may hinder one another in their ſervice: as many at the fame time preſſing out at a wicker. 4. Viſuals for ſo many mouthes will not eaſily be proviſed: the proviſions of a country ſerving them but a meal, they muſt fast afterwards. 5. Lastly, ſuch great numbers (though this, I muſt confeſſe, is onely *per accidens*, yet often incident) beget careleſneſſe and confidence in them; as if they would not thank God for their victories, but conceive it a due debt owed to their multitudes. This hath induc'd ſome to the opinion to maintain, That a competent able armie

* Maltese.
lib.4.pag.133.

Sexages
(ſurely a mi-
ſtake for ſexi-
ties) centum
milia.

* Lamp Sel-
tice. viij pag.
313.

262

of thirtie thousand (which number Gonzaga that braye Generall did pitch on as sufficient and complete) need not fear upon a partie in all other respects, any companie whatsoever to come against them: such are enough, being as good as a feast, and farre better then a surfeit.

Chap. 20.

Of the numberlesse Christians which lost their lives in this service.

XEIXES viewing his armie, consisting of more then a million, from an high place all at a sight, is said to weep at the thought, That within an hundred years all those would be mowed down with death: But what man could behold without floods of tears, if presented to him at one view, the infinites of people which lost their lives in this action!

In the first voyage went forth (as the most conscientiall counters report) three hundred thousand: Of these we can make the reader but spendthrifts accounts, All is gone, without shewing the particulars. For after the taking of Jerusalem, this armie was drawn so low, that Godfrey being to fight with Ammiraylus the Egyptian, and bringing forth his whole strength, had but twelve hundred horse and nine thousand foot left him.

At the seconde setting forth, of two hundred and fiftie thousand led hither by Hugh brother to the King of France and sundrie other Bishops; not a thousand came into Palestine.

In the third voyage, Conrade the Emperour led forth no fewer then two hundred thousand foot and fiftie thousand horse; nor was the armie of King Lewis of France farre inferiour: Of whom such as returned make no noise, as not confideable in number.

At the fourth setting forth, Frederick Barbarossa counted an hundred and fiftie thousand souldiers in his armie: Of whom when they came to Ptolemais, no more then * eighteen hundred armed men remained.

Fifthly, what numbers were carried forth by our Richard the first and Philip of France, I find not specified; no doubt they did bear proportion to the greatnessse of the undertakers: All which at their return were consumed to a very small companie.

To omit severall other intermediate actions of many Princes, who went forth with armies and scarce came home with families; King Lewis carried forth two and thirtie thousand: Of which

Tyrius, lib. 9.
cap. 12.vrisperg. in
libri p. 5.
239.• P. Amyl.
in Phil. Aug.
pag 275.Anno
Dom.
m.

1095

1099

Anno
Dom.
m.

which onely six thousand came home, as their own writers report, who tell their tale as it may sound best for the credit of their country; whilest * others count eighty thousand to have lost their lives in that voyage: yea, * some reckon no fewer then an hundred thousand common men, besides seven Counts, to have died in Cyprus of the plague.

* At his second voyage to Tunis, of an hundred and twenty ships which lay at anchor at Trape in Sicily, there were no more saved then the mariners of one onely French ship, and the thirteen ships of our Prince Edward, all the rest, with men, armour and munition did miserably perishe.

But enough of this dolfull subject. If young Physicians with the first fee of their practice are to purchase a new Churchyard, Pope Urbane the second might well have bought some ground for graves when he first perswaded this bloody project whereby he made all Jerusalem, Golgotha, a place for sculls; and all the Holy Land, Aceldama, a field of bloud.

Chap. 21.
The throne of Deserts: What nation merited most praise in this Warre; And first of the French and Dutch service therein.

AS in the first Book we welcomed each severall nation when they first entred into this service; so it is good manners now to take our solemn farewell of them at their going out, and to examine which of them deserved most commendation for their valour in this warre. And herein me thinketh the distinction usuall in some Colledges, of Founders, By-founders, and Benefactours, may properly take place. The Founders of this Holy Warre, were the French; the By-founders, the Dutch, English, and Italian; the Benefactours (according to the different degrees of bountie) the Spanish, Polish, Danish, Scots, and all other people of Europe.

The French I make the Founders for these reasons: First, because they began the action first: Secondly, France in proportion sent most adventurers. Some voyages were all of French, and all voyages were of some French. Yea, French men were so frequent at Jerusalem, that at this day all Western Europeans there are called Franks (as I once conceived, and perchance not without companie in my errore) because so many French men came thither in the Holy Warre. Since, I am converted from that false opinion, having found that two

L 1 2

hundred

263

* Knolls, Turk.
bif. pag. 106.
• Magdeburg.
Cent. 13, col.
606.

* Fox, in Mar-
tyrol. in Hen.
3, pag. 337.

264

* Vide M.
Selden on
Polydorion,
pag. 150.

hundred years before the Holy Warre was dreamed of, namely, in the time of Constantine Porphyrogenetes Emperour of the East, all Western Christians were known to the Greeks by the name of *Franks*; so that it seemeth the Turks borrowed that appellation from the Grecians. Thirdly, as France sent the most, so many of most eminent note: She sheweth for the game no worse cards then a pair-royall of Kings; Lewis the Young, Philip Augustus, and Saint Lewis; besides Philip the Bold his sonne, who went half-way to Tunis. The first and last Christian King of Europe that went to Palestine was a French-man; and all the Kings of Jerusalem, Frederick the Emperour onely excepted, originally were of that Nation. Fourthly, even at this day France is most loyall to the cause. Most grand Masters of the Hospitallers have been Frenchmen. And at this day the Knights of Malta, who have but seven Albergies or Seminaries in all Christendome, have * three of them in France; *viz.*, one of France in general, one of Avergne, and one of Provence. Yet France carrieth not the upper hand so clearly, but that Germanie justleth for it; especially if we adde to it the Low-coutryes, the best stable of wooden horses, and most potent in shipping in that age of any coutry in Europe; which though an *amphibion* betwixt both, yet custome at this day adjudgeth it Dutch.

Now these are the severall accents of honour in the Germane service: First, That coutry sheweth three Emperours in the Holy Warre; Conrade, Frederick Barbarossa, and Frederick the second. The last of these was solemnly crowned and peaceably possessed King of Jerusalem. Secondly, Germanie sent more Princes to this Warre then all Europe besides. It would be an infinite task to reckon them all; it being true of the Germane Nobilitie what Logicians say of a *Line*, that it is *divisibilis in semper divisibilia*. Here honours equally descend to sonnes and daughters; whereby they have Counts without counting in the whole Empire. There were seventeen Princes of Anholt, and seven and twenty Earls of Mansfield all living together: So that * one of their own countrymen saith, That the Dutch esteem none to be men but onely such as are Noble-men. We will not take notice of Germanie as it is minced into peticie Principalities, but as cut into principall Provinces. We find these regnant Princes (for as for their younger brethren, herein they are not accounted) to have been personally present in the Holy Warre.

* Sandys Tra.
vols, pag. 229.

* Erasmus,
Colloqu. in
Diversiorum:
Salut eximno-
biles sue gen-
tu habent pro
boniibus.

Prince

Anno	Prince Palatine of Rhene,	Dukes of Bavaria,	265
Dom.	Henrie 1197	1 Guelpho 1101	
~	Duke (or as others, King) of Bohemia.	2 Henrie 1147	
~	Jaboslaus, or Ladislaus 1147	3 Lewis 1216	
		Land-graves of Thuringia,	
		1 Herman 1197	
		2 Lewis 1227	
		Marquesse of Moravia,	
		Conrade 1197	
		Duke of Mecklenburg,	
		Henry 1277	
	Archbishops of Mentz,	Earls of Flanders,	
	1 Conrade	1 Theodoricus 1147	
	2 Siphred 1197	2 Philippus 1190	
	Archbif. of Triers,	3 Baldvyn 1200	
	Theodoricus 1216	4 William Dampier 1250	
	Archbif. of Colen,	5 Guido 1270	
	Theodoricus 1216	Dukes of Austria. .	
		1 Leopoldus the second 1190	
		2 Frederick 1197	
		3 Leopoldus the third, surnamed The Glorious. 1216	
		Earl of Holland.	
		William 1216	

All these (I say not, these were all) went themselves, and led forth other companies suitable to their greatnesse. The Reader, as he lighteth on more, at his leasure may strike them into this catalogue. Thirdly, Germanie maintained the Teutonick Order, wholly consisting of her nation; besides Templars and Hospitallers, whereof she had abundance: of whose loyall and valiant service we have spoken largely before. Lastly, She fought another Holy Warre at the same time against the Tartars and other barbarous people, which invaded her on her North-east-part. And though some will except, That that warre cannot be intituled Holy, because being on the defensive it was rather of nature and necessarie then pietie: yet upon examination it will appear, that this service was lesse superstitious, more charitable to Christendome, and more rationall and difcreet in it self; it being better husbandry, to save a whole cloth in Europe, then to winne a ragge in Asia.

266

Chap. 22.

The English and Italian service compared; Of the Spanish, Polish, Norwegian, Hungarian, Danish, and Swedish performance in this Warre.

NEX in this race of honour follow England and Italie, being very even and hard-matched. England (it is no flattery to affirm what envie cannot denie) spurreth up close for the prize; and though she had a great disadvantage in the starting (Italie being much nearer to Palestine) yet she quickly recovered it. Our countrey sent one King (Richard the first) and three Kings sonnes (Robert Courthoys, Richard of Cornwall, and Prince Edward) to this warre. Yea, England was a daily friend to this action: and besides these great and grosse summes of visible adventurers, she dropped and cast in privily many a Pilgrime of good qualite; so that there was scarce any remarkable battel or memorable siege done through the warre, wherein there were not some English of eminent deserft.

Yet Italie cometh not any whit behind, if the atchievements of her severall States, Venetians, Genoans, Pisans, Sicilians, Florrentines, were made and moulded up together: Yea, for sea-service and engineers in this warre, they bear the bell away from all other nations. But these things allay the Italian service: 1. It was not so abstracted from the dregs of mercinariness as that of other countreys (whose adventurers counted their very work herein sufficient wages) but before they would yield their assistance they indentred and covenanted with the King of Jerusalem to have such and such profits, pensions, and priviledges in all places they took, to them and their posterite; not as an honorarie reward freely conferred on them, but in nature of wages *ex parte* contracted for afore-hand: as the Genoans had in Ptolemais, and the Venetians in Tyre. 2. These Italians stopped two gaps with one bush: they were Merchant-Pilgrimes, and together applied themselves to profit and pietie. Here in Tyre they had their banks, and did drive a sweet trade of spices and other Eastern commodities. 3. Lastly, As at first they gave good milk, so they kicked it down with their heel, and by their muuall discord caused the losse of all they helped to gain in Syria.

Spain was exercised all the time of this warre in defending her self against the Moores and Saracens in her own bowels: Yet such was her charitie, that whilst her own house was on

Tyrius, lib. 10.
cap. 28. &
lib. 12. cap. 25.

Anno
Dom.
~~~

burning, she threw some buckets of water to quench her neighbours: and as other nations cast their superfluite, she her wi-dows mite into the treasure of this action; and produceth two Theobalds Kings of Navarre, and Alphonse King of Castile, that undertook expeditions to Palestine.

Hungary sheweth one King, Andrew, who washed himself in Jordan, and then shrinking in the wetting returned presently home again. But this countrey, though it self did go little, yet was much gone through to the Holy warre (being the rode to Syria for all land-armies) and merited well in this action, in giving peaceable passage and courteous entertainment to Pilgrimes; as to Duke Godfrey, and Frederick Barbarossa, with all their souldiers as they travelled through it. Had the Kings of Hungarie had the same principle of bateneffe in their souls as the Emperours of Grecia, they had had the same cause of jealoufie against the Christians that passed this way; yet they used them most kindly, and disdained all dishonourable iufpicions. True it is, at the first voyage, King Coloman, not out of crueltie but carefulleneffe and necessarie feueritie, did use his sword against some unruly and disorderly Pilgrimes: but none were there abuſed which first abused not themselves. But what-ever Hungarie was in that age, it is at this day Christendomes best land-bulwark against the Turks: Where this prettie custome is used, That the men wear so many feathers as they have killed Turks; which if obſerved elsewhere, either feathers would be leſſe, or valour more in fashion.

Poland could not stirre in this warre, as lying constant *per-  
due* of Christendome against the Tartarian; yet we find \* Bo-  
leſlaus Crispus Duke or King thereof (waiting on, shall I say:  
or ) accompanying Conrade the Enperour in his voyage to  
Palestine; and having afraid all his and his armes cofts and  
charges towards Constantinople, he returned home, as not  
to be spared in his own countrey. But if by King Davids statute,  
the keepers of the baggage are to be sharers in the spoil  
with the fighters of the battel, then surely Poland and such  
other countreys may entitle themselves to the honour of the  
warre in Palestine; which in the mean time kept home, had an  
eye to the main chancie, and defended Europe against forrein  
invaders.

Norway (in that age the spruceſt of the three Kingdomeſ of  
Scandia, and beſt tricked up with ſhipping; though at this  
day the caſe is altered with her, and ſhe turned from taking to  
paying of tribute) ſent her fleet of tall ſouldiers to Syria:  
whom like good fellows, asked nothing for their work but their  
victuals, and valiantly wonne the citie of Sidon for the King  
of Jerusalem. And it is conſiderable, that Syria (but a ſtep or  
ſtride

267

\* Munt.  
Gefmag. in  
Palau.

\* S. SAM. 30.  
24.

268

stride from Italie) was a long race from Norway; so that their Pilgrimes went not only into another countrey, but into another world.

Denmark was also partner in the foresaid service. Also afterwards, Ericus \* her King, though he went not quite through to the Holy Land, yet behaved himself bravely in Spain, and there assisted the winning of Lisbon from the Infidels. His succellour

\* Canutus anno 1189, had provided his navie; but was prevented by death; his ships nevertheless came to Syria.

Of Sweden in this grand-jurie of Nations I heare no vous avez; but her default of appearance hath been excused \* before.

### Chap. 23. Of the Scottish, Welsh, and Irish, their severall adventures.

There remain behind the Scottish, Welsh, and Irish. It may occasion suspicion, that these nations either did neglect or are neglected in this Holy Warre, because clean through this Historie there is no mention of them or their achievements. True it is, these countreys can boast of no King of their own sent to Syria, nor of any great appearing service by them alone performed. It seemeth then they did not so much play the game themselves, as bet on the hands of others: and haply the Scottish service is accounted to the French; the Welsh and Irish, to the English.

That Scotland was no cyphre in this Warre, plainly appeareth. 1. In that \* David, Earl of Huntington, and younger brother to William the Elder King of Scotland, went along with our Richard the first; no doubt suitably attended with foulders. This David was by a tempest cast into Egypt, taken captive by the Turks, bought by a Venetian, brought to Constantinople, there known and redeemed by an English merchant, and at last safely arrived at \* Alectum in Scotland; which Alectum he in memorie and gratitude of his return called *Dundee*, or *Dei donum*, God's gift. 2. By the plentifull provision which there was made for the Templars and Hospitallers: Who have enjoyed great priviledges; this amongst many others, (Take the Scottish Law in its pure naturals) That the Master of the Knells of the Temple, and chief Priors of the Hospitall of Jerusalem (wha were keepers of strangers to the Haly grave) shold be receaved themselves personally in any

\* Vide Calvini  
sum in anno  
1145. & p.  
Magnum Hist.  
Goth lib.19.  
cap. 1.  
\* Baronius, in  
anno 1189.  
\* Lib. 1 cap. 13.

\* Buchan in  
Guilielmo Se  
nioris.

\* Heli. Beech

Third book of  
Majest cap. 18

Anno  
Dom.  
1145.

suit without entertaining a procurator for them. Nor must we here forget a Saint, William a Scot, of Perth by birth, by trade a Baker, in charite so abundant that he gave his tenth loaf to the poore, in zeal so fervent that he vowed to visit the Holy land. But in his journey, as he passed through Kent, he was slain by his servant, buried at Rochester; afterwards Sanctified, and shewed many miracles.

Neither may we think, whilst all other nations were at this Martiall school, that Wales the while truanted at home. The Welsh saith my \* Author, left their forrefts, and now with them no sport to the hunting of Turks: especially after that Wizo and Walter his sonne, had founded the fair Commandrie for Hospitallers at Sleafach in Pembroke-shire, and endowed it with rich revenues.

Ireland also putteth in for her portion of honour in this service. Indeed, for the first fourscore yeares in the Holy warre, Ireland did little there, or in any other countrey. It was divided into many petty Kingdomes; so that her peoples valour had no progressive motion in length, to make any impression in forrein parts, but onely moved round in a circle at home, their pettie Reguli spending themselves against themselves, till our Henry the second conquered them all. After which time the Irish began to look abroad into Palestine: witness many houses for Templars, and the stately Priorie of Kilmainam nigh Dublin for Hospitallers; the last Lord Prior whereof at the dissolution, was Sir John Rawson. Yea, we may well think, that all the confort of Christendome in this warre could have made no musick if the Irish Harp had been wanting.

### Chap. 24. Of the honourable Arms in scutcheons of Nobilitie occasioned by their service in the Holy Warre.

Now for a Corollarie to this storie, if we survey the scutcheons of the Christian Princes and Nobilitie at this day, we shall find the Arms of many of them pointing at the achievements of their predecessors in the Holy Warre.

Thus the \* Dukes of Austria bear Gules a Fesse Argent, in memorie of the valour of Leopoldus at the siege of Ptolemais; whereof before.

M m

The

269

Lambert, Per  
amb. Kent.

\* v. Malmf.  
lib. 4. pag. 133.

\* Camden, in  
Pembr.

\* Pantal. De  
illust. Germ.  
part. 2. pag.  
201.

270  
Hospit. De  
orig. Mon.  
cap. 17. fol.  
190.

The Duke of Savoy \* beareth Gules a Croffe Argent, being the croffe of St. John of Jerusalem; because his predecesours were speciall benefactours to that Order, and assisted them in defending of Rhodes.

Queens Colledge in Cambridge (to which I owe my education on my first seven years in that Universitie) giveth for parcel of her Arms, amongst many other rich Coats, the Croffe of Jerusalem, as being founded by Queen Margaret, wife to King Henrie the sixth, and daughter of Renate Earl of Angiers and titular King of Siclie and Jerusalem.

The noble and numerous familie of the Douglasses in Scotland (whereof at this day are one Marquesse, two Earls, and a Vice-count) give in their Arms a mans Heart, ever since Robert Bruse King of Scotland bequeathed his heart to James Douglaſſe to carrie it to Jerusalem; which he accordingly performed.

To instance in particulars were endleſſe: we will onely summe them up in generall. Emblems of honour born in Coats occasioned by the Holy Warre, are reducible to these heads:

1. Scallop-shells; which may fidly for the workmanship thereof be called *artificium nature*. It seemeth Pilgrimes carried them constantly with them, as Diogenes did his dish, to drink in. \* I find an Order of Knights called *Eques Cochlearies*, wearing belike Cockle or Scallop-shells, belonging to them who had done good sea-service, especially in the Holy Warre; and many Hollanders (saith my Authour) for their good service at the siege of Damia were admitted into that Order.

2. Saracens Heads: It being a maxime in Heraldrie: That it is more honourable to bear the Head then any other part of the bodie. They are commonly born either black or bloudie. But if Saracens in their Arms should use Christians heads, I doubt not they would shew ten to one.

3. Pilgrimes or Palmers Scrips or Bags; the Arms of the Worhipfull family of the \* Palmers in Kent.

4. Pilgrimes Staves, and such like other implements and acceſſments belonging unto them.

5. But the chiefest of all is the Croffe: which though born in Arms before, yet was most commonly and generally used since the Holy Warre. The plain Croffe, or S. Georges Croffe, I take to be the mother of all the rest; as plain-song is much senior to any running of division. Now as by transposition of a few letters, a world of words are made; so by the varying of this Croffe in form, colour, and metall (ringing as it were the changes) are made infinite severall Coats: The Croffe of *Jerusalem*, or *five Croffes*, most frequently used in this warre; *Croffe Patée*, because the ends thereof are broad; *Fichée*, whose bottom is sharp, to be fixed in the ground; *Wavée*, which thofe may

Anno  
Dom.  
M. ~

271

justly wear who sailed thither through the miseries of the sea, or sea of miseries: *Molinée*, because like to the rind of a mill: *Saltreye*, or S. Andrews Croffe: *Florid*, or garlanded with flowers: the Croffe crossed: Besides the divers tricking or dressing; as piercing, voiding, fimbriating, ingrailing, couping: And in phantie and devices there is still *a plus ultra*; insomuch that Croffes alone as they are variously disguised, are enough to distinguish all the severall families of Gentlemen in England.

Exemplary is the Coat of George Villiers Duke of Buckingham; five Scallop-shells on a plain Croffe, speaking his Predeſſours valour in the Holy Warre. For Sir Nicolas de Villiers Knight, followed Edward the first in his warres in the Holy land; and then and there assumed this his new Coat: For formerly he bore Sable three Cinquefoils Argent. This \* Nicolas was the anceſtore of the Duke of Buckingham, lineaſcended from the ancient familie of Villiers in Normandie; then which name none more redoubted in this ſervice: For we \* find John de Villiers the one and twentieth Maſter of the Hospitallers; and another Philip de Villiers Maſter of Rhodes, under whom it was fur- rendred to the Turks; a yielding equall to a conqueſt.

Yet ſhould one labour to find a mysterie in all Arms, relating to the qualitie or defects of the owners of them (like Chrysip- pus, who troubled himſelf with great contention to find out a Stoicall aſſertion of Philosophy in every fiction of the Poets) he would light on a labour in vain. For I beleeve (be it ſpoken with loyaltie to all Kings of Arms, and Heralds their Lieutenants in that facultie) that at the firſt, the \* will of the bearer was the reaſon of the bearing; or if at their originnal of assuming them there were ſome ſpeciall caufe, yet time ſince hath cancelled it: And as in Mythologie, the morall hath often been made ſince the fable; ſo a ſympathie betwixt the Arms and the bearer hath ſometimes been of later invention. I denie not but in ſome Coats ſome probable reaſon may be aſſigned of bearing them: But it is in vain to digge for mines in every ground, because there is lead in Mendip hills.

To conclude; As great is the uſe of Arms, ſo this eſpecially, To preſerve the memories of the dead. Many a dumbe monu- ment, which through time or ſacrifedge hath loſt his tongue, the epitaph; yet hath made ſuch ſignes by the ſcutcheons about it, that Antiquaries have understood who lay there en- tombed.

\* Burton. in  
Leiceſterbire.

\* Hospit. De  
orig. Mon. in  
Jouan.

\* Dr. Ridley,  
View of the  
Civil law, ſ. 6  
pag. 100.

## Chap. 25.

*Some offers of Christian Princes for Palestine  
since the end of the Holy Warre, by Henry the  
fourth of England, Charles the eighth of  
France, and James the fourth of Scotland.*

AS after that the bodie of the Sunne is set, some shining still surviveth in the West: so after this Holy warre was expired, we find some straggling rayes and beams of valour offering that way; ever and anon the Christian Princes having a bout with that designe. To collect the severall essayes of Princes glancing on that project, were a task of great pains and small profit; specially, some of them being umbrages and State-representations rather then realities, to ingratiate Princes with their subjects, or with the oratorie of so pious a project to woo money out of peoples purses, or thereby to cloke and cover armies levied to other intents: Besides, most of these designes were abortive, or abortive rather, like those untimely miscarriages not honoured with a soul or the shape and lineaments of an infant. Yet to save the Readers longing, we will give him a tast or two; and begin with that of our Henry the fourth of England.

The end of the reigne of this our Henry was peaceable and prosperous. For though his title was builded on a bad foun-  
dation, yet it had strong buttresses: most of the Nobilitie favour-  
ed and fensed it: And as for the house of York, it appeared not;  
its best blood as yet ranne in feminine veins, and therefore was  
the leffe active; or else was kept taft enough in prison. Now  
King Henrie in the sunne-shine evening of his life (after a stormie day) was disprofed to walk abroad, and take in some for-  
rein aire. He pitched his thoughts on the Holy \* Warre, for to  
go to Jerusalem, and began to provide for the same. One prin-  
cipall motive which incited him was, That it was told him he  
should not die till he had heard Mass in Jerusalem. But this  
proved not like the revelation told to old \* Simeon: for King  
Henry was faine to sing his *Nunc dimittis*, before he expected;  
and died in the chamber called *Jerusalem* in Westminster. By  
comparing this propheſie with one of Apollo's oracles, we  
may conclude them to be brethren (they are so alike) and both  
begotten of the father of lies: For the Devil eartheth himself  
in an homonymie, as a fox in the ground; if he be stopped at  
one hole, he will get out at another. How-ever, the Kings pur-  
pose

\* Lord Veru-  
lam, in his  
Henry vii.  
pag. 87.

\* Luke 2. 25.

Anno  
Domini  
273

pose deserueth remembrance and commendation, because really and seriously intended;

Farre better, I believe, then that of Charles the eighth King of France: Who in a braving Embassage which he sent to our Henrie the seventh, gave him to understand his resolutions, to make re-conquest of Naples; but as of a bridge to transpor-t his forces into Grecia; and then not to spare bloud or treasure (if it were to the impairing of his Crown and dispeopling of France) till either he had overthrown the Empire of the Ottomans, or taken it in his way to Paradise; and hence (belike) he would have at Jeruſalem, invited (as he laid) with the former example of our Henry the fourth. But our King Henrie the seventh (being too good a fener to mistake a flourith for a blow) quickly refented his drift (which was to perfwade our King to peace, till Charles should perform his projects in little Britain and elsewhere) and dealt with him accordingly. And as for the gradation of King Charles his purposes, Naples, Grecia, Jeruſalem, a stately but difficult ascent, (where the stairs are to farre asunder, the legs must be long to stride them) the French nation was weary of climbing the first, and then came down, vaulting nimblly into Naples, and our of it again.

More cordiall was that of \* James the fourth King of Scotland, that pious Prince: who being touched in conscience for his fathers death (though he did not cause it, but seemed to countenance it with his presence) ever after, in token of his contrition, wore an iron chain about his bodie; and to expiate his fault, intended a journey into Syria. He prepared his navie, provided his fooldiers, imparted his project to forrein Princes; and verily had gone, if at the first other warres, and afterwards sudden death had not caused his stay.

\* L. Verulam,  
in Henry vii.

\* Buchanan.  
in the life of  
James iii.

## Chap. 26.

*The fiditius Voyage of William Landt-grave of  
Hesse to Palestine confuted.*

These are enough to satisfie; more would cloy. Onely here I must discover a cheat, and have it pilloried, lest it trouble others as it hath done me: The storie I find in Calvifius, anno 1460: take it in his very words, *William the Landt-grave appointed an Holy voyage to Palestine; chose his compaines out of many Noblemen and Earls, in number nинetи eight: He happily finished his journey; onely one of them died in Cyprus. He brought back with him six and fourtie ensignes of horse. Seven moneths*

274

moneths were spent in the voyage, Fab. So farre Calvisius, avouching this Fab. for his authour. Each word a wonder; not to say, an impossibilitie. What in the yeare 1460, when the deluge of the Mahometans had overrun most of Grecia, Asia, and Syria? William, a Landt-grave (of Hesse, no doubt) neither the greatest nor next to the greatest Prince in Germanie, far from the sea, unfurnished with shipping, not within the suspicion of so great a performance! Six and fourtie horse-ensignes taken! Where? or from whom? Was it in warre, and but one man killed? A battel so bloudleſſe seemeth as truthleſſe; and the losing but of one man favoureth of never a one. But seven moneths spent! Such achievements beſtein rather an apprenticeship of years then moneths. Besides, was Fame all the while dead, speechleſſe, or asleep, that ſhe trumpeted not this action abroad? Did onely this Fab. take notice of it? be he Faber, Fabius, Fabianus, Fabinianus, or what you pleafe. Why is it not storied in other Writers? the Dutch-men giving no ſcant meaſure in ſuch wares, and their Chronicles being more guiltie of remembraunce then forgetting matters of moment?

Yet the gravite of Calvisius recording it, moveth me much on the other ſide, a Chronologer of ſuch credit, that he may take up more belief on his bare word then ſome other on their bond. In this perplexitie, I wrote to my oracle in doubts of this nature, M<sup>r</sup>. Joseph Mead fellow of Chrifts Colledge in Cambridge, ſince lately deceaſed: Hearc his anſwer,

Sir,

I have found your ſtorie in Calvisius his poſthume Chronologie, but can heare of it no-where elſe. I ſought Reuſners Baſilica Genealogica, who is wont with the name of his Princes to note briefly any act or accident of theirs memorabla, and ſometimes ſcarce worth it: But no ſuch of this William Landt-grave. So in conclusion, I am reſolved it is a fable out of ſome Romainza, and that your Authour Fab. is nothing but Fabula defectively written. But you will ſay, Why did he put it into his book? I anſwer, He himſelf did not, but had noted it in ſome paper put into his Chronologie, preparing for a new and fuller Edition: which, himſelf dying before he had digeſted his new Edition (as you may fee I think ſomewher in the Preface) thof who were truſted with it after his death to write it out for the preſſe, fooliſhly tranſferred out of ſuch paper, or perhaps out of the margin, into the text, thinking that Fab. had been ſome Historian, which was nothing but that ſhe-authour Fabula. If this will not ſatisfie, I know not what to ſay more unto it. Thus with best affection I reſt,

Chrift. Coll.

June 20. 1638.

Yours, JOSEPH MEAD.

Anno  
Dom.

This I thought fit to recite, not for his honour but to honour my ſelf, as conceiving it my credit to be graced with ſo learned a mans acquaintance.

Thus much of offers. I will conclude with that ſpeech of the Ladie Margaret, Counteſſe of Richmond and Derbie, and mother to our King Henry the seventh (a moft pious woman, as that age went; though I am not of his faith who beleeved her to be the next woman in goodneſſe to the Virgin Marie :) She used to ſay, That if the Christian Princes would undertake a warre againſt the Turks to recover the Holy Land, ſhe would be their \* laundrefſe. But I beleeve ſhe performed a work more acceptable in the eyes of God, in founding a Profefſours place in either Universitie, and in building Chrifts and S<sup>t</sup>. Johns Colledges in Cambridge (the ſeminaries of ſo many great scholars and grave D.vines) then if ſhe had viſited either Chrifts Sepulchre, or S<sup>t</sup>. Johns Church in Jeruſalem.

275

Camdens  
Remaines.

### Chap. 27.

#### *The fortunes of Jeruſalem ſince the Holy Warre, and her preſent eſtate.*

1298.

Even yeareſ after the Latine Christians were finally expellid out of Syria, ſome hope presented it ſelf of reſtabliſhing them again. For Casanus the great Tartar Prince, having of late subdued the Perfians, and married the daughter of the Armenian King (a Ladie of great perfection) and of a Mahometan become a Christian, at the requeſt of his wife he besieged the citie \* Jeruſalem, and took it without reſiſtance. The Temple of our ſaviour he gave to the Armenians, Georgians, and other Christians, which flockt thick out of Cyprus thereto to inhabit. But ſoon after his departure it fell back again to the Mammalukes of Egypt, who enjoyed it till Selimus the great Turk, anno 1517, overthrew the Empire of the Mammalukes, and ſeized Jeruſalem into his hand: whose ſucceffours keep it at this day.

Jeruſalem better acquitteſt it ſelf to the eare then to the eye, being no whit beautiſull at all. The ſituation thereof is very uneven, riſing into hills and ſinking into dales; the lively embleme of the fortunes of the place; ſometimes advanced with proſperitie, ſometimes depreſſed in miſerie. Once it was well compacted, and \* built as a citie that is at unitie in it ſelf; but now diſtracted from it ſelf: the ſuspicioſe houses (as if afraid to be infected with more miſerie then they have already, by con-

\* Centuriatores pig. iutus  
operu penit.

Pſal. 122-3.

276

\* Bydulph,  
pag. 117.\* Sandys Tyr-  
wells, pag. 158.

contiguousnesse to others) keep off at distance, having many waste places betwixt them; not one \* fair street in the whole citie.

It hath a castle, built (as it is thought) by the Pisans, \* tolerably fortified. Good guard is kept about the citie, and no Christians with weapons suffered to enter. But the deepest ditch to defend Jerusalem from the Western Christians, is the remotenesse of it; and the strongest wall to fence it, is the Turkish Empire compassing it round about.

Poore it must needs be, having no considerable commoditie to vent, except a few beads of Holy earth, which they pay too dear for that have them for the fetching. There is in the citie a covent of Franciscans, to whom Chritians repair for protection during their remaining in the citie. The Padre Guardian appointeth these Pilgrimes a Friar, who sheweth them all the monuments about the citie: Scarce a great stone, which beareth the brow of reverend antiquie, that passeth without a peculiar legend upon it: But every vault under ground hath in it a deep mysterie indeed. Pilgrimes must follow the Friar with their bodies and belief, and take heed how they give tradition the lie, though she tell one never so boldly. The survey finished, they must pay the Guardian both for their victuals and their welcome, and gratifie his good words and looks; otherwise if they forget it, he will be so bold as to remember them. The Guardian farmeth the Sepulchre of the Turk at a yearly rent: and the Turks which reap no benefit by Christs death, receive much profit by his buriall; and not content with their yearly rent, squeeze the Friars here on all occasions, making them pay large summes for little offenses.

The other subsistence which the Friars here have, is from the benevolence of the Pope and other bountifull benefactours in Europe. Nor getteth the Padre Guardian a little by his fees of making Knights of the Sepulchre: of which Order I find, some hundred years since, Sir John Chamond of \* Lancels in Cornwall to have been dubbed Knight. But I beleeve no good English subject at this day will take that honour, if offered him; both because at their creation they are to swear loyalty to the Pope and \* King of Spain, and because honours conferred by forrein Potentates are not here in England acknowledged, neither in their style nor precedencie, except given by courtesie: Witnesse that famous case of the Count Arundel of Wardour, and Queen Elisabeths perenpiorie resolute, That her sheep should be branded with no\* strangers mark, but her own.

The land about it (as Authours generally agree) is barren. Yet

\* Brochard a Monk, who lived here some two hundred yeares since,

Anno  
Dom.  
~~~

since commandeth it to be very fruitfull. Sure he had better eyes, to see more then other men could; or else by a *Synechdoche* he imputeth the fertilitie of parcels to the whole country. But it is as false a confequence, as, on the other side, to conclude from the basenesse of Bagshot-heath the barrenesse of all the Kingdome of England. We may rather beleeve, that since the fall of the Jews from Gods favour, the once-supernaturall fertilitie of the land is taken away, and the naturall strength thereof much abated and impaired.

277

Chap. 28.

Whether it be probable that this Holy Warre will ever hereafter be set on foot again.

Hus we state the question; Whether this Holy Warre, I mean, for the winning of the citie of Jerusalim and recovering of Palestine, will probably ever hereafter be projected and acted again. We may beleeve this tragedie came off to ill the last acting, that it will not be brought on the stage the second time.

1. The Pope will never offer to give motion to it, as knowing it unlikely to succeed. Policies of this nature are like sleights of hand, to be shewed but once; lest what is admired at first be derided afterwards.

2. Princes are grown more cunning, and will not bite at a bait so stale, so often breathed on. The Popes ends in this warre are now plainly smelt out; which though prettie and pleasing at first, yet Princes are not now, like the native Indians, to be cozened with glasse and gaudie toyes: The load-stone to draw their affection (now out of non-age) must present it self necessarie, profitable, and probable to be effected.

3. There is a more needfull work nearer hand, to resist the Turks invasion in Europe. Heark how the Grecians call unto us, as once * the man in the vision did to S. Paul, *Come over into Macedonia, and help us.* Yea, look on the Popes projects of the last Edition, and we shall find the businesse of the Sepulchre buried in silence, and the Holy Warre running in another chanel, against the Turks in Christendome.

4. Lastly, who is not sensible with sorrow of the diffensions (better suiting with my prayers then my penne) wherewith Christian Princes at this day are rent in sunder? wounds so wide that onely Heavens chirurgerie can heal them: Till which time no hope of a Holy Warre against the generall and common foe of our Religion.

* Actis 16.9.

* Carew in
his Survey in
Cornwall, pag. xxviii.* Bydulph,
pag. 119.* Chamond
Elisabeth, in
anno 1596.* D'Urra
Santia, part.
2. cap. 1.

N n

We

278

We may safely conclude, that the regaining of Jerusalem and the Holy Land from the Turks, may better be placed amongst our desires then our hopes; as improbable ever to come to passe: except the Platonick yeare, turning the wheel of all actions round about, bring the spoke of this Holy Warre back again.

Chap. 29. *Of the many Pretenders of titles to the Kingdome of Jerusalem.*

NO Kingdome in the world is challenged at this day by such an armie of Kings as this of Jerusalem: It is sooner told what Princes of Europe do not, then what do lay claim to it; they be so many. Take their names as I find them in the Catalogue of Stephen a Cypriot.

- 1 *The Emperour of the East.*
- 2 *The Patriarch of Jerusalem.*
- 3 *The Lusignans, Kings of Cyprus.*
- 4 *Emf Prince of Thorne.*
- 5 *Conrade de la-Rame Marquesse of Montferrat.*
- 6 *The Kings of England.*
- 7 *His Holiness.*
- 8 *The Kings of Naples.*
- 9 *The Princes of Antioch.*
- 10 *The Count of Brienne.*
- 11 *The Kings of Armenia.*
- 12 *The Kings of Hungarie.*
- 13 *The Kings of Aragon.*
- 14 *The Dukes of Anjou.*
- 15 *The Dukes of Lorain.*
- 16 *Lewis the eleventh King of France.*
- 17 *The Dukes of Bourbon.*
- 18 *The Dukes of Savoy.*
- 19 *James de Lusigna, base sonne to the King of Cyprus.*
- 20 *Charles de Lusigna, sonne to the Prince of Galilice.*
- 21 *The State of Genoa.*
- 22 *The Marquesse of Montferrat.*
- 23 *The Count of la-Vall.*
- 24 *The Arch-duke of Nize.*
- 25 *The Sultan of Egypt.*
- 26 *The Emperour of the Turks.*

It seemeth by the naming of Lewis the eleventh and James the bastard of Cyprus, that this list was taken about the yeare

Anno
Dom.

yearre 1466. And now how would a Herald sweat with scouring over these fine-rustic titles, to shew whence these Princes derived their severall claims, and in whom the right resteth at this day? and when his work is done, who should pay him his wages?

My clew of thread is not strong enough, on the guidance thereof for me to venture into this labyrinth of Pedegrees; we will content our selves with these generall obseruations :

1. It seemeth this catalogue containeth as well those who had *jus in Regno*, as those who had *jus ad Regnum*: as namely, the Prince of Thorone, and Patriarchs of Jerusalem, and State of Genoa, whose ambition surely foerd not so high as to claim the Kingdome of Jerusalem, but rather perched it self upon some lands and Signories challenged therein.

2. A small matter will serve to intitle a Prince to a titular Kingdome: In this case, Kings can better digest corivals where they be many, and all challenge what is worth nothing. In this catalogue it seemeth some onely intitle themselves out of good fellowship and love of good company: These like squirrels recover themselves, and climbe up to a claim on the least bough, twig, yea leaf of a Right. Thus the Counts of Brienne in France (if any still remaine of that house) gave away their cake and keep it still; in that John Bren parted with his right to this Kingdome, in match with Iole his daughter, to Frederick the second Emperour, and yet the Earls of his familie pretend still to Jerusalem.

3. We may beleive, that by matches and under-matches some of these titles may reside in private Gentlemen; especially in France: And what wonder? seeing within fourteen generations the * royll bloud of the Kings of Judah ran in the veins of plain Joseph a painfull carpenter.

4. At this day some of those titles are finally extinct: as that of the Emperours of the East, conquered by the Ottoman familie: Their Imperiall Eagle was so farre from beholding the Sunne, that the half-moon dazzled, yea quite put out his eyes. Rank in the same form the Kings of Armenia, and Sultans of Egypt.

5. Some of these titles are translated: That of the Lusignans, Kings of Cyprus, probably passed with that Island to the State of Venice, The claim of the Hungarian Kings seemeth at this day to remain in the Germane Emperour.

6. Some united: The claim of the Arch-dukes of Nize (a stye I meet not with elsewhere) twisted with that of the Duke of Savoy; The Kings of Naples and Aragon now joyned in the King of Spain.

7. Of those which are extant at this day, Englands appeareth first; our Richard receiving it in exchange of King Guy for the Island of Cyprus. Guy's resignation was voluntarie and

279

* *Math. 1.15.*

* Sabellicus,
Emead. 9.
lib. 5. pag. 37⁸.
* In his Pro-
ems, fol. 5.

publick; the world was witnesse to it: He truly received a valuable consideracion, which his heirs long peaceably enjoyed, and our English Kings styled themselves * Kings of Jerusalem, till afterwards they disfused it for reasons best known to themselves. Our Poet * Harding, in a paper he presented to King Henry the sixth, cleareth another double title of our Kings therunto: And because some palates love the mouldie best, and place the goodness of old verses in the badnesse of them, take them as they fell from his penne;

*To Jerusalen, I say, ye have great right
From Erle Geffray that bigh Plantagenet,
Of Aungeoy Erle, a Prince of passing might,
The eldest sonne of Fouke, and first beget,
King of Jerusalen by his wife deuly set;
Whose sonne Geffray foresaid gat on his wife
Henrie the second, that was known full rife.*

*Yet have ye more, from Baldwyne Paralyticus
King afterward, to the same King Henry
The Crown sent and his Banner pretious,
As very heire of whole Auncestry
Descent of blond by title lineally
From Godfray Boleyn, and Robert Curthose,
That Kings were thereof and chose.*

8. Then cometh forth the Popes title; who claimeth it many wayes: Either because he was the first and chiefeft mover and advancer of this warre, Lord Paramount of this action, and all the Pilgrimes no better then his servants; and then according to the rule in Civil Law, * *Quodcumque per seruum acquiritur, id Dominio acquiritur suo*: Or else he challengeth it from John Bren, who * subiected that Kingdome to the See of Rome; and yet the said John used the stile of Jerusalem all the dayes of his life, and also gave it away in match with his daughter: Or else he deriveth it as forfeited to him by the Emperour Frederick the second and his sonnes, for taking arms against the Church. But what need these farre-abouts? They go the shorkest cut, who accounting the Pope Gods Lieutenant on earth (though by a Commission of his own penning) give him a temporall power (especially *in ordine ad spiritualia*) over all the Kingdomes of the world.

The originall right of Jerusalem he still keepeth in himself, yet hath successively gratified many Princes with a title derived from him: Nor shineth his candle the dimmer by lighting of others. First, he bestowed his title on Charles of Anjou, King

King of Sicilie (from which root spring the many-branched French competitours) and since hath conferred the fame on the house of Aragon, or King of Spain. Which King alone wear eth it in his stile at this day, and maketh continuall warre with the Turk, who detaineth Jerusalem from him: Yea, all West-Chriftendome oweth her quiet sleep to his constant waking, who with his galleys muzzleth the mouth of Tunis and Algier. Yea, God in his providence hath so ordered it, that the Domini ons of Catholick Princes (as they term them) are the case and cover on the East and South to keep and fense the Protestant countreys.

The quit-rent which the King of Spain payeth yearly to the Pope for the Kingdomes of Jerusalen, Naples, and Sicilie, is fourte thousand crowns, sent to his Holinesse upon a * hackney: Who grudgeth his tenant so great a penie-worth, yet cannot help himself, except he would follow the Friars advice, To fende home the Spanish Hackney with a great Horse after him. What credit there is to be given to that through- old (if not doting) prophecie, That a * Spaniard shall one day recover Jerusalen, we leave to the censure of others; and mean time we will conclude more serious matters with this pleasant passage:

When the late warres in the dayes of Queen * Elisabeth were hot between England and Spain, there were Commissioners on both sides appointed to treat of peace. They met at a town of the French Kings: and first it was debated, what tongue the negotiation should be handled in. A Spaniard, thinking to give the English Commissioners a threwd gird, proposed the French tongue as most fit, it being a language which the Spaniards were well skilled in; and for these Gentlemen of England, I suppose (said he) that they cannot be ignorant of the language of their fellow-subjects; their Queen is Queen of France as well as England. Nay in faith, Masters, (replied Doctor Dale, the Master of Requests) the French tongue is too vulgar for a busynesse of this secrecie and importance, especially in a French town: we will rather treat in Hebrew the language of Jerusalem, whereof your Master is King; I suppose you are herein as well skilled as we in French.

At this day the Turk hath eleven points of the law in Jerusalem, I mean poffeffion: and which is more, prescription of a hundred and twentie yeares, if you date it from the time it came into the Ottoman familie; but farre more, if you compute it from such time as the Mammaluke Turks have enjoyed it. Yea, likely they are to keep it, being good at hold-faft, and who will as soon lose their teeth as let go their prey. With

* Institut. lib.
1. tit. 8. §. 1.

* Kydell, Hist.
Turk pag. 123.

* St. Edmyn
Sandys, View
of the world, pag.
137.

* Cenavia-
tores, Cent.
13. cap. 16.
col. 692.

* Heylin, Mi-
crocos. in Pa-
lestine.

*Ambo
Dom.
Dom.*
the description of the greatnesse of which Empire will we (God willing) now close this Historie.

Chap. 30.

Of the greatnesse, strength, wealth, and wants of the Turkish Empire; What hopes of the approaching ruine thereof.

The Turkish Empire is the greatest and best-compacted (not excepting the Romane it self in the heighth thereof) that the Sunne ever saw. Take sea and land together (as bones and flesh make up one bodie) and from Buda in the West to Taurus in the East, it stretcheth about three thousand miles: little lesse is the extent thereof North and South. It lieth in the heart of the world, like a bold champion bidding defiance to all his borderers, commanding the most fruitfull countreys of Europe, Asia, and Africa: Only America (not more happy in her rich mines then in her remotenesse) lieth free from the reach thereof.

Populous it is not; for men will never grow thick where meat groweth thinne: It lieth waste, according to the old Proverb, *Grasse springeth not where the Grand Signors horse setteth his foot*. Besides, a third part (I may say, half) of those in Turkie are not Turks, but either Jews or Christians.

The strength of this Empire consisteth either in bones or stones, men or munition. Of the first, The best stake in the Turke hedge is his great number of Horsemen called ** Timariots*, conceived to exceed seven hundred thousand fighting men: These are dispersed over all his Dominions, and have lands allotted unto them in reward of their good service and valour, much in the nature of those soldiery of the Romish Empire called *Beneficiarii*. And indeed the Turkish Empire resemblmeth the Romane in many particulars: not that they ever studied imitation, and by reading of Historie conformed their State to Romane presidents, (farre be it from us to wrong them with the false imputation of so much learning) but rather casually they have met in some common principles of policie. Of these Timariots, on occasion and competent warning, he can bring into the field an hundred and fifty thousand, all bound by the tenure of their lands to arm, clothe, feed, pay themselves: So great an armie, which

* Knolls, in
his description
of the
great-
nesse of the
Turkis Empire.

which would drain the wealth of other Princes, doth cost the great Turk no drop of expence.

Next follow his best footmen, called Janizaries, taken young from their Christian parents (parallel to the Romane Pretorian soldiery) being the guard of the Grand Signors person. But as they watch about him, so he casteth a watchfull eye on them; seeing of late they are grown from painfull to be proud, yea insolent and intolerable: it being true of these Janizaries in the Turkish Empire, as of Elephants in an armie: If well ruled, they alone are enough to winne the battle; if unruleyn, they alone are enough to lose it. As for all other sorts of the Turks, both foot and horse, they are but slugs; as whom the Grand Signor little trusteth, and others need leste fear.

His frontier cities, especially those which respect Christendome, are exactly fortified. Rank with these such places of importance and castles as command passages of consequence. As for his in-land-cities, there is no superfluous, scarce competent strength in them. But if we allow those people to be chafe who never were solicited to be otherwise, then may many cities lying in the bowels of his Empire passe for strong, which for a long time have not had, nor in haste are likely to have the temptation of a siege.

Of Ordinance he hath great store, and hath excellent materials to make them of; and is also very powerfull in shipping. Indeed ships of great burden would be burdensome in those narrow seas, and experience hath found lesser vessels of greater use; whereof he hath store. And though the Turks either want ingenie or industry, either care not or cannot be good shipwrights themselves; yet the spite is, as long as there is gold amongst the Turks, there will be droffe amongst the Christians, I mean some who for base gain will betray the mysteries of our usefull arts unto them. As for wood to build with, he hath excellent in Bithynias; yea, generally in this wild Empire, trees grow better then men. To his sea-munition may be reduced his multitude of slaves, though not the informing, yet (against their wills) the assisting form of his Galleys, and in whom consisteth a great part of their strength and swiftnesse.

Now must we forget the Pirates of Tunis and Alger; which are Turks and no Turks: Sometimes the Grand Signor disclaimeth, renounceth, and casteth them off to stand upon their own bottom; as when those Christian Princes which are confederate with him, complain to him of the wrong those searobbers have done them. But though he sendeth them out to seek their own meat, he can clock them under his wings at

284

pleasure: And we may verily beleeve, though sometimes in the summer of his own profleritie he throweth them off as an upper garment of no use, yet in cold weather he will buckle them on again; and if necessitie pincheth him, receive them not as retainers at large but as his best servants in ordinary.

Nor is it the last and least part of the strength of this Empire, that all her native people are linked together in one religion: The discords aboue which in other kingdomes have been the cause, first of the unjoyning, and then of the finall ruine and desolation of many worthy States: Whereas here, the Mahometane religion (if I wrong it not with so good a name) is so full of unitie and agreement, that there is no difference and dissencion about it. Yea, well may that coat have no seam which hath no shape. A senesse ignourant profession it is, not able to go to the cost of a controversie: And all colours may well agree in the dark.

Next the strength followeth the wealth, yea, it is part thereof: For all rich Kingdomes may be strong, and purchase artificall fortification. The certain and constant revenues of the great Turk are not great, if withall we consider the spatiounes of his Dominions. Some have mounted his ordinarie yearly income to eight * millions of gold. But men guesse by uncertain aim at Princes revenues, especially if they be so remote: We may beleeve that in their conjecture herein, though they misse the mark, they hit the butt. Farre greater might his *intrado* be, if husbandrie, and chiefly merchandise, were plied in his countrey: merchants being the *Vena porta* of a Kingdome; without which it may have good limbes, but emprie veins, and nourish little. Now although this Empire be of a vast extent, having many safe harbours to receive strangers there, and Staple commodities (chiefly if industrie were used) to allure them thither; yet hath it in effect but foure prime places of trading; Constantynople, Cairo, Aleppo, and Tauris. As for the extraordinarie revenues of the Grand Signor, by his escheats and other courses if he pleaseth to take them, they are a *Nemo scit*: For in effect he is worth as much as all his subjects (or slaves rather) throughout his whole Empire are worth, his sponges to squeeze at pleasure.

But the Lion is not so fierce as he is painted, nor this Empire so formidable as fame giveth it out. The Turks head is leſſe then his turbant, and his turbant leſſe then it seemeth; swelling without, hollow within. If more seriously it be considered, this State cannot be strong, which is a pure and absolute tyrannie. His subjects under him have nothing certain but this. That they have nothing certain, and may thank the Grand Signor for giving them whatsoeuer he taketh not away from them. Their goods they hold by permission not proprietie;

Anno
Dom.

285

* Knolls.

not ſure that either they or theirs ſhall reap what they ſow, or eat what they reap: and hereupon husbandrie is wholly neglected: For the plowman (as well as the ground he ploweth) will be foen out of heart, if not maintained and (as I may ſay) compoſed with hopes to receive benefit by his labours. Here great officers, if they love themſelves, muſt labour not to be beloved: for popularitie is high treason; and generally wealth is a ſinne to be expiated by death. In a word, it is a cruelly tyrannie, bathed in the bloud of their Emperours upon every ſucceſſion; a heap of vassals and ſlaves; no Nobles (except for time being, by office) no Gentlemen, no Freemen, no inheritance of land, no Stirp or ancient families; a nation without any moralitie, arts and ſciences, that can ſcarce meaſure an acre of land or hourē of a day.

And needeth not that Kingdome conſtant and continued pointing, which is cemented with fear not love? May we not juſtly think, that there be many in this Empire which rather wait a time then want deſire to overthrow it? For though ſome think the Grecians in Turkye bear ſuch inveterate hate to the Latine Christians, that they would rather refuse deliveryance then accept them for their deliverers; yet ſurely both they, and perhaſe ſome native Turks, out of that principle of deſiring libertie (the ſecond rule next preserving life in the charter of Nature) would be made (if this Empire were ſeriously invaded, ſo that the foundation thereof did totter) ſooner to find two hands to pluck it down, then one finger to hold it up.

And we have just cauſe to hope that the fall of this unweſtie Empire doth approch. It was high noon with it fiftie yeares ago; we hope now it draweth neare night: the rather, because luxurie, though late, yet at laſt hath found the Turks out, or they it. When firſt they came out of Turcomania, and were in their pure naturals, they were wonderfullly abstemious, neglecting all voluptuouerneſſe, nor ſo much out of a diſlike as ignorance of it: But now having taſted the ſweetneſſe of the cup, they can drinck as great a draught as any others. That Paradise of corporall pleaſure which Mahomet promiſed them in the world to come, they begin to anticipate here, at leaſtwife to take an earneſt of it, and haue well ſoked themſelves in luxurie. Yea, now they begin to grow covetous, both Prince and people, rather ſeeking to enjoy their means with quiet then enlarge them with danger.

Heaven can as eaſily blaſt an oak as trample a muſhrome. And we may expect the ruine of this great Empire will come: for of late it hath little increased its ſtock, and now beginneth to ſpend of the principall. It were arrant presumption for

for Flesh to prescribe God his way; or to teach him, when he anneth to shoot, which arrow in his quiver to choose. Perchance the Western Christians, or the Grecians under him (though these be better for seconds then firsts, fitter to foremost then raise a faction) or his own Janizaries, or the Persian, or the Tartarian, or some other obscure Prince not as yet come into play in the world, shall have the lustre from God to maul this great Empire. It is more then enough for any man to set down the fate of a single soul; much more to resolve the doom of a whole Nation when it shall be. These things we leave to Providence to work, and posterity to behold. As for our generation, let us sooner expecte the diffusions of our own Microcosmes then the confusione of this Empire: For neither are our own sinnes yet truly repented of, to have this punishment removed from us; nor the Turks wickednesse yet come to the full ripenesse, to have this greate judgement laid upon them.

Soli D E O gloria.

The Preface to the Chronologie.

Erein I present the Reader with a generall view and Synopsis of the whole story of the age of the Holy Warre; that he may see the coherence betwixt the East and the West, and in what equipage and correspondence of time the Asian affaires go on with those of Europe: for they will reflect a mutuall lustre and plainnesse on one another.

The Chronologie is marshalled into Ranks and Files: The Ranks, or traverse spaces, contain twenty yeares on a side; the Files, or columnes directly downward, are appropriated to those severall States whose name they bear.

In the six first columnes I have followed Helvicus with an implicate faith, without any remarkable alteration, both in ingraffing of yeares and making them concurre, as also leaving sometimes empty spaces. In the other columnes I have followed severall authours, and oft the yeares unnoted where the time was uncertain; counting it better to bring in an Ignoramus, then to find a verdict where the evidence was doubtfull and obscure.

Such long notes as would not be imprisoned within the grates of this Chronology, we have referred by asterisks to the foot of the page. Know that every note belongeth to that yeare wherein it beginneth, except signed with this mark o; which reduceth it to the yeare it endeth in.

Br. standeth for Brother: S. Sonne: M. Moneth: D. Dayes. Note, whilst there were Caliphs of Egypt, then the Sultans were but Deputies and Lieutenants; but afterwards the Mammaluke Sultans were absolute Princes, acknowledging no Superior.

A Chronologicall

<i>Anno Dom.</i>	<i>Popes.</i>	<i>Emper. of the East.</i>	<i>Emper. of the West.</i>	<i>Kings of England.</i>	<i>Kings of France.</i>	<i>Holy Warre, and King of Jerusalem.</i>
1095	URBANE the second.	8 ALEXIUS 15 COMNE-NUS.	HENRY 40 the fourth.	WILLIAM RUFUS.	8 PHILIP 36 the first.	The Council of Clermont founded the Holy Warre.
6	9	16	41	9	37	1. VOYAGE under GODFREY Duke of Bouillon.
7	10	17	42	10	38	Nice,
8	11	18	43	11	39	Antioch, { wonne by the Christians.
9	M. 4. D. 18.	19	44	12	40	Jerusalem,
1100	PASCHAL 2 the second.	20	45	13	41	GODFREY King of Jerusalem.
1	3	21	46 HENRY I the first.	1	42	BALDWINE his brother.
2	4	22	47	2	43	Z. VOYAGE under twelve Princes and Prelates,
3	5	23	48	3	44	Cefarea,
4	6	24	49	4	45	Apamia, Laodicea,
5	7	25 M. 10.		5	46	
6	8	26 HENRY I the fifth.		6	47	wonne by the Christians.
7	9	27	2	7	48	6
8	10	28	3	8	49	7
9	11	29	4	L. LEWIS 9 the Große.	2 Tripoli,	8
					Berythus, Sidon.	9
1110	12	30	5	10	3	J 10
1	13	31	6	11	4	II
2	14	32	7	12	5	12
3	15	33	8	13	6	13
4	16	34	9	14	7	14

Table.

A Chronologicalall

Anno Dom.	Popes.	Emper. of the East.	Emper. of the West.	Kings of England.	Kings of France.	Holy Warre, and King of Jerusalem.
1115	17	35	10	15	8	15
6	18	36	11	16	9	16
7	M. D. 91	37	12	17	10	Baldwines voyages in to Egypt.
8	GELASIUS I D. 5. S.	CALO-JOHANNES I	13	18	11	i. when he took Pharamis ii. when he got his death.
9			2	14	12	BALDWINE the second, his kinsman.
1120	CALIXTUS the second.	3	15	20	13	
1	3	4	16	21	14	
2	4	5	17	22	15	He fighteth on difadet tag with the Turks, and is taken captive.
3	5	6	18	23	16	
4	M. 10. D. 13.	7	M. 9.	24	17	He is dearly ransomed. Tyre taken by the Christians
5	HONORIUS 2 the second.	8 LOTHAR SAXON.	I	25	18	Baldwines geneth for me spoil from the conq[ue]st Turks as serveth to pay hi ransome.
6	3	9	2	26	19	
7	4	10	3	27	20	
8	5	11	4	28	21	
9	M. 2. D. 3.	12	5	29	22	
1130	INNOCENT the second.	13	6	30	23	
1	2	14	7	31	24	*
2	3	15	8	32	25	FULKE Earl of Anjou right of Millecent his wife eldest daughter to K. Bald wine.
3	4	16	9	33	26	
4	5	17	10	34	27	

* Anno 1131. Helvius giveth Baldwines the second sixteen yeares : bur herein he is deceived 3, as also in allowing King Fulke but eight. We according to the consent of the best Authors, have given the former thirteen, the latter ten.

Table.

Princes of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Jerusalem.	Mrs of Kn. Hospitallers.	Caliphs of Syria.	Caliphs of Egypt.
7	16	4	13	21	15
8	17	5	14	22	16
9	18	He is accused for his wicked life; posteth to Rome, and there buyeth to be innocent.	6	15	17
Roger fighting anadividly with the Turks slain. O	19	VI. GUARIMUNDUS of Amiens.	7	MUSTE-RASCHAD I HUGH de S. Paganis, &	18
	20	I	17	GODERID of S. Omars.	2
			18	3	20
	12	21	2		
	13	22	3	3	4
	14	23	4	20	22
	15	24	5	5	6
	16	25	6	6	7
Edmund now 17 age, cometh to Antioch, & marrieth King 18 Baldwines daughter.	26	7	22	RASCHAD I S. afterwards de- posed by	25
	27	8	24	The Order of the Tem- plars confirmed by the WISE- MAN of the Ismalites.	26
	19	9	25	10	27
	20	VII. STEPHAN 1 suspected to have been paynioned by the King.	2	26	28
	21	30		EVERARDus master	29
	31	VIII. WILLIAM 1 Prior of the Sc- pulchre.	28	28	30
	32	2	29	Peter Cluniacensis	31
	33	3	30	writ a book in pracie of this Order.	32
	34	4	31		33
	4	5	32		34

A Chronologicall

Anno Dom.	Popes.	Emper. of the East.	Emper. of the West.	Kings of England.	Kings of France.	Holy Warre, and King of Jerusalem.
1135	6	18	11	35	28	
6	7	19	12 STEPHEN I the Usurper.	1	29	
7	8	20	13	2	30	Lewis the eleventh, or the Younger.
8	9	21 CONRADUS I the third.		3	1	
9	10	22	2	4	2	
1140	11	23	3	5	3	
1	12	24	4	6	4	BALDWINE the third, S. Edessa wonne by Sanguine from the Christians.
2	13	M. 7	5	7	5	
3	M. 8	E MANUEL Comnenus, I	6	8	6	
CELESTINE the second.	S.	D. 8				
4	M. 5	LUCIUS the second. M. 11	3	8	10	
5	EUGENIUS the third.	I	4	9	11	
6						VOYAGE under Godfrade the Emperor, & Louis King of France.
7	2	5	10	12	10	
8	3	6	11	13	12	Damascus besieged in vain.
9	4	7	12	14	12	Discords betwixt Baldwin and his mother Milice.
1150	5	8	13	15	13	
1	6	9	14	16	14	
2	7	10 FREDERICUS Barba rola.	I	17	15	
3	M. 4	D. 12	11	18	16	Baldwine taketh the citie of Askelon.
ANASTASIUS the fourth.	D. 24					
4	M. 4	D. 24	12	19	17	

Table.

Princes of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Jerusalem.	M. of Kn. Hesychasters.	M. of Kn. Templars.	Caliphs of Syria.	Caliphs of Egypt.
R. RIMUND Earl of Poitou, in right of Constance the Laitie.	RODULPHUS chosen Patriarch by the Laitie.	1	36	6	33	M UCTAPHIL S. to Musta-her.
2	2	2	7	34	ELAPHIT, S. In the 20 yeare of his reigne he was killed by one Nofradine.	1
3	3	3	8	35	Vise Tyr. lib. 18. cap. 49. 15.	2
4	4	36 ROBERT of Burgundie, Tyr. lib. 15. c. 6.	9	36	Califf in anno 1156.	3
			10	37		4
					5	5
					6	5
			11	38		
			12	39		6
	7 ALMERI- cus.	1	13	40		7
	8	2	14	41		8
	9	3	15	42		9
	10	4 FULCHER Archibishop of Tyre.	1	43		10
	11	5	2	44		11
	12	6	3	45		12
	13	7	4	46	Gaza given to the Templars to defend BER-	13
	14	8	5	47	NARD de Tis- selle.	14
	15					15
	16	2	6	48		16
	17	3	7	49		16
	18	4	8	50	The Templars with BERNARD their Master,	17
	19	11 The Hos- pitalleste- rel against the Patri- arch & de- lay to pay kites.	9	51	through their own covetous- nesse slain at Askelon. O	18
	20	12	10	52		19

A Chronological

Table

<i>Anno Dom.</i>	<i>Popes.</i>	<i>Emper. of the East.</i>	<i>Emper. of the West.</i>	<i>Kings of England.</i>	<i>Kings of France.</i>	<i>Holy Warre, and King of Jerusalem.</i>	<i>Princes of Antioch.</i>	<i>Patriarch of Antioch.</i>	<i>Patriarch of Jerusalem.</i>	<i>Mrs. of Kn. Hospitallers.</i>	<i>Mrs. of Kn. Templars.</i>	<i>Caliphs of Syria.</i>	<i>Caliphs of Egypt.</i>	
1155	ADRIAN the fourth. 2	13	4	HENRIE the second.	1	18						BERTRAND I de Blanchfort.	21	20
6		3	14	5	2	19		Almerick 14 He to despite the Grecian Empereour, to fetch the Island Cyprus	In vain he crawled to Rome to complain of them.	53	2	ELHADACH I		
7		4	15	6	3	20					He is taken prisoner, Tyr. 18 c. 35.	23	The Caliphs of Egypt are very difficult to regulate by Chronologies, and are ever Heterocrites, either deficient or redundant.	
8	M. D. 283	16	7	4	21			Reinolds marriage.	III. AUGUSTUS de Balben.	PHILIP of Naples.	24	3		
9	ABBAXANDER the third I	17	8	5	22					Afterward	25	4		
1160		2	18	9	6	23 Order of the Carmelites first begun in Syria.		7	19	III. ARNOLDUS de Campis.		26	In the proportion of time concurring with other Princes. Hitherto we have followed Helvicius; now adheve to Tyrius, lib. 19. cap. 19. & lib. 20. cap. 12.	
1	3	19	10	7	24			Reinold carried captive to Aleppo.	20	23	MUSTENE- GED.	6		
2	4	20	11	8	25			Domund his child, St. Remond.	He preferbeth rules to the Carmelites.	24		2		
3	5	21	12	9	26	ALMERICK his Br.		22	25		3	7		
4	6	22	13	10	27				3	23		8		
5	7	23	14	11	28				4	24		9		
6	8	24	15	12	29	At the instance of Sultan Saner he goeth into Egypt, and driveth out Syracus.			5	25	5	10		
7	9	25	16	13	30	Cesarea-Philippi left.		6	26	OTTO de Sancto Amande, one that feared neither God nor man, Tyr. lib. 21, c. 29.	6	11		
8	10	26	17	14	31	Almerick contrary to his promise invaded Egypt.			7	27		8		
9	11	27	18	15	32				8	28		13		
1170	Y2	28	19	16	33	He taketh a voyage into Grecia, to visit the Emperor his kinsman.		9	29		MUSTEZI, S.	1	15	
1	13	29	20	17	34			10	30	13	Turkish K. of Egypt.	2		
2	14	30	21	18	35			11	31	14	SALADINE	3		
3	15	31	22	19	36			12	32	15	with his horse-mace knocked out the brains of Elhadach the last Turkish Calif in Egypt, Tyr. lib. 20. cap. 12.	4		
4	16	32	23	20	37	BALDWINE the fourth.		13	33	16		5		

^{1156.} This catalogue of the Masters of the Hospitallers I find in Hofpinian, *De origine Monachatus*. It seemeth strange this Nestor Rodulphus should govern this Order 54 yeares; yet it appeareth to be so, if we compare *Tyrius*, lib. 14, cap. 6.

A Chronologicalall

Table.

Anno Dom.	Popes.	Emper. of the East.	Emper. of the West.	Kings of England.	Kings of France.	Holy Warre, and King of Jerusalem.
1175	17	33	24	21	38	
6	18	34	25	22	39	William, Marquesse of Montferrat marriach Sibylle the Kings sister.
7	19	35	26	23	40	Saldine shamefully conquer'd at Askelon.
8	20	36	27	24	41	Fatal jealousy betwix the King and Reinard Prince of Tripoli for many years.
9	21	37	28	25	42	
1180	M. 11. D. 29. ALEXIUS I COMNE-	ALBRIUS I NUS.	29	26	PHILIP Augustus, S.	
I. LUCIUS I the third.	2		30	27		2
2	2 ANDRO- NICUS, S.	I	31	28		3
3	3	2	32	29		4 Baldwine disabled with leprosie retireth himself from managing the State.
4	M. 11. D. 28. ISAACIUS I ANGELUS.	M. 11. URBANS the third.	33	30		5
5	34	31				6 BALDWIN the fifth, the eighth moneths poysored.
6	M. 10. D. 25. GREGORY the eighth.	2	35	32		7 Guy de Lusignan in ridd Sibyll his wife.
7	M. D. 27.	3	36	33		8 CONRAD II Marques of Montferrat defendeth
8	CLEMENT I the third.	4	37	M. 7. RICHARD the first.	1	9 Tyre, and is chosen King, legh Poles.
9	5		38		10	4 VOYAGE under Richard summond Barnes.
1190	3	6 HENRY the sixth. S.	I	2	II 4 V O Y A G E under Philip the Fair	
I.	M. 27. D. 10. CHRISTINE the third.	7	2	3	12 Conrade murdered in the market-place of Tyre. Ptolemas taken.	
2	8		3	4	13 Guy exchangeth his Kingdom of Jerusalem for Cyprus.	
3	9		4	5	14 HENRY Earl of Champaigne.	
4	M. 7. ALEXIUS COMNEO- ANGELUS.	I	5	6	45	

Princes of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Jerusalem.	Mrs. of Kn. Hospitallers.	Mrs. of Kn. Templars.	Caliphs of Syria.	Turkish K. of Egypt.
14	34	17			6	
15	35	18 VIII. ROGER de Moris.			7	
Reinold of 16 Caffile, once Prince of Antioch, transformed from captivity.	36	19			8 He geth Damascus and the whole Turkish kingdom in Syria, (Tyr. lib. 21. cap. 6.) in despite of No-	I
17	37	20 ARNORDUS de Toge, Tyr. lib. 22. c. 7.			9	2
18	38	21			10	3 radines sonne.
Reomund by putting away Theodora his lawful wife enteb much troublle in this State.	19	39	22		NAR- ZAI, S.	4
20	40 XI. HERA- CLIUS, Archibishi. of Cesarea.	1			These great figures reckon Saladin's reign of 16 yecares (for so many Authours give him) from his taking of the kingdom of Damascus.	5
21	41	2			3 But it we count his reigne from the killing of the Egyptian Caliph, he began far sooner.	6
22	42	3			4	7
23	43	4			5 He dieh in an Embassie to the Princes in Europe.	8
24	44	5 He travelleth into the West, cometh into England, confeccreth the Temple Church in London, & returneth.	6 He went with Heraclius into the West; returneth.		6 GERARDUS RIDFORD.	9
25	45				7 is slain in a batell neare Ptolemis.	10
26	46				8 TEBRICUS Master of the Tempars during Gerards durance.	11
27	*				9 IX. GARNETTIUS de Neapol. Syrie.	12
28					10 Gerard is set at liberty, and slain in the sieghe of Ptolemis.	13
Antioch wonne n from the Turks by Frederick Duke of Suiss.		10			HENRY I a-Wal- pot.	14
The time of Boedands death is as uncertain as who was his Successor, only we read from this time forward, the same Princes (but without name or certain date) tyled both of Antioch and Tripoli.		11			2	15
					3	13
					4	14 SAPHADINE, Br. to Saladine
					5	15

* 1180. That Antioch was betrayed by a Patriarch, is plain by Sabellius: but whether Almericus was this traytory-Patriarch, or whether it was done by the Grecian Antipatriarch, is uncertain. Here we cease that column, as despairing to continue their succession any longer. ** 1192. Here is a subject for industry to deserve well, in filling up the ²²nd of the Matters of the Tempars, from the death of Gerard till the year 1215, whose names we cannot find.

** 1193. Hitherto the succession of the Patriarch of Jerusalem is accurately collected out of Tyrius. The Order of those which follow, is not so authentick, being caught up out of severall Authours.

A Chronological

Anno Dom.	Popes.	Emper. of the East.	Emper. of the West.	Kings of England.	Kings of France.	Holy Warres, and King of Jerusalem.
1195	5	2	6	7	16	
6	6	3	7	8	17 ALMERIC the second, King also of Cyprus	
7	M. 91 D. 113	4	8	9	18 VOYAGE under Henry Duke of Saxonie [Henry the Palatine, Henni Land-grave, &c. win Beris]	
8	INNOCENT III the third.	5	9	10	19 The Dutch-men miserably killed on St. Martins day	
9	2	6 Ortho the fourth.	1	11	20 Simon Earl of Montferrat into Palestine, and maketh a profitable peace.	
1200	3	7	2 JOHN his Br.	I	21	
1	4	8	3	2	22	
2	ISAACIUS again with ALEXIUS his S.	9	4	3	23 VOYAGE under Baldwin Earl of Flanders but by the Pope diverted against the Grecian Empire	
3	BALDWINE Earl of Flanders.	1	5	4	24 Emperor	
4	7	2	6		25 I Interregnum of 5 years. Almerick dith of a short, according to Maine Sanusza.	
5	8 HENRY I his Br.	7	6		26 2 The Holy Warre sumptuous against the Albigenses in France.	
6	9	2	8	7	27 3 Almerick for his malice deposed by the Pope, death soon after.	
7	10	3	9	8	28 4	
8	11	4	10	9	29 5 An army of Children goes to the Holy Warre wholly perish by the way.	
9	12	5	11	10	30 JOHN BRBN made King of Jerusalem by the Pope.	
1210	13	6	12	II	31	
1	14	7	13	12	32	
2	15	8 FREDERICK the second.	I	13	33	
3	16	9	2	14	34 An army of Children goes to the Holy Warre wholly perish by the way.	
4	17	10	3	15	35	

Table.

Princes of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Jerusalem.	Mrs. of Hospitallers.	Mrs. of Templars.	Mrs. of Knights.	Caliphs of Syria.	Turkish Kings of Egypt.
				6	16 Betwixt him and Saladin sonnes (whom at last he conquered and subdued) was long warre to the profit of the Christians.	3
				7	17	4
				8	18 great comfort and	5
XII. ALBERTUS succeeded Heraclius, spond.				9	19	6
				10	20	7
				II. OTTO I a-Kerpin.	21	8
				2	22	9
	XI. GOTFRIDUS de Dnyjon.			3	23	IO
				4	24	II
He perfecteth and wrineth a Rule to the Carmelites. Idem.				5	25	12
				6	26	13
				III. HERMANNUS Bart.	27	14
				2	28	MELEADINE (as most complete) succeedeth his father 16 Saphadine in Egypt.
				3	29	15
				4	30	17
XIII. THOMAS AGNI.				IV. HERMANNUS a Saliza.	31	18
				2	32	19
	XII. ALPHONSIUS de Portugallia.			3	33	20
				4	34	21
				5	35	22

A Chronological

Anno Dom.	Popes.	Emper. of the East.	Emper. of the West.	Kings of England.	Kings of France.	Kings of Jerusalem.	Holy Warre, and King of Jerusalem.
1215	18	II	4	16		36	The great Laterane Council to advance the Holy Warre.
6	M. D. Earl of Auxerre.	PETR. I		5	17	37	8. VOYAGE under Andrew King of Hungary.
7	HONORIUS the third.	2		6 HENRY the third.	I	38	
8		3	3	7	2	39	Siegeged Damia.
9		4	4	8	3	40	Taken.
1220	5	5	9	4		41	The Christians intrapp'd in water, restore Damia for their liberties and conclude an eight-years truce.
1	ROBERT I		10	5		42	
2	7	2	11	6		43	
3	8	3	12	7		44	John Bren cometh into France, and ther received rich legacies from Philip Augustus.
4	9	4	13	8 LEWIS the eighth.	1 gulfus.	45	
5	10	5	14	9		46	60000 crowns bequeathed by the K. of Fr. to the Hospital & Templars.
6	M. 8.	6	15	10		47	XIII. GERALDUS.
7	GREGORY the ninth.	7	16	XI S: LEWIS.	I FREDERICK by marriage of Iole Brens daughter.	48	XIV. GUARINUS de Monte acuto.
8	2 BALDWIN the second.	1	17	12	2	49	XV. CERVIUS.
9	3	2	18	13	3. VOYAGE under Frederick, who crowned himself King of Jerusalem.	50	
1230	4	3	19	14		51	4 and concluding a ten-years truce, returneth into Europe, leaving Reinold Duke of Ieraria his Vice-Roy in Palestine.
1	5	4	20	15		52	The Pr. of Antioch dieh without lawful issue.
2	6	5	21	16		53	FREDERIC the 2d. Frediche Em. is by Reinold Viceroy of Ierusalem made Pr. of Antioch, in spite of Hen. K. of Cyprus, who claimed that place.
3	7	6	22	17	7	54	
4	8	7	23	18	8	55	

Princes of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Jherusalem.	Mrs of Kn. Hospitallers.	Mrs of Kn. Templars.	Masters of Caliph's of Syria.	Caliphs of Egypt.
	He is present in the Laterane Council to facilitate the Holy Warre.	XIII. GOTHERIDUS de-la-Rat.	P. de Monte acuto.	6	36 9 Saphadine (according to M.) Paris, p. 494.)
				7	37 Odieth for grief that the fort nigh to Damietta was taken.
				8	38 II. MELADINE
				9	39 12 MELADINE
				10	40 13.
					2
					3
					4
					5
					6
					7
					8
					9
					10
					11
					12
					13
					14
					15
					16
					17
					18
					19
					20
					21
					22
					23
					24
					25
					26
					27
					28
					29

* 1230. Several Authours affigne several dates wherein the Dutch Knights came into Prussia: Perchance they came in several parcels. Their succession I had out of Pantaleon, Munster, and the Centurills. Quere whether these Masters of the Dutch Knights in Prussia had also command over those of their Order in Syria,

A Chronological

Anno Dom.	Popes.	Emper. of the East.	Emper. of the West.	Kings of England.	Kings of France.	Holy Warres and King of Jerusalem.
1235	9	8	24	19	9	
6	10	9	25	20	10	
7	11	10	26	21	11	
8	12	11	27	22	12	The former ten-years Truce expired, Reinold concluded another of the same term.
9	13	12	28	23	13	10. VOYAGE under Thobald King of Navarre.
1240	14 M. 5. CELESTINE the fourth. D. 17.	13	29	24	14	He is unfortunately overthrown in battle at Gaza.
1		14	30	25	15	11. VOYAGE under Richard Earl of Cornwall.
2	The See void	15	31	26	16	
3	INNOCENT IV the fourth.	16	32	27	17	The Corasines conquer the Christians, and sack Jerusalem.
4	2	17	33	28	18	
5	3	18	34	29	19	
6	4	19	35	30	20	
7	5	20	36	31	21	12. VOYAGE under S. Lewis King of France.
8	6	21	37	32	22	He arriveth in Cyprus, and there wintereth;
9	7	22	38	33	23	taketh Damietta; beareth the Saracens.
1250	8	23 <i>Interregnum I</i> of 23 years, wherein there were many Com- petitors for the Empire.	34	24	Robert Earl of Atois slain. Lewis taken prisoner.	
1	9	24	35	25	<i>Interregnum of 14 years.</i> The Pafforelli overthrown in France.	
2	10	25	36	26	King Lewis being ransomed cometh into Palestine; rovereith and forifeth Sidon.	
3	11	26	4	27	returneth into France.	
4	M. 5. D. 14. J.	27	5	28		

Tables

Princes of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Jersusal.	Mrs of Kn. Hospitallers.	Mrs of Kn. Templars.	Masters of Galiphis Dutch Kn. of Syria.	Turkish Kings of Egypt.
4				26	29 18
5				27	30 19
6				28	31 20
7				29	32 21
8				30	33 22
9	X V. R. O-BERTUS.		HERMAN NUS Petragorinus, M. Paris, pag. 726.	V. CONRAD E Landgrave of Hesse.	34 23
10		XVII. PETRUS de Villeville;			35 24
11				2	36 25
12				3	37 26
13			taken captive by the Corasines, M. Paris, pag. 833.	All the Templars slain to eighteen, * the Hospitallers to nineteen, the Dutch Knights to three.	38 27
14		XVIII. GUIL. MATH. PARIS where he writeth a bemoaning letter.			39 28
15				6	40 29
16	The An- tiochians feling un- friendly with the Turks, are overthrown.				He dieth at Damietta's taking.
				7	30
				8	MELECHSA- LA S.
				9	Mammadike Sultans of Egypt.
					TARQUEMI- NUS.
					2
					Great Chams of Tartarie.
					MANGO persuaded by Hairo K. of Armenia to turn Christian.
					1
					4

* 1245. Here we are at another loss for the names of the Templars, and will be thankful to those which will help us to them.

A Chronologicalall

Anno Dom.	Popes:	Emper. of the East.	Emper. of the West.	Kings of England.	Kings of France.	Holy Warre, and King of Jerusalem.
1255	ALEXANDER the fourth.	28	6	39	29	
6	3	29	7	40	30	
7	4	30	8	41	31	
8	5	31	9	42	32	The ten years following the Genoans fighting against the Venetians and Pisans, inde the ruine of the Christians in Palestine.
9	6	32	10	43	33	
1260	M. 5. D. 5. Palæologus	MICHAEL I	11	44	34	
1 URBANE the fourth.	I	2	12	45	35	
2	2	3	13	46	36	
3	3	4	14	47	37	
4 M. 1. D. 4. 3.	5	15	48	38	CHARLES Earl of Anjou, by the Pope made King of Jerusalem and Sicile.	
5 CLEMENT the fourth.	6	16	49	39		
6	2	7	17	50	40	
7	3	8	18	51	41	
8 M. 9. D. 25. 5.	9	19	52	42		
9 The See void.	10	20	53	43	HUGH King of Cyprus VOYAGE under S. Lewis King of France	
1270		II	21	54	44	Charles of Sicilie and Prince Edward. Tunis taken. Lewis died.
1 GREGORY the tenth.	I	12	22	55	PHILIP the bold.	Prince Edward condestr.
2	2	13	23	56	I 3	Prince Edward condestr. Ptolemais,
3	3	R. ODOUILL PHUS ab Haffburg.	I EDWARD the first.	I	35	10
4	4	14	2	2	46	II

Table.

Princes of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Jersal.	Mrs of Kn. Hospitallers.	Masters of Dutch Knights.	Caliphs of Syria.	Great Chams of Tartarie.	Mammakke Shiring of Egypt.
XVI. PANTALEON, a Frenchman.			3	MUSTEATHEM, the last Caliph of Syria, a covetous miser, conquered by the Tartarians.	3	M B I Y C B, otherwise called CLOTHES.
			4		4	
			5		5	
			6		6	
			7		7	
				8	8	BENDOC-D'AR.
				9	9	HAAZACH succeedeth his Br. Mango.
			10		2	
			11		3	
			12		4	
		VII. HANNO de Sangerhausen.	1		5	A BAGA Cham his S.
		X X. NICOLAUS Longar.	2		3	
			3		4	
			4		5	He winneth the kingdom of Damacus from the Tartarian: taketh Sapher, and killeth all that would not turn Mahometane: winneth Joppa.
			5		6	7
					7	9
					8	10
					9	11
					10	12
					11	13
					12	14
					13	15

A Chronologicalall

Anno Dom.	Popes.	Emper. of the East.	Emper. of the West.	Kings of England.	Kings of France.	Holy Warre, and King of Jerusalen.
1275	M. 4. D. 10.	16	3	3	5	The last V. O Y A G E under Henry Duke of Mchlenburg.
6	INNOCENT the fifth. M. 5.	17	4	4	6	13
7	ADRIAN the fifth. M. 1. D. 7.	18	5	5	7	MARIA DOMICELLA Princes
8	JOHN the 20. M. 8. D. 8.	19	6	6	8	15 of Antioch, reigneth her right of the Kingdome of Jerusalen
9	NICOLAS the third M. 8. D. 29	20	7	7	9	16 to Charles.
1280	The Sea void.	21	8	8	10	17
1	MARTINE the second.	22	9	9	11	18
2	ANDRO- NICUS PALEOLO- GUS.	23	10	10	12	19 The Sicili- an Vespers.
3	I	II	II	13	13	20
4	4	2	12	12	14	CHARLES the second surnamed the De- layer.
5	M. 1. D. 7.	3	13	13	15	JOHN HENRY his S.
6	HONORIUS the fourth.	4	14	14	PHILIP the fajr.	2 the Lam- or the De- layer.
7	D. 2.	5	15	15	1	3
8	NICOLAS the fourth.	6	16	16	2	4
9	2	7	17	17	3	5 Tripoli Sidon Berytus left.
					4	6 Tyre o
1290	3	8	M. 9.	18	5	7 Ptolemai besieged;
1	4	9	ADOLPH ⁹ of Nassau.	I	6	8 taken: And the Latine Christians finally, ex- pelled out of Syria.
2	M. 1. D. 14.	10	2	20	7	9
3	The See void.	11	3	21	8	10
4	CELESTINE the V. M. 5. D. 7 BONIFACE the eighth.	12	4	22	9	11

If the Reader do obserue any difference betwixt our former computation in the Book, and our Chronologie here, let him rather rely on this latter, which I take to be better perfected.

Table.

Princes of Antioch.	Patriarchs of Jerusalem.	Mrs. of Kn. Hospitallers.	Mrs. of Kn. Templars.	Masters of Great Chams.	Cham. of Tartarie.	Mammaluke Sultans of Egypt.
died May 11. Born under the fifth. S.	XXI. JOHN de Villiers.			II	12	16
under the tu- ition of the Bishop of Tortola.	3			12	13	Dieth by cold gotten with swimming in Euphrates.
				HERMAN- NUS the third.	1	14 MELECHSAIT, or MELECHSARES.
				4	15	2
				5	16	3
				6	17	4
				7	About this time we find a namelesse Patriarch of the Tem- plars to the defunction of the Christian caue.	5
				8	Boemund now of age, fled against namelesse Patri- arch of Jeru- salem.—	6
				9	XXII. ODO de Pinibus.	7
				10	PETER Bel- vile a valiant souldier.	8
				11	BURCHAR- DUS SCHUA- DEN.	9
				12	1 Cham killed his Br. Maho- met: he fa- vorithe Christians.	He expelleth the Carmelites out of Syria for changing their coats.
				13	2 youreth the Christians.	10
				14	3	11
				15	RAGAITH ⁹ his Br. lazie voluptuous glutton.	12
				16	4 E L P I S, or A L- P H I X.	1
				17	5	
				18	6 CASANUS I S. to Argon. He was very favourable to the Christians.	2
				19	7 CONRA- DUS de Fer- tuangen.	1
				20	8 JAMES Mo- laibergamon I last Master of the Templars in Syria. Con- tinuator belli facti, lib. 5. cap. 13 & 17. 3	2
				21	3	4
				22	4	5

* For in the ninth year of his reigne he winneth the citie of Jerusalen, and restoreth it to the Eastern Christians, who soon after lose it to the Sultan of Egypt.

The Table.

A Catalogue of the Authors cited in this Book.

A	Burton.	Froissard.	Lombard.	Pero Mexya.	Rivetus.	Jo. Speed.	V
D	Buchanan.	Fuller.	Luther.	Peter de Bloys.	Claud. Rubis.	Statutes of Engl.	Vincent.
I	Bydulph.	G	Machiavell.	Peter de Valle Sar-	S	{ Scotl.	Polyd. Virgil.
terra Sancta.	Bzorius.	Gaguinus.	M A G D E B U R-	nensi.	An. Coc. SABEL-	Stephanus Cypriot.	Vitruvius.
Paul. <i>AMYLIUS;</i>	C	Gerson.	G E N S E S	Peter de Vineis.	L I C U S ; <i>Lugdu-</i>	T	Volaterran.
<i>Basileæ, per Seba-</i>	Cæsars Comment.	Godwine.	Centuria, <i>Basileæ,</i>	Pierce Plowman.	<i>Nic.</i>	Theodoret.	URSPERGEN-
<i>stianum Henric-</i>	C A L V I S I U S ,	Goffridus.	1624, <i>in fol.</i>	Pitzæus.	Petit. 1535.	Theophylact.	SIS; <i>Basileæ, apud</i>
<i>Petri, in fol.</i>	<i>Francofurti; edit.</i>	Grafton.	Platina.	S: Edw. Sandys.	Théophanes.	<i>Petrum Pernam,</i>	
Albertus Aquensis.	3 ^o 1629, in 4 ^o .	Gwilliam.	Polybius.	G. Sandys Travels.	Thuanus.	1569.	W
Chron. Hierosol.	Camden.	H	Poffeine.	Scaliger.	Tremellius.	Weaver, Fund. mon.	
Alfonso Villeg.	Jo. Camimanus.	Harding.	Jo. Magnus.	Scotus.	Hist. Conc. Trident.	D: Whitaker.	
Alphonſus de Ca-	Canon Law.	S: Jo. Harrington.	Guil. MALMES-	Mr Selden.	Tullie.	D: White.	
stro.	Carew.	Chr. HELVICUS,	BURIENSIS;	Du Serres,	Guil. T Y R I U S ;	Z	
S. Ambrose.	Cassianus.	Chron. Marpurgi	<i>Francofurti, 1601,</i>	Reineccius.	<i>Basileæ, 1549, in</i>	Zuerius Boxhorn.	
Ammianus Marcel-	Cedrenus.	1629, <i>in fol.</i>	<i>in fol.</i>	Socrates.	<i>fol.</i>		
linus.	Chemnitius.	D: Heylin.	Mantuan.	D: Ridley.			
Antoninus.	Civil Law.	S: Hierome.	Marinus Sanctus.				
Jo. Antonius Sum-	Cochlaeus.	Hieronimo Roman.	Martini Chron.				
montius.	Continuator Guil.	Hospinian.	M: Mead.				
Tho. Aquinas.	Tyrii.	Rog. HOVEDEN;	P. Mela.				
Arnoldus Lubicens.	Continuator Matth.	<i>Francofurti, 1601,</i>	Mercator.				
S. Athanasius.	Paris.	<i>in fol.</i>	Monstrell.				
Aventinus.	Continuator Ur-	Hen. HUNTING-	Morison.				
S. Augustine.	spergenfis.	TON; <i>Francofur-</i>	Seb. Munster.				
B	S: Fr. Bacon.	<i>ti, 1601, in fol.</i>	N				
Balaeus.	S: Rob. Cotton.	I	Nauclerus.				
Barklay.	D	Bish. Jewel.	NICETAS Cho-				
B A R O N I U S ,	P. Diaconus.	Illyricus.	niates; <i>Apud bat-</i>				
Annal. Ecclesiast.	Mart. Dominic.	Josephus.	<i>edes Eustathii Vig-</i>				
Colonia Agrippine	Dressæus.	K	<i>non, 1593, in 4^o.</i>				
1624.	E	Rich. KNOLLS,	Neubrigenfis.				
Bellarmino.	Egnatius.	Turkish Hist. 2.	Theod. a Nyem.				
Bernard.	Erasmus.	edition, 1610, <i>in</i>	Greg. Nyfien.	O			
Chr. BE SOLD US;	Estius.	fol.	Ovid.	P			
<i>Argentine, 1536,</i>	Jo. Euchaitensis.	Krantzius.	Pantaleon.	Lambert.			
<i>in 12^o.</i>	Eulogium Chron.	L	Matth. PARIS;	London, 1571, <i>in</i>			
Bibliander.	Eusebius.	Mellificum Hist.	London, 1571, <i>in</i>	fol.			
Blondus.	F	Marburgi, 1617,	Jo. PAUL PERIN,				
Hect. Boethius.	Fazellius.	<i>in 4^o.</i>	Luthers forerun-				
Bolsecus.	Field.	Livie.	ners, translated				
Bonaventure.	FOX, Acts and Mo-	Lindwood,	by S. Leonard,				
Bridenbach.	numents; 4 editi-	Lipsius.	Lond. 1624.	Pero			
Brierwood.	on, 1583.						
Brochardus.	Otho Frisingensis.						

A table shewing the principall things contained in this Historie.

A	B. Ch.	B. Ch.
<i>A</i> Bagamaketh cowards valiant	43 ²	Almerick Patriarch of,
Abbeys, how and why suppres-	5, 6, 7, 8	<i>Jerusalem, 34</i>
fed in England,	320	<i>Andronicus a bad practicer of S. Paul 3 3</i>
Adimates againt their will,	18	<i>Antioch wonne by the Christians, 1 17</i>
Albingenses; three opinions concern-	19	<i>betrayed by the Patr. to Saladine, 3 1</i>
ing them,	20	<i>recovered by the Duke of Suevia, 4 26</i>
their originall, persecution, nick-	ibid.	<i>finally lost to the Sultan of Egypt, 4 26</i>
names,	15	<i>Apostate of many Christians in Eu-</i>
defended from crimes objected,	9	<i>rope upon K. Lewis captivity, 17</i>
commended by their adversaries,	ibid.	<i>Arms of Gentlemen deserved in this</i>
Alexius Emper. his treachery,	14	<i>warre, 5 23</i>
causeth the Christians overthrow,	17	<i>Arnulphus the firebrand-Patriarch</i>
his death and epitaph,	ibid.	<i>of Jerusalem, 2 2, 8, 15</i>
Alexius Angelus the younger a	17	<i>Assines, their strange commonweal.</i>
Princely begger,	33	<i>B</i>
Almerick K. of Jerusalem his cha-	36	<i>Aldwinne K. of Jers. his nature 2 7</i>
racter,	37	<i>he wins Antipatris & Cesarea 10</i>
he helpeth the Sultan of Egypt,	ibid.	<i>his two voyages into Egypt, his</i>
invadeth Egypt against promise,	36	<i>death, 13</i>
his death,	37	<i>Baldwinne the second chosen King, 14</i>
Baldwick the second,	ibid.	<i>he is taken prisoner, & ransomed, 17</i>
deposed for laziness,	316	<i>he renounceth the world, & dieth, 18</i>
	23	<i>Bald-</i>

The Table.

Baldwine the third his character,	2 24	Charles Earl of Anjou, K. of Ferusal.	4 25
disord betwixt him & his mother	3 1	he dieth for grief,	3 1
he winneth Acalon,	3 2	Charles the second, surnamed the	ibid.
his death and commendation,	ibid.	Delaye,	ibid.
Baldwine the fourth,	3 8	Children marching to ferusalem wo-	3 24
be conquereth Saladine,	40,42	fully peris;	4 9
be is arrested with leprosie : his	ibid.	Choermines, their obscure originall	10
death, and praise,		and finall suppression,	
Baldwine the fifth poisoned by his	43	Clerks no fit Captains,	5 2
mother,		Clermont Council,	5 14
Baldwine Earl of Flanders Empe-		Climate how it altereth health,	1 8
reour of Constantynople,	3 17	Conferences betwixt opposite parties	5 15
Theodore Balsamon how couensed,	2 44	in religion never succeed,	3 21
Dogargan,	1 16	Conrade Emperour of Germany his	
Antioch,	1 17	unfortunate voyage.	2 27
Askelon,	2 3	he conquereth the Turks,	2 28
Rhamula,	10	Conrade of Montferrat K. of Ferus.	3 1
Meander,	2 28	he is miserably slain,	10
Tiberias,	45	Convertisons of Pagans hindred by	5 14
Ptolemais,	3 5	Christians badnesse,	14 2
Bethlehem,	11	how it must orderly and solemnly	
Moret in France,	22	be done,	2 22
Gaza,	4 7	Edmund Crouchback not crooked,	2 6
Tiberias,	10	D	B. Ch.
Manzor in Egypt,	15	Dabertus Patriarch of Ferusal.	2 2
Manzor again,	16	he scuffleth with the Kings	
Bendocdar Sultan of Egypt,	4 26, 32	for that city, & dies in banishment	5 7, 8
Bernard Patriarch of Antioch,	2 2	Damascus described,	2 9
An apologie for S. Bernard,	2 30	in vain besieged by the Christians	ibid.
Biblianders wild fanzie,	1 10	Damiata twice taken by the Christi-	3 25, 27
Bishops numerous in Palestine,	2 2	ans, and twice surrendred,	4 13, 18
Boemund Prince of Antioch,	1 17	Danish service in this Warre,	5 13
he is taken prisoner,	2 3	Drunkenesse wofull punished,	5 12
he wafteth Grecia,	11	A Duell declined,	2 1
Boemund the second,	18	Duells forbidden by S. Lewis,	4 27
Boemund the third,	36	E	
C	B. Ch.	Eremarus Patriarch of Ferusal.	2 8
Aliphs, their voluptuousnesse,	2 22, 36	Prince Edward his voyage,	4 26
Calo-Johannes Grecian Emper.	2 1	he is desperately wounded, and re-	
Carmelites, their originall, luxurie,	26	couvereth,	2 29
and banishment,		Elianor Q. of France playeth false	2 28
Carthage described,	4 27	with her husband,	
Chalices in England, why of latten,	3 13	Elianor wife to Prince Edward, her	4 26
Characux one of the wicest men in		unexampled love to her husband,	
the world,	4	Elhadach Caliph of Egypt,	2 36

The Table.

Emmanuel Emperour of Greece,	2 27	Guy King of Ferusalem,	4 3
Engines before guns,	1 24	he is taken prisoner,	4 5
English service in this warre,	5 22	he exchangeth his Kingdome for	
Holy warre,	1 3	Cyprus,	3 10
Eustace refuseth the kingdome,	2 14	H	B. Ch.
F	B. Ch.	Haelon Cham of Tartarie,	4 22, 26
Faith-breaking the cause of the	2 37	Heleu no Ostereffe,	1 4
Christians overthrow,	2 11	Henry E. of Champaigne K. of Ferus.	3 11
Fames incredible swiftnesse,	1 8	his woful death,	15
The strength of imaginarie Fear,	3 5	Henry Earl of Mecklenburgh his	
Forts make some countreys weaker,	3 4	long captivite & late deliverance	4 30
Franks, how ancient in the East,	5 21	Henry the fourth, K. of England, his	
Fred. Barbaressa his unhappy voyage	3 3	intended voyage to Ferusalem,	5 24
his wofull drowning,	4 4	Heraclius the vitious Patriarch of	
Frederick the second, K. of Ferusa-	3 29	Ferusalem,	2 39
lem, his disposition,	4 20	Holy fraud,	1 17
his grapplings with the Pope,	5 30	Holy warre, arguments for it,	1 9
his death and posteritie,	4 1	arguments against it,	10
French service in this warre,	5 13	unlikely again to be set on foot,	5 27
Fulcher Patriarch of Ferusalem,	5 21	Hugh King of Ferusalem and Cy-	
Fulk King of Ferusalem,	2 25	prus,	4 25
G		I	
Alilee described,	1 19	J ames IV, K. of Scotland, hath	
Genoans achievements in	2 10	some intentions for Ferusalem,	5 24
this warre,	5 13	fanizaries their present insolencie,	5 29
Germane service in this warre,	5 21	Ferusalem destroyed by Titus,	1 1
Germane Nobility numerous,	ibid.	rebuilt by Adrian,	2
S. George,	1 17	largely described,	23
Gibelennes and Guelfes,	4 1	wonne by the Christians under	
Godfrey King of Ferusalem,	2 1	Godfrey,	24
his vertuous vice,	ibid.	lost to Saladine,	2 46
his death,	6	recovered by Frederick the Emp.	3 31
a Goose carried by the Pilgrimes to		finally wonne by the Choermines,	4 9
Ferusalem,		her present estate at this day,	5 26
Greek Church rent from the Latine,	1 10	Fews their wofull present condition,	1 3
on what occasion,	4 4	the hindrance of their conversion,	ibid.
wherein it dissenteth,	ibid.	Interviews of Princes dangerous,	3 6
what charitably is to be thought of	5	John Bren K. of Ferusalem,	2 4
them,		his discords with the Legate,	ibid.
what hope of reconcilement,	6	he resigneth his kingdome.	2 8
F		Irish service in this warre,	5 23
Judea described,		Isaacius Angelus Emp. of Constant.	3 1
Q q 4		Italian service in this warre,	5 13
King		Judea described,	2 22

gottes had a law always bo
choose a shant wher for
their Kings

2 7.

The Table.

K	B. Ch.	S ^c Lewis his second voyage, he besiegeth Tunis, his death and praise,	4 ¹⁶
K ing for Deputie in Eastern tongues,	2 2		27
Three faults in the Kingdome of Jerusalem, which hindred the strength of it,			ibid.
Knightis-Hospitallers their originall, they degenerate through wealth into luxurie,	5 18	M Abometanisme; the cause why it is so spreading,	1 6
they rebell against the Patriarch about titbes,	2 4	Mammalukes their originall; their miraculous Empire,	2 40
brawl with the Templars,	ibid.	Maronites their tenents and recon- cilement to Rome,	4 19
slit frō Cyprus by Rhodes to Malta	4 8	Meladine King of Egypt his bounty to the Christians,	2 39
the manner of their suppression in England,	5 5	why not loved of his subjects, his death,	3 27
in vain restored by Qu. Marie,	6 7	Melechala his sonne King of Egypt,	ibid.
Knightis-Templars instituted,	8	Melechates Sultan of Egypt,	32
many slain through their ovn co- vetousnesse,	2 16	Mercenary souldiers dangerous, yet how well qualified, they may be usefull,	2 35
they become rich and proud,	3 2	Miracles of this warre examined, and ranked into four sorts : viz.	
their treacherie hindreth the Ho- ly warre,	4 8	1 not done; 2 falsely done;	
they are finally exstirpated out of Christendome,	5 17	3 done by Nature; 4 done by Satan;	5 10
arguments for and against their innocency, with amoderate way betwixt them,	1	N	
Knights Teutonicks their institution	2 3	Nice besieged and taken by the Christians,	1 16
they are honoured with a grand Master,	2 16	Nilus his wonders and nature,	2 13
they come into Prussia, their ser- vice there,	3 5	Northern armies may prosper in the South,	5 15
Knights of the Sepulchre,	5 4	Norwegian service,	5 13
L	5 27	Numbers numberlesse slain in these warres,	5 22
Laterane Councel,	3 24	What Numbers competent in an ar- my,	20
Length of the journey bind- rance of this warre,	5 13	Numbers of Asian armies, what we may conceive of them,	19
Leopoldus Duke of Austr. his valour	3 8	O	
Leproze,	5 15	Observation of Rog. Roveden confuted,	2 46
Lewis the Young K. of France his wofull journey,	2 27, 28	Offers at Palestine since the end of the warre,	5 24
S ^c Lewis his voyage to Palestine, he wintereth in Cyprus,	4 11	Office of the Virgin why instituted,	1 8
lands in Egypt, winnes Damiata,	12	Owls whyhonoured by the Tartarians	4 2
is conquered and taken captive,	13	Palestine	
dearly ransomed,	16		
	18		

The Table.

P	B. Ch.	Robert D. of Normandie his valour,	1 16
P alestine in generall described,	1 18	he refiseth the Kingdome of Fe- rualem, and thriveth not after,	2 1
Pastorells in France slain,	4 21	Rodulphus chosen unexpectedly Em- perour of Germanie,	4 30
Pelagius the Legate,	3 24	Jendeth supplies to Syria,	ibid.
Peter the Hermite his character,	1 8	Rodulphus the unhappy Patriarch of Antioch,	2 20
he provest himself but an hypocrite	ibid.	S	B. Ch.
Peter K. of Aragon, a favourer of the	3 22	Scarilege,	5 17
Abingenses, slain in battell,	6	Saladine killeth the Caliph of Egypt,	2 37
Philip Augustus K. of France his	5 9	succeeds in Egypt and Damascus,	ibid.
voyage to Palestine, and unseaso- nable return,	1 11	conquereth Guy,	45
Pilgrimages proved unlawfull,	5 12	taketh Jerusallem and all Syria,	46
The Popes private profits by the Holy	1 13	his commendations and death,	3 14
warre,	5 22	Scholars without experience no good Generalls,	3 24
he the principall cause of the ill success,	2 11	Scottish service in this warre,	5 13
Polands service in this warre,	45	Sea and land-service compared,	5 23
Ptolemaiis wonne by the Christians,	3 8	Simon Earl of Montfort concludeith a truce in Syria,	4 24
regained by Saladine,	4 33	chosen captain against the Albin- gensies,	3 16
after three yeares siege recovered	1 12	is killed by a woman,	2 22
by the Christians,	5 21	Sidon described, wonne by the Chri- stians,	ibid.
finally taken by Sultan Serapha,	4 4	lost to the Sultan of Egypt,	2 12
Q	2 13	Spanish service in this warre,	5 13
Qualitie of the adventurers in	2 41	Stephen Patriarch of Jerusalem,	2 15
this warre,	4 4	Superfition taunting this whole war	5 9
R	4 5	Suspected souldiers in armes where	
Red sea why so called,	2 18	to be placed,	4 10
Reformation, wby Rome is a- verse from it,	2 18	Sultans their large Commissions,	2 22
Reimund Earl of Tripoli, his dis- cords with Baldwin,	3 12	Sweeden appeareth not in the Holy	
his apostacie to Saladine,	2 18	warre,	1 13
his suspicous death,	3 6	T	
Reliques how to be valued,	7	Artaria described,	5 1
why so many before death Renounced	1 1	Tartars their name and nature,	4 2
the world,	1 3	when first knowne to the world,	ibid.
Richard K. of England his voyage	1 8	converted to Christianitie,	2 22
to Palestine,	4 8	their relapse to Paganisme,	2 26
he taketh Sicily and Cyprus in his		the occasion,	ibid.
passage,		Theobald	
vanquisheth Salad. in a set battel			
in his return he is taken prisoner			
in Austria, and ransomed,			
Richard Earl of Cornwall his voy- <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			
age to Palestine,			

The Table.

	B.	Ch.	V		B.	Ch.
Theobald King of Navarre his unhappy voyage,	4	7	Venetians performance in this warre,			
Titular Bishops their use and abuse,	3	2	their bloody sea-battel with the Genoans,		2	17
Pretenders of Titles to the Kingdome of Jerusalem,	5	29	Viciousnesse of the Pilgrimes which went to Palestine,		4	24
Tunis described; besieged, taken by the Christians,	4	27			1	12
Turks whence descended, their large strides into Asia, harder to be converted than Tatars,	1	7			5	16
Turkish Empire ; its greatnessse, strength, and welfare;	4	2	W Afer-cake why wrought in the borders of all Egyptian tapestrie,		4	18
the weaknesse and defectes of it;			Welsh service in this warre,		5	23
what hopes of its approaching ruine	5	30	William Patriarch of Jerusalem,		2	25
Tylo Colupp a notable cheater,	4	20	William Landt-grave of Hesse his fictitious voyage to Jerusalem confuted,		5	26
Tyre described, taken by the Christians, valiantly defended by Conrade, wonne by Sultan Alphir,	2	12	Women warriours,		1	12
	3	1	Wracks first quitted by the Kings of England to their subjects,		2	27
	4	32			3	7

FINIS.